
**BIBLE COMMENTARY FOREVER
MINISTRIES**

Fundamentals of Faith Manual

BIBLE COMMENTARY FOREVER MINISTRIES

Copyright © 2026 Bible Commentary Forever Ministries.

This work is freely distributed for personal use, ministry use, educational distribution, and charitable purposes.

PERMISSIONS

This publication may be copied, shared, printed, and redistributed, in whole or in part, in either digital or print form, subject to the following conditions:

The content must remain unchanged and reproduced in its original form.

Attribution to the ministry must be retained in all copies and distributions.

This work may not be sold, relicensed, or used for commercial purposes without prior written permission.

This copyright and permissions notice must be included with any redistributed version of the work.

Published in 2026

For permissions inquiries or additional information, please contact the ministry.

Table of Contents

Fundamentals of Faith Manual	5
Welcome to the home of the Holy Spirit word-by-word Bible dictation ministries!	6
Bible Commentary Forever Ministries Statements of Core Faith	7
SECTION 1: The Teachings of the Lord Jesus	11
SECTION 2: Discipleship Teachings from the Book of Acts: A Chapter Selection.	12
SECTION 3: Faith Fundamentals Articles	13
SECTION 1: The Teachings of the Lord Jesus	14
The Teachings of the Lord Jesus	15
Teachings about the Lord Jesus Being the Son of God and the Son of Man	22
Teachings about How to be a Disciple of the Lord Jesus	48
Teachings about the Kingdom of Heaven, Spiritual Rewards, Persecutions, and Woes	72
Teachings about How Believers should Relate to the Trinity of God and How Believers should Respond to Temptations and Challenges of Life	96
Teachings about the Cross of the Lord Jesus: Persecution, Betrayal, Trial, Suffering, Crucifixion, Death and Burial	119
Teachings about the Bodily Resurrection of the Lord Jesus, End Time, and the Second Coming of the Lord Jesus	156
SECTION 2: Discipleship Teachings from the Book of Acts: A Chapter Selection	185
Acts 1	186
Acts 2	193
Acts 9	209
Acts 10	223
Acts 13	238
Acts 27	256
Acts 28	265
SECTION 3: Faith Fundamentals Articles	273
The Trinity of God	274
The God We Serve	278
The Lord Jesus: the Son of God and the Son of Man	283
The Bodily Resurrection of the Lord Jesus!	293
The Second Coming of the Lord Jesus Christ	296
Guidance for the New Birth of a Believer in the Lord Jesus	300

Water Baptism for a Christian	306
Holy Spirit Baptism for a Christian	309
The Baptism in the Holy Spirit	312
Holy Spirit Proceeding	339
Practice of the Holy Spirit's Gift of Prophecy in the Church	341
Who Is Your God?	342
Bible Dictation	350
What Books of the Bible Should Form the Canon of Scripture and Why?	356
Body, Soul, and Spirit: A Biblical Perspective	358
Acknowledgment	379

FUNDAMENTALS OF FAITH MANUAL

By the Followers of Jesus Christ, the Beloved Son of God

“For God so loved the world, that He gave the only begotten Son, so that everyone believing in Him may not perish, but have eternal life.” — John 3:16.

“For the Son of Man came to seek and to save the lost.” — Luke 19:10.

Bible Commentary Forever Ministries aims to spread the good news of Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who is God of the Trinity of God (God the Father, God the Son, God the Holy Spirit). The Lord Jesus Christ is the Son of God, born of the Virgin through the Holy Spirit. He was crucified and died on the cross to pay the ransom for all our sins. He was buried in the tomb, and rose in the body from the dead on the third day, and ascended into heaven to the Father in His bodily form, and now is seated at the right hand of God the Father.

The Bible tells us that we have one Teacher, the Holy Spirit, and one Book, the Bible, that people need for their lives. Our ministry offers free teaching resources from the New Testament through a Holy Spirit-filled online Bible commentary [Bible Commentary Forever](#) as well as a teaching YouTube channel that is part of our online Life Church BCFM, accessible through [Life Church BCFM](#). Our commentary on the New Testament is unique; we did not base our understanding on any other book or anyone; we used only one Book, the Bible, and only one Teacher, the Holy Spirit. The primary foundation of our commentary is our belief that the entire Scripture, as given to the writers chosen by God, is dictated word-by-word by the Holy Spirit to the soul and spirit of willing disciples (writers).

Additionally, our ministry provides free international discipleship training through online courses based on the “Bible Commentary Forever Ministries Fundamentals of Faith Manual.” Through this outreach, we support Bible distribution efforts, we plant churches, support local congregations, and assist missionaries in various countries.

Welcome to the home of the Holy Spirit word-by-word Bible dictation ministries!

This ministry exists to glorify the Trinity of God: God the Father, God the Son, Jesus Christ, and God the Holy Spirit, in the name of Jesus Christ, our Lord and Savior. And promote the truth about the Holy Word of God and bring souls to the true knowledge of being followers of Jesus Christ, the Beloved Son of God.

Regardless of church affiliation or no affiliation, you can become a faithful follower of the Lord Jesus Christ, the Beloved Son of God, by reading and meditating on the Word of God and by applying the teachings of the Holy Bible to your life. The Lord calls us to live in a way that honors Him and to serve as examples of the Lord Jesus Christ in both the church and the world. Our mission is to glorify the Trinity of God as One: God the Father, God the Son (Jesus Christ), and God the Holy Spirit (read our article: The Trinity of God). -- Galatians 2:20, 1 Timothy 6:11-16.

Bible Commentary Forever

Ministries Statements of Core Faith

What is Faith?

Faith is knowledge about God already put in our souls before we were even born. And when we read the Bible or hear the Word of God, this knowledge and the Word will link the soul and the heart and will strengthen the soul's knowledge about faith. And when we start developing faith in our hearts, if we use the knowledge of the Word that we have learned from the Bible to ask the Lord to increase our faith, then that becomes a gift (see Romans 10:17, Romans 4:3-5). Hebrews 11:1 tells us that "faith is the assurance of things hoped for, a conviction of things not seen."

1. The Trinity of God

We believe in the Trinity of God: God the Father, God the Son, Jesus Christ, and God the Holy Spirit; God of Three but One. God of Three: different in each individual, but the Three become One in the Father; everything is in the Father. The God of Three is One from the beginning. The Lord Jesus Christ was begotten when He took flesh upon Himself, but He is One with the Father from the beginning.

- Supporting Bible passages: [Genesis 1:26-28](#); [Matthew 3:16-17](#); [Matthew 19:17](#); [Matthew 28:19](#); [Luke 3:21-23](#); [John 1:1-3](#); [John 1:14](#); [John 3:16](#).
- Supporting article: [The Trinity of God](#).

2. The Virgin Birth

We believe the Lord Jesus Christ was born of the Holy Spirit and the Virgin Mary to be the Son of God and the Son of Man. The Holy Spirit conceived the baby Jesus in the Virgin Mary's womb. Holy Spirit dwelt in the egg of Mary to make the egg conceive — God to be a Man.

- Supporting Bible passages: [Matthew 1:25](#); [Luke 1:30-35](#).
- Supporting article: [The Lord Jesus the Son of God and the Son of Man](#).

3. The Full Deity, Full Humanity, and Uniqueness of the Lord Jesus the Son of God

We believe the Lord Jesus Christ is both the Son of God and the Son of Man, being one hundred percent God and one hundred percent man. Furthermore, the Lord Jesus Christ is the Lamb of God, the only sinless human, and the only begotten Son of God.

- Supporting Bible passages: [Matthew 12:18](#); [Matthew 17:2](#); [Matthew 20:28](#); [John 1:1-5](#); [John 1:14](#); [John 1:18](#); [John 3:13](#); [John 3:16](#); [John 10:28-30](#); [John 12:32-34](#); [Mark 14:61-62](#); [2 Corinthians 5:21](#); [Colossians 2:9](#).
- Supporting article: [The Lord Jesus the Son of God and the Son of Man](#).

4. Believer's Water Baptism by Immersion

We believe that as the Lord Jesus Christ went to be baptized in the water, all the followers of the Lord Jesus Christ, the Son of God, should be baptized in the water by immersion, in the name of the Father, of the Son, Jesus Christ, and of the Holy Spirit, for the remission of their sins.

- Supporting Bible passages: [Matthew 3:13-17](#); [Matthew 28:19](#); [Romans 6:3-4](#); [Colossians 2:12](#).
- Supporting article: [Water Baptism for a Christian](#).

5. The Crucifixion and The Bodily Resurrection of the Lord Jesus

We believe in the bodily resurrection of the Lord Jesus Christ. The Lord Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the sinless Lamb of God, was crucified and died on the cross for the sins of the world. He was buried in the tomb, and the same body (flesh and bones) rose out from the grave on the third day.

- Supporting Bible passages: [Luke 20:39-40](#); [Luke 23:33-47](#); [Luke 24:1-9](#); [Luke 24:36-42](#); [Luke 24:46-47](#); [John 20:26-28](#).
- Supporting article: [The Bodily Resurrection of the Lord Jesus](#).

6. The Lord Jesus, the Son of God, is the Only Way of Salvation for All Humans

We believe the Lord Jesus Christ, the Son of God, is the way, the truth, the life, and the only way to the Father.

- Supporting Bible passages: [John 14:6-7](#).
- Supporting article: [Make Peace with God the Father through His Holy Son Jesus Christ](#).

7. The Holy Bible as the Exact Word of God Dictated by the Holy Spirit

We believe that the Holy Bible is the Living Word of God, dictated by the Holy Spirit to the writers. The writers were willing to be under the control of the Holy Spirit when they wrote the Scriptures. As given to the writers, the Holy Bible is true and holy, with no errors. As followers of the Lord Jesus Christ, the Son of God, we must abide by the entire Word of God.

- Supporting Bible passages: [Matthew 4:4](#); [Matthew 10:20](#); [John 1:1-5](#); [John 4:13-14](#); [John 6:51](#); [Hebrews 4:12-13](#); [2 Timothy 3:16-17](#); [Galatians 1:11-12](#); [2 Peter 1:16-21](#).
- Supporting article: [Bible Dictation](#).

8. The Presence of the Holy Spirit on Earth and the Baptism in the Holy Spirit

We believe that the Holy Spirit is now given to the followers of the Lord Jesus Christ, the Son of God. Because the Lord Jesus Christ was crucified, died on the cross, was buried in the tomb, rose out from the dead, and ascended into heaven to be with the Father, the gift of the Holy Spirit baptism is given to all the followers of the Lord Jesus Christ who believe in the Person of the Holy Spirit and seek this gift in the name of the Lord Jesus. The Holy Spirit is a gift of the Lord; upon the Lord Jesus' death on the cross, the Holy Spirit has been given to all humans who believe in the Son of God, the Lord Jesus Christ.

- Supporting Bible passages: [John 1:33](#); [John 14:15-17](#).
- Supporting articles: [Holy Spirit Proceeding](#) and [Holy Spirit Baptism for a Christian](#).

9. The Miracle of the Baptism in the Holy Spirit

We believe that the baptism in the Holy Spirit is a gift from the Trinity of God and is given by the grace of God. The manifestation of the baptism in the Holy Spirit of a believer must have speaking in tongues as a miraculous sign for the believer. Tongues spoken in gatherings can be either human or angelic tongues, but if they are angelic, there must be someone to translate. The baptism in the Holy Spirit is a gift of the grace of God and is different from having the Holy Spirit touch your heart. All true believers receive the filling of the Holy Spirit in their hearts upon accepting the Lord Jesus as their personal Savior. The filling of a believer with the Holy Spirit at salvation is different than the filling of a believer upon receiving the baptism in the

Holy Spirit. All the believers in the Lord Jesus Christ should earnestly and in faith seek their baptism in the Holy Spirit.

- Supporting Bible passages: Mark 16:17; John 1:33; Acts 2:1-41; Acts 10:44-48; 1 Corinthians 12:8-11; 1 Corinthians 13; 1 Corinthians 14:1-25.
- Supporting article: The Baptism in the Holy Spirit.

10. The Bodily Ascension of the Lord Jesus and His Second Coming

We believe that after the resurrection, the Lord Jesus Christ ascended into heaven in His heavenly body united with His human resurrected body and is seated at the right hand of God the Father, and by the will of the Father, He will come back in the same manner to judge the world.

- Supporting Bible passages: Matthew 24:35-37; Luke 18:8; Luke 24:50-51; John 14:1-4; Acts: 1:11; Revelation 3:11.
- Supporting article: The Second Coming of the Lord Jesus.

SECTION 1: The Teachings of the Lord Jesus

The teachings, works, and way of life of the Lord Jesus, found in the Gospels, are essential for the life of a true believer in the Lord Jesus. For true believers in the Lord Jesus, the Lord Jesus must be the ultimate Master to follow in our daily lives. Reading and meditating on the Gospels, along with the entire Bible, is vital for the spiritual nourishment of the human soul. In our Bible Commentary Forever work, we depend on the guidance of the Holy Spirit, who alone is the true Teacher of the Holy Bible. Guided by the Holy Spirit, we have categorized the teachings of the Gospels into six spiritual categories. Additionally, we include commentary on several chapters of the Book of Acts in this manual as we incorporate these teachings into our discipleship course.

1. The Teachings of the Lord Jesus
2. Teachings about the Lord Jesus Being the Son of God and the Son of Man
3. Teachings about How to Be a Disciple of the Lord Jesus
4. Teachings about the Kingdom of Heaven, Spiritual Rewards, Persecutions, and Woes
5. Teachings about How Believers Should Relate to the Trinity of God and How Believers Should Respond to Temptations and Challenges of Life
6. Teachings about the Cross of the Lord Jesus: Persecution, Betrayal, Trial, Suffering, Crucifixion, Death, and Burial
7. Teachings about the Bodily Resurrection of the Lord Jesus, End Time, and the Second Coming of the Lord Jesus

SECTION 2: Discipleship Teachings from the Book of Acts: A Chapter Selection.

In this section, we provide a selection of chapters from the Book of Acts of the Apostles available on our [Bible Commentary Forever](#) website. These chapters are utilized in our discipleship training course to teach about the role of the Holy Spirit in a believer's life and in mission work.

1. Acts 1
2. Acts 2
3. Acts 9
4. Acts 10
5. Acts 13
6. Acts 27
7. Acts 28

SECTION 3: Faith Fundamentals Articles

Many doctrinal dissertations relate to the Christian faith. Here, we present some of our faith fundamentals, drawn from our [Bible Commentary Forever](#) commentary on the New Testament. We encourage every true believer to uphold the Trinity of God as One (God the Father, God the Son, the Lord Jesus, and God the Holy Spirit), the Deity of the Lord Jesus, the Virgin birth of the Lord Jesus, the death of the Lord Jesus on the cross for the sins of the world, the bodily resurrection of the Lord Jesus, the second coming of the Lord Jesus to take His bride (the true church), the water baptism, and the Holy Spirit baptism dear to their hearts and never sway from these truths. Read and meditate on the Word of God daily and take time to meditate on these fundamentals of faith. In this manual, we present a selection of doctrinal articles, also available on our website: [Bible Commentary Forever Ministries](#).

1. [The Trinity of God](#)
2. [The God We Serve](#)
3. [The Lord Jesus: the Son of God and the Son of Man](#)
4. [The Bodily Resurrection of the Lord Jesus](#)
5. [The Second Coming of the Lord Jesus](#)
6. [Guidance for a New Birth of a Believer in the Lord Jesus](#)
7. [Water Baptism for a Christian](#)
8. [Holy Spirit Baptism for a Christian](#)
9. [The Baptism in the Holy Spirit](#)
10. [Holy Spirit Proceeding](#)
11. [Practice of the Holy Spirit's Gift of Prophecy in the Church](#)
12. [Who is your God?](#)
13. [Bible Dictation](#)
14. [What Books of the Bible Should Form the Canon of Scripture and Why](#)
15. [Body, Soul, and Spirit: A Biblical Perspective](#)

SECTION 1: The Teachings of the Lord Jesus

In this section of the manual, we present the teachings of Lord Jesus Christ, covering all the Gospels, organized by Bible Commentary Forever Ministries through the guidance of the Holy Spirit, into spiritual categories and themes.

The Teachings of the Lord Jesus

Introduction

The teachings, works, and way of life of the Lord Jesus, found in the Gospels, are essential for the life of a true believer in the Lord Jesus. For a true believer in the Lord Jesus, the Lord Jesus must be the ultimate Master to follow in our daily lives. The Bible tells us in many places to follow the commandments and the teachings of the Lord. Also, His way of life must be an example for us to follow and learn from all that the Lord Jesus did while on earth. Specifically, in John 14:15, the Lord Jesus Himself tells us, *“If you love Me, you will keep My commandments.”* Here, keeping the commandments of the Lord Jesus is associated with loving the Lord, which also is one of the first commandments that the Lord Jesus gives to us in Matthew 22:37-38, saying, *“You shall love the Lord Thy God with all your heart, and with all your soul, and with all your mind. This is the great and first commandment.”* Furthermore, in Deuteronomy 30:15-20, keeping the commandments of the Lord God Almighty is connected to eternal life and many blessings, as also stated by the Lord Jesus Himself in Luke 11:28, which says, *“Then He said, Indeed, blessed are those hearing the word of God, and obeying.”*

Old Law versus the New Law

In Acts chapter 7, a disciple of the Lord Jesus, Stephen, a man full of faith and of the Holy Spirit, gave a testimony to the council of the Jews of the time, which nicely summarizes the salvation plan of the Lord God Almighty and the coming of the Lord Jesus Christ to the human race (all readers should read Acts chapter 7). Specifically, as written in Galatians 4:4, *“but when the fulness of the time came, God sent forth His Son, born of a woman, born under the law,”* to the human race to save us and show us the way to the Father. Moreover, in Matthew 17:5, God the Father Himself gave us the ultimate commandment, saying, *“This is My Beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased; listen to Him!”*

So, what does God the Father mean when He commands us to listen to His Beloved Son? Should we just listen and obey some commandments and teachings of the Bible, or should we listen and obey all the commandments and the teachings? In John 10:30, the Lord Jesus says, *“I and the Father are One,”* and in John 15:10,

the Lord Jesus says, “If you keep My commandments, you will abide in My love; according as I have kept My Father’s commandments, and abide in His love.” Then, in James 2:10-13 we read, “For whoever shall keep the whole law, and yet stumbles in one point, he has become guilty of all. For he that said, Do not commit adultery, also said, Do not kill. Now, if you do not commit adultery but kill, you have become a transgressor of the law. So speak you, and so do, as those that are to be judged by a law of liberty. For judgment is without mercy to him that has shown no mercy; mercy glories against judgment.” Therefore, we need to read and meditate on the entire Word of God to learn and follow all the commandments and the teachings that the Lord gives. But then, one might ask, “What about the Old Testament Law? Do I need to keep all its requirements, including the sacrificial laws?”

In Acts chapter 13, Paul, speaking through the Holy Spirit in the synagogue of Antioch, shows that the forgiveness of sins is proclaimed in the Lord Jesus, and by faith in Him, not by the Law of Moses, everyone is freed from every sin. Also, in Hebrews chapter 10, we learn that the Lord Jesus Christ is the perfect sacrifice made once for the entire human race. He offered Himself once and forever as the perfect sacrifice for sins and then sat down at the right hand of God the Father. Because of that, God the Father took away the Old Covenant and established a New Covenant in the blood of the Lord Jesus, so, as Hebrews 10:10 says, “By which will, we have been sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.” So, for a believer in the Lord Jesus, keeping the Old Covenant means keeping the New Covenant in the blood of the Lord Jesus. The Lord Jesus is the way, the truth, and the life, and no one comes to the Father but by Him ([John 14:6](#)).

But then one might ask, how does the Old Law relate to the Lord Jesus, and how are we to keep the New Law? To answer this question, let’s examine some passages from the Gospels where the Lord Jesus teaches about the Old Law.

Matthew 5:17. *Do not consider that I came to abolish the Law or the Prophets; I did not come to abolish, but to complete.*

Here, the Lord Jesus says that He completed the Law, in the sense that He is the end of the Law. Now, we only need to obey His Law.

Luke 16:16. *The law and the prophets were until John; from that time the gospel of the kingdom of God is proclaimed, and everyone forces his way into it.*

“The law and the prophets were until John.” John came at that time to start the new generation of believers who will follow the mercy and grace of God

through the beloved Son of God; it is the end times of the prophets that talk in the name of the Lord because the new generation will follow the Word of the beloved Son of God.

“From that time, the gospel of the kingdom of God is proclaimed.” This refers to the Son of God coming. In the old times, people followed the prophets, and everyone tried to enter into the kingdom of God by following that preaching, but from now on, people must enter into the kingdom of God by the mercy and love of God through the beloved Son of God.

“And everyone forces his way into it.” Now, people use the love of God to force their way into the kingdom of God; think of it this way as well: people say I will not follow the old law anymore, but I will follow the law of the beloved Son of God, I have more rights than the prophets because now I am not just a follower but I have become a child of God, the beloved Son of God is the fulfillment of the law. Some enter by using the beloved Son of God’s love and mercy and ignore the Father. Still, they also forget that the beloved Son of God has come to fulfill the Word of the Father; the beloved Son of God has become the complete law for all humans because He became the perfect sacrifice for the Father, so people do not need to follow the prophets. Still, they must thoroughly follow the teachings of the beloved Son of God that have been written down in the Holy Bible. Whoever thinks that the Holy Bible is the Word of the beloved Son of God only, and they do not need to read the Old Testament of the Holy Bible, will not wholly follow the teachings of the beloved Son of God because the Old Testament is the story of the Father Himself that leads to Him sending the beloved Son of God for humans. So, if they forget the part of love of the Father shown by sending His Son, they will not follow completely the teaching of the beloved Son of God as well.

“Forces his way.” Forces because they use the Son’s Word against the Father’s Word. The Father uses punishment, but the Son uses love, so they feel that they have a better straightway to enter and do not need to follow the Old Law. However, both Father and Son also keep the Old Law because the beloved Son of God became the true sacrifice for the Father. The way to be saved is only through the beloved Son of God; the Bible tells us that the beloved Son of God said, “I am the way” ([John 14:6](#)), and they use His Word to go against the Father’s Word. To justify the reason for ignoring the Old Testament, they use the beloved Son of God’s Word, which says that He is the

way. That is the reason they want to overlook the Old Testament because it has become the way for them to believe; just believe only in what the beloved Son of God has said, and that will be enough to enter into the kingdom of Heaven, but doing this is completely wrong because they cannot enter without both the Father and the beloved Son; we must believe in the beloved Son of God, but we also must have faith in what the Father has proclaimed.

Luke 16:17. *But it is easier for the Heaven and the earth to pass away, than for one stroke of a pen of the law to fail.*

Give attention to what this verse says: regardless of what teachings people may have, the law of the Lord stays firm forever; the beloved Son of God Himself came on earth to fulfill the law. He did not come to wipe off the law, but He lifted up the law to fullness with His own death and shedding of blood on the cross. Luke 16:16-17 verses are the prediction of the completion of the Old Law; the Father fulfilled His promise to His people, the Old Law cannot be forgotten, but the New Law will be the continuation for making the Old Law complete by the birth of the beloved Son of God, His death on the cross, and His resurrection to fulfill the promise of the Father.

Matthew 13:52. And He said to them, Because of this, every scribe disciplined into the kingdom of the heavens is like a man, a master of a house, who brings out of his treasure things new and old.

This parable refers to a true disciple of the Lord Jesus Christ, who is like a scribe trained for the kingdom of the heavens. A true disciple of the Lord Jesus is taught by the Bible through the Holy Spirit for a complete understanding of the link between the Old Testament law and the New Testament grace, which is in the Trinity of God (God the Father, God the Son Jesus, and God the Holy Spirit). The blind faith of the Old Testament and the free will faith of the New Testament, the old one controlled by the obedience to the law and the new one controlled by the grace and faith in the Lord Jesus. The Lord Jesus is the Lord of the obedience to the point of dying on the cross. He is the last sacrificial lamb for the Father; that is why the old law ended with the Lord Jesus' death on the cross. At the same time, when the old law ended, the new law started through the blood of the Lord Jesus that He shed for the old law. The old law was wiped clean by the blood of the perfect sacrifice; that is the first step to the new law. Think of the feet of the Lord Jesus; one foot was in the old law,

and He made a step into the new law with the other foot, so through Him, we are able to cross from sacrifice to grace (See [Acts 15:9-11](#), Hebrews 8:6-13).

In conclusion, as followers of the Lord Jesus, we need to read and meditate on the entire Bible, both the Old Testament and the New Testament, with the help of the Holy Spirit. We cannot understand the New Testament without knowing the Old Testament. However, by faith in the Lord Jesus and by following the commandments and the teachings of the Lord Jesus, we fulfill the requirements of both Laws: the Old and the New. Therefore, in this blog series, we will focus strictly on the Gospels and the teachings of the Lord Jesus found in the four Gospels: Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John, but we encourage all people to read the entire Bible.

Spiritual Classification of the Teachings of the Lord Jesus

First, we must ask ourselves, what is the difference between commandments and teachings? Commandments are orders that we must follow to fulfill the order of the Father. Teachings help us to fulfill the commandments and become faithful followers of the Lord Jesus. Therefore, the commandments are direct orders from the Father, and the teachings themselves help the follower fulfill the achievement of following the commandments.

Second, we must ask ourselves what we need to do in order to follow the commandments and the teachings of the Lord Jesus and be pleasing to the Lord in our daily lives. To understand this, we look to two Bible passages in Hebrews and Acts.

Hebrews 10:16. *This is the covenant that I will make with them; After those days, says the Lord: I will put my laws on their heart, And upon their mind also will I write them.*

[Acts 2:17-18](#). *And it shall be in the last days, says God, I will pour out of My Spirit upon all flesh: And your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, And your young men shall see visions, And your elders shall dream dreams: and even upon my male servants and upon my handmaidens in those days I will pour out of My Spirit, and they shall prophesy.*

Therefore, in order to achieve the task of following the commandments and teachings of the Lord Jesus, we must do three things. First, we must repent and acknowledge the Lord Jesus as our Lord and Savior by baptizing in water in the name of the Father, the Son Jesus Christ, and the Holy Spirit (if we haven't done that yet) and becoming a born-again person ([John 3:16-21](#), [Matthew 28:18-20](#)). Second,

we need to repent of all uncleanness, keep our hearts clean, read and meditate on the Word of God by ourselves with the help of the Holy Spirit, and continually seek within our hearts to receive the baptism in the Holy Spirit. Third, when we read and meditate on the Word of God by ourselves, we must acknowledge the Trinity of God and ask the Holy Spirit, in the name of the Lord Jesus, to join us and be our true Teacher. Then, the Holy Spirit will speak to our hearts and minds about the Word we read and reveal to our hearts and minds the commandments and teachings that we must follow. For example, we could pray in the following manner when we do any Bible work:

- Start with the Lord's prayer found in Matthew 6:9-13.
- Glorify the Trinity of God (God the Father, God the Son Jesus, and God the Holy Spirit) in the name of the Lord Jesus.
- Give thanks for our health, life, family, and other blessings.
- Next, pray in the following manner: "Holy Father, Holy Son Jesus, Holy Spirit; Holy Trinity, forgive us from all uncleanness and sins in the name of the Lord Jesus; we invite you in the name of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ to join us for our Bible work; Holy Spirit, come in the name of our Lord Jesus and join us and guide our study and guide our prayers."
- Next, we can do the Bible reading and meditation and discussions.
- Finally, we should have our final prayer, where we thank the Lord for all things and for His guidance in the name of the Lord Jesus.
- All things we do and ask must be in the name of the Lord Jesus.

Our Lord Jesus gives us numerous commandments, teachings, and examples to follow throughout the Gospels. Meditating on all the teachings of the Lord Jesus found in the Gospels, we could classify them into six main spiritual categories. Furthermore, we can compound the teachings within each category under multiple themes. Below, we present our spiritual categories covering all the writings found within the four Gospels.

1. Teachings about the Lord Jesus being the Son of God and the Son of Man: nine themes.
2. Teachings about how to be a disciple of the Lord Jesus: eleven themes.
3. Teachings about the kingdom of heaven, spiritual rewards, persecutions, and woes: nine themes.

4. Teachings about how believers should relate to the Trinity of God and how believers should respond to temptations and challenges of life: six themes.
5. Teachings about the cross of the Lord Jesus: persecution, betrayal, suffering, crucifixion, death and burial: three themes.
6. Teachings about the resurrection of the Lord Jesus, end time, and the second coming of the Lord: two themes

In this teachings blog series, we present the teachings of the Lord Jesus found in the Gospels based on this spiritual classification. Within each spiritual category, we highlight the overall teaching category and all the themes, summarizing the essence of each theme and providing all the Bible passage references to the Gospels relevant to each theme within the category with further hyperlinks to our Bible Commentary Forever (BCF) work where you can find more in-depth spiritual comments related to the referred passages. We would also like to note that many passages of the Gospels that we refer to and classify could be relevant to more than one category; however, we uniquely place each Bible passage only in the most appropriate category. Furthermore, we are challenging every reader to take this study as a starting point for reading and meditating on the teachings of the Lord Jesus and discovering how to apply them to their lives and become a true follower of the Lord Jesus.

Meditation Tasks:

1. Read one of the Gospels of your choice and try to find teachings related to each of the six categories.

Teachings about the Lord Jesus Being the Son of God and the Son of Man

Introduction

Continuation from “[The Teachings of the Lord Jesus.](#)”

The Lord Jesus is the Son of God and the Son of Man, and He is God of the [Trinity of God](#) (God the Father, God the Son, Jesus Christ, and God the Holy Spirit). We believe that the Lord Jesus is and always was God of the Trinity, meaning that as God of the Trinity, in Himself, He has power and authority to perform miraculous works and miraculous healings and to know the times; specifically, the Lord Jesus even while on earth as a man, He is God as well and He has power and authority in Himself over all things in the seen and unseen worlds. Therefore, the Lord Jesus, while on earth as a man, is more than a prophet of God filled with the Holy Spirit: He is the Son of God and God of the Trinity. Furthermore, the Lord Jesus, as the Son of Man on earth, is a man like any other man in everything while on earth. The teachings about the Lord Jesus being the Son of God and the Son of Man are essential to the believer’s faith. In this blog, we highlight two core faith beliefs that a true follower of the Lord Jesus must have:

- **Every true follower of the Lord Jesus must believe in the deity of the Lord Jesus with full God power and authority even while on earth as human, and that He is both the Son of God and the Son of Man at the same time.**
- **Every true follower of the Lord Jesus must believe that the Lord Jesus, after His conception on earth, is one hundred percent God and one hundred percent human not only while on earth but even now, as being seated at the right hand of the Father in heaven in His human and heavenly body.**

The Bible teaches us that the Lord Jesus is the only sinless human (2 Corinthians 5:21) and the only begotten Son of God ([John 1:14](#), [John 1:18](#), [John 3:16](#)) and that in His deity and humanity, He is God of the Trinity of God, and He is One with God the Father and God the Holy Spirit from the beginning ([John 10:31](#)). Moreover, by meditating on the Word of God, we can find that the Gospels are very rich and specific in teaching us that the Lord Jesus is the Son of God, God of the Trinity of

God, and also the Son of Man, meaning that the Lord Jesus is both the Son of God and the Son of Man at the same time: one hundred percent God and one hundred percent Man. Throughout the Gospels, the Lord Jesus performs an abundance of works and gives us an abundance of teachings, proving to all humans that He is the Son of God and the Son of Man, and He is from eternity past God of the Trinity, and He was God and Man at the same time while on earth.

While in heaven, the Lord Jesus existed in the Bosom of the Father, and shared in His Form and glory (John 1:18). The Lord Jesus laid aside this Heavenly Body to take up residence in an earthly temple the Father had prepared for Him in the womb of the virgin Mary, by the power of the Holy Spirit (Matthew 17:2, Acts 7:48-49, Hebrews 10:5-7). In this Human Form, the Son of God lived, died, and rose again as a human being and as the Beloved Son – accomplishing the full will of the Father for His creation and taking His rightful place in His human Body at the Father’s side (Mark 16:19, Philippians 2:5-11). Though He was found in Human Form, to look on the face of Jesus was to look on the face and the body of God (John 14:9). By the mercy of the Father, the human body of the Lord Jesus enabled sinful humans to look on God Himself and not die (Exodus 33:20).

Within this teaching blog, we exhaustively group all the Gospels’ teachings about this topic into nine themes, as given below, with each supporting some aspects of the claims about the deity and humanity of the Lord Jesus while on earth and that He is God of the Trinity of God and exists with God the Father and God the Holy Spirit from eternity past.

1. The miraculous conception and birth of the Lord Jesus as the Son of God and the Son of Man.
2. Testimonies of angels, heavenly hosts, prophets, and people about the Lord Jesus.
3. The testimony of God the Father and of the Holy Spirit for His Son, and of the Lord Jesus for His Father.
4. The Lord Jesus has power and authority over the seen world.
5. The Lord Jesus has power and authority over the unseen world.
6. The Lord Jesus has human feelings, and He has power and authority to teach, raise the dead, and perform physical and spiritual healings.
7. The Lord Jesus has power and authority to forgive sins and give eternal life.

8. The Lord Jesus is greater than all and has power and authority over time and space.
9. The miraculous resurrection of the Lord Jesus' body from the dead.

The Presentation of the Teaching Themes

This section describes each teaching theme by highlighting its essential features and providing a complete list of Bible passages in the Gospels that are characteristic of each theme. Furthermore, for each passage, we provide hyperlinks pointing to our [Bible Commentary Forever](#) work, where you will find helpful comments to help you gain a deeper spiritual understanding of the Word of God.

1. The Miraculous Conception and Birth of the Lord Jesus as the Son of God and the Son of Man

The Lord Jesus is the Son of God and the Son of Man, as testified by His miraculous birth. The Bible tells us how this happened. First, God sent the angel Gabriel to Nazareth to a virgin named Mary to tell her that she found “favor with God,” and that she would conceive in her womb by the Holy Spirit coming upon her and would bring forth the Son of God, the Savior of the world, whom she shall call Jesus. Mary, the “handmaid of the Lord,” was willing to accept the plan of the Lord for her life, so the Holy Spirit came upon Mary, and the Holy Spirit conceived the baby Jesus in the Virgin Mary’s womb. The Holy Spirit dwelt in the egg of Mary to make the egg conceive — God to be a Man. Therefore, the Father of the Lord Jesus is God the Holy Spirit, not any human, and His mother is a woman, the Virgin Mary. The Bible shows there was no physical contact with Mary from the Lord as humans do; the physical contact was only by the shadow of the Most High over her egg. The Lord does not need to have physical interaction with sperm and egg, as humans do for procreation. With Mary, by the Holy Spirit’s shadow, the egg conceived the baby Jesus, a miracle. The Lord Jesus must be a hundred percent human, and the woman’s egg is needed for this. As true believers in the Lord Jesus, we must believe, as the Bible teaches us, that the Lord Jesus was born by the power of the Holy Spirit, not by the will of the flesh or of man, and that it is a wonderful experience for God to be a human and to make people see Him in the Lord Jesus. Furthermore, the genealogies of the Lord Jesus given in the Gospel of Matthew and Luke show that the Lord fulfilled His unconditional promises to David and Abraham through the earthly caretaker of the Lord Jesus, Joseph. By the coming of the Lord Jesus to be God and human on earth, people can no longer say that God doesn’t know what it is to be a human.

Below, we highlight all the Gospels' passages, which entirely cover this theme, with hyperlinks to our [Bible Commentary Forever](#) (BCF) work, where you will find more comments and explanations. In addition, we provide a short description of each passage, characterizing its content.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** [Matthew 1:1-18](#) (The miraculous conception of the Lord Jesus as the Son of God and the Son of Man).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** none.
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** [Luke 1:26-38](#) (The miraculous conception of the Lord Jesus, the Son of the Most High, in Mary's womb, by the power of the Most High); [Luke 2:1-7](#) (The birth of the Lord Jesus as the Son of God and the Son of Man at Bethlehem, where they laid Him in a manger).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** none.

2. Testimonies of Angels, Heavenly Hosts, Prophets, and People about the Lord Jesus

The Lord Jesus is the Son of God and the Son of Man, as testified by angels, heavenly hosts, prophets, and people. The Lord Jesus lived His life as the Son of God and the Son of Man on earth among the people from His birth to His departure to heaven, so people, angels, and heavenly hosts saw Him and witnessed His miraculous birth, life, and ministry. Many people saw Him, followed Him, witnessed His miracle works, listened to His teachings, talked to Him, interacted with Him, ministered to Him, were touched by Him, and loved Him as their Lord and Savior. As a believer in the Lord Jesus, paying attention to the many testimonies of angels, heavenly hosts, prophets, and people found in the Gospels to the deity and humanity of the Lord Jesus is essential and uplifting to one's faith. Moreover, the books of the Old Testament provide humans with many prophecies concerning the coming of the Lord Jesus as the Christ, the Son of God, His identity, and His role. Some of these prophecies are highlighted in the Gospels so that we can believe that the coming of the Lord Jesus to the human race is the plan of God the Father from the beginning of creation. All people should read and meditate on the Word of God and take to their hearts all these testimonies of angels, heavenly hosts, prophets, and people found in the Gospels about the Lord Jesus and should believe in the miracle of the Lord Jesus being the Son of God and the Son of Man and come to worship Him as God of the Trinity.

Below, we highlight all the Gospels' passages, which entirely cover this theme, with hyperlinks to our [Bible Commentary Forever](#) (BCF) work, where you will find more comments and explanations. In addition, we provide a short description of each passage, characterizing its content.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** [Matthew 1:19-25](#) (An angel tells Joseph that Mary conceived the Son of God by the Holy Spirit, and His name should be Jesus); [Matthew 2:1-12](#) (The Lord Jesus was born in Bethlehem; the Magi from the east arrived in Jerusalem inquiring about the One being born the King of the Jews); [Matthew 2:13-15](#) (An angel of the Lord instructs Joseph to flee into Egypt to protect the child Jesus from Herod); [Matthew 2:16-18](#) (Herod kills the boys two years old and under in Bethlehem and around); [Matthew 2:19-23](#) (The angel of the Lord instructs Joseph to return with his family to the land of Israel from Egypt); [Matthew 3:1-12](#) (John the Baptist, the messenger of the Lord, prepares the way of the Lord and testifies that the Lord Jesus will baptize people with the Holy Spirit and fire); [Matthew 4:12-16](#) (The Lord Jesus dwelt at Capernaum, fulfilling the prophecy that the land of Zebulun and Naphtali would see a great light); [Matthew 8:16-17](#) (The Lord Jesus took our weaknesses and bore our sicknesses as spoken by the Isaiah the prophet); [Matthew 11:1-15](#) (The Lord Jesus testifies that John the Baptist is the messenger of the Lord); [Matthew 12:17-21](#) (The Lord Jesus is the chosen one of God, and He fulfills the prophecy of Isaiah); [Matthew 16:13-17](#) (Simon Peter testifies about the Lord Jesus being “the Christ, the Son of the Living God.”); [Matthew 21:4-5](#) (The Lord Jesus is the King spoken by the prophet); [Matthew 21:8-11](#) (The multitude receives the Lord Jesus joyfully as He enters Jerusalem and shouts: “Hosanna to the Son of David!”); [Matthew 21:42-46](#) (The Son of God, the Lord Jesus, is the stone that His people, the Jews, have rejected, but the Father lifted up His Son to be the cornerstone of the church of God); [Matthew 27:54](#) (The testimony of the centurion and those with him at the cross: “Truly this was the Son of God.”).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** [Mark 1:1-8](#) (John the Baptist, the messenger of the Lord, testifies that the Lord Jesus is the Son of God, the One who baptizes with the Holy Spirit); [Mark 8:27-30](#) (Peter’s confession that the Lord Jesus is the Christ); [Mark 11:7-10](#) (The Lord enters Jerusalem riding on a colt; people cried out: “Hosanna! Blessed is the One coming in the name of the Lord”); [Mark 12:10-12](#) (The Son of God, the Lord Jesus, is the stone that His people, the Jews, have rejected, but the Father lifted up His Son to be the

cornerstone of the church of God); Mark 15:39 (At the cross of the Lord Jesus, the centurion testifies that the Lord Jesus is the Son of God).

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** Luke 1:1-25 (The miraculous conception of John the Baptist, the son of Zachariah and Elizabeth, the messenger of the Lord); Luke 1:39-45 (The testimony of Elizabeth about John, the messenger of the Lord, in her womb, and the baby Lord Jesus in Mary's womb); Luke 1:46-56 (Mary's song of praise and worship to God, her Savior, the Mighty One, for counting her blessed to be the mother of the Lord Jesus, the promise of Israel); Luke 1:57-80 (The birth of John the Baptist and the prophecy of Zachariah, his father, about his son being the prophet of the Most High and the Lord Jesus being the horn of salvation for Israel); Luke 2:8-15 (The testimony of an angel and heavenly hosts by night to shepherds in the fields, about the birth of the Lord Jesus, the Savior, who is Christ the Lord); Luke 2:16-20 (The shepherds go to Bethlehem and proclaim that the baby Jesus is Christ the Lord, the Savior); Luke 2:21 (The Lord Jesus, as the Son of Man, is circumcised following the Law of the Father); Luke 2:22-24 (The Lord Jesus is presented to the Lord, by the law of the Lord, as the male that opened the womb); Luke 2:25-35 (Simeon, by the power of the Holy Spirit, recognized the baby Jesus at the temple as the Christ of the Lord, the Savior of the world); Luke 2:36-38 (Anna, a prophetess, testifies at the temple about the baby Jesus being the Redeemer); Luke 3:1-18 (John the Baptist, the messenger of the Lord, proclaims the baptism of repentance and testifies that the Lord Jesus is the One who will baptize with the Holy Spirit and fire); Luke 3:23-38 (Joseph as the descendant of David is the earthly caretaker of the Lord Jesus); Luke 9:18-22 (Peter recognizes the Lord Jesus as the Christ of God); Luke 19:35-40 (The multitude received the Lord Jesus entering Jerusalem, riding on a colt, praising and rejoicing, and shouting: "Blessed is the King that comes in the name of the Lord."); Luke 23:40-43 (The criminal on the cross testifies that the Lord Jesus is God of all); Luke 23:47-49 (The testimony of the centurion and people at the cross of the Lord Jesus).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** John 1:6-7,15,19-34 (The witness of John the Baptist to the Light of God, the Lord Jesus, who is the Christ, the Son of God, and the Lamb of God); John 1:45-49 (Nathanael testifies that the Lord Jesus is the Son of God, the King of Israel); John 3:1-2 (Nicodemus confesses that the Lord Jesus, a Teacher, has come from God); John 3:22-36 (The testimony of John the Baptist about the Lord Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God,

who has eternal life to give to those who believe in Him); [John 4:27-30](#) (The woman of Samaria testifies that the Lord Jesus is the Christ); [John 4:39-42](#) (The people of the Samaritan village testify that the Lord Jesus is truly the Savior of the world); [John 6:14-15](#) (People acknowledge the Lord Jesus as the Prophet to come into the world); [John 6:40-44](#) (The Jews murmur about the Lord Jesus; He testifies to them that He is the Son of God who has the power and authority to give eternal life); [John 6:45-51](#) (The Lord Jesus affirms the testimony of the prophets about Him; He is the bread of life and He has seen the Father and comes from the Father); [John 6:66-71](#) (Peter testifies that the Lord Jesus is the Most Holy of God); [John 7:2-8](#) (The Lord Jesus' brothers confront Him; The Lord Jesus testifies that the world hates Him because He came to bear witness concerning the world); [John 7:9-12](#) (The Jews murmur about the Lord Jesus at the feast of Tabernacle); [John 7:25-27](#) (The Jews debate about the Lord Jesus being the Christ); [John 7:31](#) (At the feast of the Tabernacle, many believed that the Lord Jesus is the Christ); [John 7:40-43](#) (The people debated about the Lord Jesus being the Christ, and division happened because of Him); [John 7:44-48](#) (The officers testify to the chief priests and Pharisees that the Lord Jesus is a Teacher from God); [John 9:8-11](#) (The man blind from birth testifies to the people that the Lord Jesus healed him); [John 9:24-34](#) (The man blind from birth testifies to the Jews that the Lord Jesus comes from God, and that is why He has the power to heal); [John 10:40-42](#) (People believe the words of John about the Lord Jesus being the Son of God); [John 11:27-30](#) (Martha testifies that the Lord Jesus the Christ, the Son of God, the One coming into the world); [John 11:51-52](#) (Caiaphas, the high priest, prophesied that by His death, the Lord Jesus would gather together the children of God); [John 12:12-23](#) (A great multitude welcomes the Lord Jesus as He enters Jerusalem, riding on a colt; they all shout: "Hosanna! Blessed is the One coming in the name of the Lord! And the King of Israel!"); [John 12:38-41](#) (The Lord Jesus fulfills the prophecy of Isaiah as he saw His coming glory); [John 13:18-19](#) (The Scripture is fulfilled in the Lord Jesus as He is about to be betrayed by the one eating bread with Him); [John 15:27](#) (The disciples bear witness concerning the Lord Jesus); [John 17:23-24](#) (The Lord Jesus prays to the Father for the disciples to be with Him and be a testimony to the world that He is the Son of God and One with the Father); [John 19:24](#) (At the cross the Scripture is fulfilled: "They divided My garments among them, And for My clothes they did cast lot."); [John 19:31-34](#) (The Lord Jesus' dead body is pierced on the cross, and blood and water come out from His side); [John](#)

19:35-37 (John the apostle who has seen the things at the cross borne true witness about the Lord Jesus and what happened); John 20:30-31 (The Gospel of John was written as a testimony that the Lord Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God); John 21:24-25 (John the Apostle declares himself as a true witness about the things the Lord Jesus did while on earth).

3. The Testimony of God the Father and of the Holy Spirit for His Son and of the Lord Jesus for His Father

The Lord Jesus is the Son of God and the Son of Man as testified by God the Father Himself and by the Holy Spirit; and God the Father is the Father of the Lord Jesus as testified by the Lord Jesus Himself, who is with the Father from the beginning. The Gospels provide us with testimonies from God the Father that the Lord Jesus is His Son and from the Lord Jesus that God the Father is His Father. The testimony of God the Father about the Lord Jesus being His Son is a living miracle for the human race. As the Lord God descended on Mount Sinai to speak in the hearing of the people of Israel so they hear and may believe that Moses received the Law of Moses from God Almighty (Exodus 19:9), in the same way, the Lord God the Father opened the heavens and spoke with a voice from heaven in the hearing of the people and disciples, at the water baptism event of the Lord Jesus where He declared, “This is My beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased,” and in another place, at the miraculous transfiguration event of the Lord Jesus, “This is My Beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased; listen to Him,” telling all humans that the Lord Jesus is the Son of God Almighty, and by the will of the Father now He is the Law for humans. Therefore, the only Law of God for humans today is the Lord Jesus Himself, who came to do His Father’s will and show all humans the way to the Father.

Furthermore, the Father God Almighty showed mighty miracles during the crucifixion of the Lord Jesus, at the tomb of the Lord Jesus, and at the resurrection of the Lord Jesus to seal the deity and humanity of the Lord Jesus forever. Moreover, the Lord Jesus Himself also testifies to the leaders of that time, people, and His disciples that God the Father is His true Father, He comes from the Father, He is One with the Father and the Holy Spirit, and He came to earth to do His Father’s will and show the way to the Father. The Gospels record for us the words of the Lord Jesus Himself where He explicitly tells all humans: “I and the Father are One,” and “I am the way, and the truth, and the life; no one comes to the Father, if not by Me.” Therefore, for a true believer in the Lord Jesus, believing He is the Son of God and the Son of Man and God of the Trinity is foundational for their faith.

Below, we highlight all the Gospels' passages, which entirely cover this theme, with hyperlinks to our [Bible Commentary Forever](#) (BCF) work, where you will find more comments and explanations. In addition, we provide a short description of each passage, characterizing its content.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** [Matthew 3:16-17](#) (The Voice of the Father at the Lord Jesus' water baptism: "This is My beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased."); [Matthew 11:27](#) (Only the Son knows the Father, and only the Father knows the Son); [Matthew 16:27-28](#) (The Lord Jesus is about to come in the glory of His Father); [Matthew 17:1-8](#) (The Voice of the Father at the transfiguration of the Lord Jesus: "This is My Beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased; listen to Him!"); [Matthew 22:41-46](#) (The Lord Jesus questions the Pharisees to admit that He is the Son of God); [Matthew 23:1-10](#) (The Lord Jesus tells the multitude that He is the Christ and One with the Father); [Matthew 25:31-46](#) (The Lord Jesus, as the Son of Man, comes in the glory of His Father to sit on the throne of His glory to judge the nations); [Matthew 26:51-56](#) (The Lord Jesus came to fulfill His Father's will and the Scripture); [Matthew 26:63-64](#) (The Lord Jesus tells His accusers: "You will see the Son of Man sitting at the right hand of Power"); [Matthew 27:45-53](#) (The Father shows miraculous signs at the death of His beloved Son on the cross); [Matthew 28:18-20](#) (The Father has given authority to the Lord Jesus in heaven and on earth, to make disciples in the name of God the Father, God the Son, Jesus Christ, and God the Holy Spirit).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** [Mark 1:9-11](#) (The Voice of the Father at the Lord Jesus' water baptism: "Thou are My beloved Son, in Thee I am well pleased."); [Mark 9:1-8](#) (The Voice of the Father at the transfiguration of the Lord Jesus: "This is My Son the Beloved; hear you Him."); [Mark 12:28-29](#) (The Lord Jesus tells that He is One with the Father); [Mark 12:35-37](#) (The Lord Jesus testifies that He is the Christ, the Son of God); [Mark 14:61-62](#) (The testimony of the Lord Jesus in front of the council that He is the Christ, the Son of God); [Mark 15:33-38](#) (The Father shows miraculous signs at the death of His beloved Son on the cross).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** [Luke 2:39-40](#) (The grace of God was upon the Child Jesus); [Luke 2:41-52](#) (The Child Jesus testifies at the temple that He is the Son of God: "I must be in My Father's house"); [Luke 3:22](#) (The Voice of the Father at the Lord Jesus' water baptism: "Thou are My beloved Son, in Thee I

am well pleased.”); Luke 4:14-21 (The testimony of the Lord Jesus that the prophecy of Isaiah applies to Him being the Son of God); Luke 5:16 (The Lord Jesus prays to the Father); Luke 6:12 (The Lord Jesus prays all night to the Father); Luke 7:18-30 (The testimony of the Lord Jesus to John’s disciples that His miraculous works and preaching the good news to the poor proves He is the Messiah); Luke 9:27-36 (The Voice of the Father at the transfiguration of the Lord Jesus: “This is My Son, My chosen One; listen to Him!”); Luke 10:21-24 (Only the Father knows the Son and only the Son knows the Father); Luke 17:20-21 (The Lord Jesus Himself is the kingdom of God); Luke 20:39-44 (The Lord Jesus teaches that He is the Christ); Luke 22:67-70 (The Lord Jesus testify that the Son of Man will be seated at the right hand of the power of God); Luke 23:44-46 (The Father shows miraculous signs at the death of His beloved Son on the cross).

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** John 1:1-5 (The Holy Spirit testifies through the apostle John that the Lord Jesus is the Son of God from eternity, the Light of the world, and God of creation); John 1:8-12 (The Lord Jesus is the existing true Light of the universe, who enlightens all humans); John 1:13-14,16-18 (The Lord Jesus is the Son of God and the Son of Man; He is the begotten Son of God, the One existing in the bosom of the Father, who came to earth to show the way); John 1:50-51 (The testimony of the Lord Jesus that the Son of Man is anointed by God the Father to work miracles on earth); John 3:13 (The Son of Man exists in heaven, and has descended out of heaven); John 4:1-26 (The Lord Jesus and the woman of Samaria at Jacob’s well; the Lord Jesus affirms to her that He is the Messiah who is called Christ); John 4:31-38 (The Lord Jesus came to do His Father’s will and complete His work of salvation for humans); John 5:17-21 (The Lord Jesus testifies that He is the Son of God and One with the Father: whatever the Father does, the Son does likewise); John 5:30-47 (The Lord Jesus has the testimony of the Father, John the Baptist, and the Scripture that He is the Son of God); John 6:32-33 (The Lord Jesus is the bread of God, who came down from heaven to give life to all); John 6:36-39 (The Lord Jesus came down to do the will of His Father and save His own); John 6:57-59 (The Lord Jesus lives on account of the Father; He has life to give to those that feed on Him); John 7:17-18 (The Lord Jesus is righteous and seeks the glory of His Father); John 7:28-30 (The Lord Jesus cries out in the temple that He is from the Father and the Father sent Him); John 8:14-16 (The Lord Jesus testifies about His deity, being One with the Father); John 8:17-18 (The law of God backs the

Lord Jesus' testimony); John 8:21-23 (The Lord Jesus tells that He is from above); John 8:27-30 (The Lord Jesus speaks from the Father; the Father is always with Him); John 8:39-40 (The Lord Jesus speaks the truth from God the Father); John 8:42-43 (The Lord Jesus comes forth from God the Father); John 8:44-50 (The Lord Jesus speaks the truth and honors His Father); John 8:51-54 (The Father is the One who glorifies the Lord Jesus); John 8:55-58 (The Lord Jesus testifies that He is One with the Father from the beginning); John 10:16-19 (The Lord has the authority to lay down His life, take it again, and save the world); John 10:22-38 (The Lord Jesus testifies that He is the Christ of God and He is One with the Father); John 11:37-40 (The Lord Jesus came to testify to the glory of God); John 11:41-42 (The Lord Jesus thanks the Father for the testimony that He sent Him); John 12:28-30 (The Father, with a voice from heaven, testifies to the multitude that He glorifies His Son); John 12:44-47 (The Lord Jesus testifies that He is One with the Father, and He came to save the world); John 12:48-50 (The Father sent the Lord Jesus to earth, and He came to speak the Father's commandment, which is life eternal); John 13:20 (The Lord Jesus is One with the Father); John 13:31-32 (The Father glorifies the Son in Himself and the Father is glorified in the Son); John 14:5-12 (The Lord Jesus is the way, the truth, and the life; He is the only way to the Father; knowing the Lord Jesus is knowing the Father); John 14:19-20 (The Lord is the giver of life; the Father is in Him and He is in the Father); John 14:26-28 (The Intercessor, the Holy Spirit whom the Father will send in the name of the Lord Jesus, testifies to all things about the Lord Jesus; the Father is greater than all); John 15:24-25 (If you hate the Lord Jesus you hate the Father); John 15:26 (The Holy Spirit, the Spirit of truth, bear witness concerning the Lord Jesus); John 16:12-15 (The Holy Spirit receives from the Lord Jesus and declares and glorifies the Lord Jesus); John 16:23-28 (The Lord Jesus came out from the Father and leaves the world to go back to the Father; He asks the Father on our behalf); John 16:29-32 (The Lord Jesus is not alone, the Father is with Him); John 17:1-6 (The Lord Jesus completed the work of the Father and prays: "Glorify Thy Son that the Son may glorify Thee."); John 17:9-10 (The Lord Jesus prays concerning His own: "All Mine are Thine, and Thine Mine"); John 20:17 (The Lord Jesus tells Mary that He is ascending the His Father).

4. The Lord Jesus has Power and Authority over the Seen World

The Lord Jesus is the Son of God and the Son of Man, as testified by His miraculous works, which show power and authority over the seen world. These miraculous

works are essential in testifying about the Lord Jesus, telling us that He is One with the Father and the Holy Spirit and that He was with the Father from the beginning, and through Him all things were made. The Lord Jesus, through His mighty works on earth, shows us that He has power and authority over nature. He can calm the storms and create all visible elements, including plants and living beings, by His word, and the Gospels are a testimony to these as he multiplies food for people, withers a fig tree, and more. Furthermore, He has power and authority over the human spirit and soul, as shown by Him calling His disciples, who immediately left everything and followed Him. He also has power and authority to delegate His disciples with power and authority to minister. During His ministry on earth, He gave power and authority to His disciples to cast out demons and to heal all kinds of weaknesses and sicknesses in His name. Moreover, He has power and authority over God's Law as He came to fulfill the Law of Moses, be the Lord of the Sabbath, and become the Law for humans. All the mighty works that the Lord Jesus did while on earth should be a catalyst for one's faith and make us confident followers of the Lord Jesus as the Son of God and the Son of Man. After the Lord Jesus' death and resurrection, we only need to believe in Him and His Word from our hearts and follow His commandments to be saved, gain eternal life, and be with Him forever.

Below, we highlight all the Gospels' passages, which entirely cover this theme, with hyperlinks to our [Bible Commentary Forever](#) (BCF) work, where you will find more comments and explanations. In addition, we provide a short description of each passage, characterizing its content.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** [Matthew 4:18-22](#) (The Lord Jesus has the power and authority to call His disciples; He calls Peter, Andrew, James, and John, and they follow Him); [Matthew 8:23-27](#) (The Lord Jesus rebukes a great storm in the sea); [Matthew 9:9](#) (The Lord Jesus calls Matthew the tax collector, and he follows); [Matthew 10:1-4](#) (The Lord Jesus gives authority to His disciples to cast unclean spirits and heal every disease); [Matthew 12:1-8](#) ("The Son of Man is Lord of the Sabbath"); [Matthew 13:53-58](#) (The Lord Jesus is rejected in His own region; people stumble at His deity because of His earthly family); [Matthew 14:15-21](#) (The feeding of the five thousand men, besides women and children); [Matthew 15:32-39](#) (The Lord Jesus, in a desolate place, feeds four thousand men, besides women and children with five loaves and two fishes); [Matthew 17:24-27](#) (The Lord Jesus pays the teacher's tax using the

shekel from a fish mouth); Matthew 21:17-19 (At the word of the Lord Jesus a fig tree withered away).

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** Mark 1:16-20 (The Lord Jesus has the power and authority to call His disciples; He calls Simon, Andrew, James, and John and they follow); Mark 2:14 (The Lord Jesus calls Levi the tax collector, and he follows); Mark 2:23-28 (The Lord Jesus tells all that He is the Son of Man and Lord of the Sabbath); Mark 3:13-19 (The Lord Jesus has the power and authority to appoint His twelve disciples); Mark 4:35-41 (The Lord Jesus rebukes a great sea storm of wind and brings peace to the sea); Mark 6:1-6 (The Lord Jesus is rejected in His home town; people stumble at His deity because of His earthly family); Mark 6:7-13 (The Lord Jesus gives the disciples authority over unclean spirits and sends them two by two; the disciples cast out many demons and anointed the sick with oil, and they were healed); Mark 6:30-44 (The Lord Jesus feeds a multitude of five thousand men using five loaves and two fishes); Mark 6:45-52 (The Lord Jesus walks on the sea and calms the wind of the sea); Mark 8:1-9 (The Lord Jesus feeds a great multitude using seven loaves and two fishes; those eating were five thousand men); Mark 11:13-14,20 (At the word of the Lord Jesus a fig tree dried up from the roots).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** Luke 4:22-29 (The Lord Jesus is rejected in His hometown; people stumble at His deity because of His earthly family); Luke 5:4-10a (At the Lord Jesus' command Simon Peter catches a multitude of fishes); Luke 5:10b-11 (The Lord Jesus has the power and authority to call His disciples: Peter, James, and John follow Him); Luke 5:27-28 (The Lord Jesus calls Levi the tax collector, and he follows); Luke 6:1-5 (The Son of Man is Lord of the Sabbath); Luke 6:13-16 (The Lord Jesus assigns the seat of apostleship to the twelve disciples); Luke 8:22-25 (The Lord Jesus rebukes a windstorm on the lake); Luke 9:12-17 (The Lord Jesus feeds about five thousand men with five loaves and two fishes); Luke 13:14-17 (The Lord Jesus, the Son of Man, is the Lord of the Sabbath); Luke 16:16-17 (The law and the prophets were there until John, and now the Word of the Son is the way into the kingdom of God).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** John 1:35-44 (The Lord Jesus has power and authority to call His disciples); John 4:43-45 (The Lord Jesus bore witness that a prophet has no honor in his hometown); John 6:3-13 (The Lord Jesus feeds many thousands of people with five barley loaves and two small fishes); John 9:12-16 (The Lord Jesus does miraculous work on the Sabbath); John

9:35-39 (The Lord Jesus came to judge the world and give sight to the spiritually blind); John 9:40-41 (The Lord Jesus sees the hearts and the sins of people); John 18:6-8 (The military guard experience the power and authority of the Lord Jesus); John 18:36-37 (The Lord Jesus was born to be a King and bear witness to the truth); John 20:22-23 (The Lord Jesus' breath has power in it to give the Holy Spirit).

5. The Lord Jesus Has Power and Authority over the Unseen World

The Lord Jesus is the Son of God and the Son of Man, as testified by His miraculous works, which show power and authority over the unseen world. The Lord Jesus is the Lord of all, over the seen and the unseen world. We, with our human eyes, do not see the spiritual world, but there is a spiritual world of angels, heavenly hosts, spirits, demons, and other spiritual beings that surround us. The Lord Jesus has power and authority over the unseen world, and He demonstrated that to the seen and unseen world by performing many miracles over the unseen world, delivering many people from all kinds of demons. As shown in the Gospels, the demons fear the Lord Jesus and know that He is the Son of God, who has power and authority over them to cast them into hell, and many cried out to Him, "Thou are the Son of God," and asking mercy from Him. The Lord Jesus not only sees and knows the unseen spiritual world, but He also sees and knows the activity of the evil one in the humans' mind, spirit, and soul. He has the power and authority over the human spirit and soul, mind and heart, and can condemn evil activity within humans and free humans from evil activity. Furthermore, the Lord Jesus has the power to raise the dead and bring the human body, soul, and spirit together to be alive again.

The miracles that the Lord Jesus performs over the unseen world should give us confidence that He is the Son of God and the Son of Man, and He has the power and authority to heal our spirits and souls and protect them from harm coming from the unseen world. Specifically, there is power in the blood of the Lord Jesus that was shed on the cross. His blood shed on the cross is our shield and protection in the spiritual world if we believe in His work of salvation on the cross, where He defeated the evil one and won the victory for us all.

Below, we highlight all the Gospels' passages, which entirely cover this theme, with hyperlinks to our [Bible Commentary Forever](#) (BCF) work, where you will find more

comments and explanations. In addition, we provide a short description of each passage, characterizing its content.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** Matthew 8:28-34 (The Lord Jesus heals two, possessed by demons, excessively violent, in the region of the Gadarenes); Matthew 9:18-19, 23-26 (The Lord Jesus brings the ruler's daughter to life from a coma); Matthew 9:31-34 (The Jesus heals a mute man possessed by a demon); Matthew 12:22-30 (The Lord Jesus heals the blind and mute who was possessed by a demon, and He tells His accusers that His power over the unseen world is by the Spirit of God); Matthew 12:43-45 (The Lord Jesus has the power and authority to protect us from evil; glorify Him); Matthew 15:21-28 (The Lord Jesus heals the daughter of a Canaanite woman who was grievously possessed by a demon); Matthew 16:22-23 (The Lord Jesus rebukes Peter); Matthew 17:14-18 (The Lord Jesus heals an epileptic boy who suffered grievously from a demon).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** Mark 1:23-28 (An unclean spirit recognized the Lord Jesus as the Son of God; the Lord Jesus commands the spirit to come out); Mark 1:32-34 (The Lord Jesus heals many and casts out many demons); Mark 1:38-39 (The Lord Jesus preaches in synagogues in all Galilee, and casts out demons); Mark 3:11-12 (The unclean spirits, fell down before the Lord Jesus, and cried out, "Thou are the Son of God."); Mark 3:20-30 (The Lord Jesus teaches about blasphemy against the Holy Spirit and Him); Mark 5:1-17 (The Lord Jesus heals a man with an unclean spirit; the spirits are afraid of being tormented by the Lord Jesus and ask permission to go into a herd of swine); Mark 5:21-24,35-43 (The Lord Jesus brings Jairus' daughter to life from a coma); Mark 7:24-30 (The Lord Jesus, by His word, casts a demon out of the daughter of the Syrophoenician woman); Mark 8:32-33 (The Lord Jesus rebukes Peter); Mark 9:14-27 (The Lord Jesus heals a man's son who had a tormenting dumb spirit).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** Luke 4:33-37 (An unclean demon recognized the Lord Jesus as the Holy One of God; the Lord Jesus rebuked the unclean demon and cast it out); Luke 4:41 (The Lord Jesus casts out demons; they recognize Him as the Son of God); Luke 7:11-17 (The Lord Jesus raises the dead son of a widow, in Nain); Luke 8:26-39 (The Lord Jesus, in the region of Gerasenes, heals a man with demons; the demon is afraid of being tormented by the Lord Jesus, the Son of God); Luke 8:40-42,49-56 (The Lord Jesus brings

Jairus' daughter to life from a coma); Luke 9:37-43 (The Lord Jesus heals a boy seized by a demon, which the disciples couldn't heal); Luke 10:17-20 (The Lord Jesus beheld Satan fallen as lightning out of heaven, as He gave power and authority to His disciples); Luke 11:14-23 (The Lord Jesus heals one mute possessed by a demon; and He tells that His power over the unseen world is by Him being the Son of God); Luke 11:24-26 (The Lord Jesus has the power and authority to protect us from evil; glorify Him); Luke 13:10-13 (The Lord Jesus heals a woman who had a spirit of infirmity for eighteen years);

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** none.

6. The Lord Jesus Has Human Feelings, and He Has Power and Authority to Teach, Raise the Dead, and Perform Physical and Spiritual Healings

The Lord Jesus is the Son of God and the Son of Man, as testified by His ministry on earth, which shows power and authority to teach the Word of God and perform many miraculous healing works among people. As the Son of Man, the Lord Jesus is wholly, one hundred percent, human. He has a human body, a spirit, and a soul, as all humans have; furthermore, He has all human feelings of sadness, pain, sorrow, love, and all other human emotions. Yet, He is sinless in His humanity and the only sinless human who ever lived and will live on this earth. The Lord Jesus came to earth to take our weaknesses and bear our sicknesses (Matthew 8:17). While on earth, He miraculously heals all kinds of human illnesses and spiritual conditions, restores physical body parts to full health, and raises the dead. The Lord Jesus is One with the Father and the Holy Spirit and has the power and authority to give life by His word, as testified by the miracles of raising people from the dead, including the miraculous resurrection of Lazarus, the brother of Mary and Martha, which many Jews witnessed. Lazarus was in the grave for four days, but the Lord Jesus by His spoken word restored Lazarus decaying body to be alive again, showing His power and authority over the human body and the human spirit and soul.

We should note that the miraculous healings performed by the Lord Jesus didn't stop at His crucifixion. After ascending to the Father, the Lord Jesus sent the Holy Spirit to continue His work on earth. In the Book of Acts, we can see that by the gifts of the Holy Spirit, the disciples performed many miraculous healings in the name of the Lord Jesus (Acts 3:1-8). We, as followers of the Lord Jesus, in His name, by faith, and by the mercy of God through the gifts of the Holy Spirit, can pray for miraculous healings, and as the Bible says, whatever we ask in His name by the will of the

Father will be done ([John 14:13-17](#)). Therefore, even today, the Lord Jesus is alive and still performing miracles among humans.

The Word is the Lord Jesus Himself, and the Word is alive and has power and authority. We must treasure the Word of God in our hearts by reading and meditating on the Bible, earnestly seeking the gifts of the Holy Spirit, and, by faith, praying for understanding so we can apply the knowledge we gain to our daily lives.

Below, we highlight all the Gospels' passages, which entirely cover this theme, with hyperlinks to our [Bible Commentary Forever](#) (BCF) work, where you will find more comments and explanations. In addition, we provide a short description of each passage, characterizing its content.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** [Matthew 4:1-2](#) (The Lord Jesus fasted for forty days and afterward He hungered); [Matthew 4:23-25](#) (The Lord Jesus teaches and heals every sickness throughout Galilee); [Matthew 7:28-29](#) (The Lord Jesus teaches the multitudes with authority); [Matthew 8:1-4](#) (The Lord Jesus heals a leper); [Matthew 8:5-13](#) (The Lord Jesus heals the centurion's slave, sick of palsy, from afar by His word); [Matthew 8:14-15](#) (The Lord Jesus heals Peter's mother-in-law from a fever); [Matthew 9:20-22](#) (The Lord Jesus heals the woman with the issue of blood by her touching His garment); [Matthew 9:27-31](#) (The Lord Jesus heals two blind men who cried to Him for mercy); [Matthew 9:35](#) (The Lord Jesus teaches, heals every disease, and proclaims the kingdom); [Matthew 9:36](#) (The Lord Jesus has compassion for the lost souls); [Matthew 12:9-13](#) (The Lord Jesus heals, on a Sabbath, a man having a withered hand); [Matthew 12:15-16](#) (The Lord Jesus healed many that followed Him); [Matthew 13:1-2](#) (The Lord Jesus sitting in a boat teaches great multitudes who stood on the seashore); [Matthew 14:13](#) (The Lord Jesus felt sad at the death of John the Baptist and withdrew to a desolate place); [Matthew 14:14](#) (The Lord Jesus has compassion on a great multitude, and healed their sick); [Matthew 14:34-36](#) (The Lord Jesus heals the sick in the land of Gennesaret; many touched His garment and were healed); [Matthew 15:29-31](#) (The Lord Jesus heals the lame, crippled, mute and many others on a mountain by the sea of Galilee); [Matthew 19:1-2](#) (The Lord Jesus heals people in the region of Judea beyond the Jordan); [Matthew 20:29-34](#) (The Lord Jesus heals two blind men who cried, "Lord, Son of David, have mercy on us."); [Matthew 21:12-16](#) (The Lord Jesus shows zeal for the house of His Father, teaches and heals the blind

and the lame); Matthew 26:36-39, 42-44 (The Lord Jesus is sorrowful and distressed and prays to the Father for His cup of suffering).

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** Mark 1:21-22 (People recognize the authority of the Lord Jesus to teach); Mark 1:29-31 (The Lord Jesus heals Peter's mother-in-law from a fever); Mark 1:35-37 (People seek the Lord Jesus); Mark 1:40-45 (The Lord Jesus heals a leper, who goes and proclaims the work of the Lord); Mark 2:13 (The Lord Jesus teaches the multitude by the sea); Mark 3:1-5 (The Lord Jesus heals on a Sabbath a man having the hand withered); Mark 3:7-9 (The Lord Jesus teaches a great multitude from a boat); Mark 3:10 (The Lord Jesus healed many, so His name spread around); Mark 4:1-2 (The Lord Jesus sitting in a boat teaches a great multitude who was by the sea on the land); Mark 4:33-34 (The Lord Jesus speaks the Word in parable); Mark 5:25-34 (The Lord Jesus heals the woman with a flux of blood twelve years); Mark 6:53-56 (The Lord Jesus many in the Gennesaret region; as many as touched Him were made whole); Mark 7:31-37 (The Lord Jesus heals one deaf and with an impediment in his speech); Mark 8:22-26 (The Lord Jesus heals a blind man at Bethsaida); Mark 10:1 (The Lord Jesus as He has been accustomed teaches the multitudes); Mark 10:46-52 (The Lord Jesus heals Bartimaeus, a blind beggar, who sat by the way side); Mark 11:11-12 (The Lord Jesus hungered); Mark 11:15-17 (The Lord Jesus shows zeal for the house of His Father and teaches in the temple); Mark 12:38-40 (The Lord Jesus is above the teachers of the teachers of the Law); Mark 14:32-36,39-40 (The Lord Jesus is deeply troubled and distressed, even to death; He prays to the Father for His cup of suffering).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** Luke 4:1-2 (The Lord Jesus fasted for forty days and afterward He hungered); Luke 4:31-32 (The Lord Jesus's word has authority); Luke 4:38-39 (The Lord Jesus heals Simon's wife's mother); Luke 4:40 (The Lord Jesus laid hands on the sick and healed every one of them); Luke 4:42-44 (The Lord Jesus preaches the good news of the kingdom of God); Luke 5:1-3 (The Lord Jesus teaches the multitudes by the Lake of Gennesaret out of a boat); Luke 5:12-15 (The Lord Jesus heals a man full of leprosy; teaches a great multitude and heals their infirmities); Luke 5:17 (The Lord Jesus teaches and heals; the miraculous power was within Him); Luke 6:6-11 (The Lord Jesus heals a man with a withered hand on the Sabbath); Luke 6:17-19 (The Lord Jesus comes to a level place where He teaches, and heals many of their diseases, and many troubled with unclean spirits); Luke 7:1-10 (The Lord Jesus heals a

centurion's slave, sick to the point of death, from afar by His word); Luke 8:1-3 (The Lord Jesus journeys, teaches and heals, among whom some certain women); Luke 8:43-48 (The Lord Jesus heals the woman with the flux of blood for twelve years); Luke 9:10-11 (The Lord Jesus receives the multitude at Bethsaida, teaches them, and cures the sick); Luke 13:22 (The Lord Jesus teaches and makes progress towards Jerusalem); Luke 14:1-6 (The Lord Jesus heals a man with dropsy, on a Sabbath); Luke 17:11-14 (The Lord Jesus cleanses ten lepers, along the borders between Samaria and Galilee); Luke 18:35-43 (The Lord Jesus heals a blind beggar); Luke 19:45-48 (The Lord Jesus shows zeal for the house of His Father and teaches in the temple); Luke 20:45-47 (The Lord Jesus is above the teachers of the teachers of the Law); Luke 21:37-38 (The Lord Jesus teaches in the temple; He is the true teacher of humans); Luke 22:39,41-45 (The Lord Jesus prays to the Father for His cup of suffering, and an angel from heaven appeared to Him, strengthening Him); Luke 22:49-51 (The Lord Jesus heals the cut ear of the servant of the high priest); Luke 23:34 (The Lord Jesus prays for those who crucified Him).

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** John 2:13-17 (The Lord Jesus shows zeal for the house of His Father and cleanses the temple); John 4:46-54 (The Lord Jesus heals from the distance the son of a nobleman in Cana of Galilee); John 5:1-9 (The Lord Jesus heals a man who laid sick for thirty eight years at the pool of Bethesda); John 6:1-2 (The Lord Jesus does many signs and healings among people); John 6:34-35 (Come to the Lord Jesus who is the bread of life for all); John 7:13-16 (The Lord Jesus' teaching is from the Father who sent Him); John 8:1-4 (The Lord Jesus teaches people in the temple); John 8:19-20 (Knowing the Lord Jesus is to know the Father); John 8:37-38 (The Lord Jesus knows the human heart); John 9:1-7 (The Lord Jesus heals a man blind from birth); John 11:1-14 (The Lord Jesus has love for Lazarus, Martha, and her sister); John 11:31-36 (The Lord Jesus was deeply moved in the Spirit at Lazarus death and He wept); John 11:43-45 (The Lord Jesus raises Lazarus from the dead, and many Jews believe in Him); John 12:27 (The Lord Jesus' soul is troubled; He prays to His Father for His suffering hour); John 13:1 (The Lord Jesus loves His own until the end); John 15:5 (The Lord Jesus is the vine and we are the branches; abide in Him to bear fruit to glorify the Father); John 15:13-17 (The Lord Jesus gave His life for the world; He teaches us the things He heard from His Father); John 18:1 (The Lord Jesus goes to pray in the

garden); [John 18:19-21](#) (The Lord Jesus spoke freely and taught the people the Word of God); [John 19:26-27](#) (The Lord Jesus cares for His mother).

7. The Lord Jesus Has Power and Authority to Forgive Sins and Give Eternal Life

The Lord Jesus is the Son of God and the Son of Man, as testified by His ministry on earth with power and authority to forgive sins and give eternal life. The Gospels clearly present many events where the Lord Jesus forgives the sins of people and promises people eternal life, including the criminal on the cross, which was crucified by His side. Then, we as believers must ask ourselves who the Lord Jesus is for us and believe that only God has these powers, and therefore, we must believe that the Lord Jesus is the Son of God and God of the Trinity of God. Also, the Bible shows that Lord Jesus has the power and authority to build His church on earth by sending the Holy Spirit after His ascension to the Father. Moreover, His church, the church of God, is built upon the confession that the Lord Jesus is the Christ, the Son of the Living God. We, as true believers in the Lord Jesus, are part of His living church and will be with Him forever in His kingdom, and He will be our King and Lord. The Lord Jesus explicitly tells us in the Gospels that He has come to give eternal life and call the sinners to repent, so come and follow Him. In Romans 3:23, the Bible tells us, “for all have sinned, and fall short of the glory of God,” so the Lord Jesus has come on earth to show His love for humans and draw all humans to Himself ([John 12:32](#)).

Below, we highlight all the Gospels’ passages, which entirely cover this theme, with hyperlinks to our [Bible Commentary Forever](#) (BCF) work, where you will find more comments and explanations. In addition, we provide a short description of each passage, characterizing its content.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** [Matthew 9:1-8](#) (The Lord Jesus forgives the sins of a paralytic and heals him); [Matthew 9:10-13](#) (The Lord Jesus came to earth to call the sinners to repentance); [Matthew 11:18-19](#) (The Lord Jesus came to be a friend of sinners to bring them out of their dark ways); [Matthew](#)

16:18-20 (The Lord Jesus is the Christ and has the power and authority to build His church on earth: “Upon this rock I will build My church.”).

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** Mark 2:1-5,10-12 (The Lord Jesus forgives the sins of a paralytic and heals him); Mark 2:15-17 (The Lord Jesus came to earth to bring healing to the sinners).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** Luke 5:18-26 (The Lord Jesus forgives the sins of man who was palsied and heals him); Luke 5:29-32 (The Lord Jesus came to earth to bring healing to the sinners); Luke 7:36-50 (The Lord Jesus tells the parable of the two debtors at Simon the Pharisees’ house and forgives a woman who sinned much); Luke 15:1-2 (The Lord Jesus came to earth to forgive the sinners); Luke 19:1-10 (The Lord Jesus and Zacchaeus story; the Lord Jesus brings salvation to Zacchaeus house, “for the Son of Man came to seek and to save the lost”);
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** John 5:10-14 (The Lord Jesus tells the man He healed at the Bethesda pool: “sin no more.”); John 8:10-11 (The Lord Jesus forgives the woman caught in adultery); John 8:12-13 (The Lord Jesus says that He is the light of the world); John 8:24-26 (The Lord Jesus speaks from the Father and those who believe in Him are forgiven); John 11:24-26 (The Lord Jesus tells that He is the resurrection and the life; believing in Him we gain eternal life); John 12:24-26 (The Father honors those who serve the Lord Jesus, and they will be with the Lord Jesus in heaven); John 12:34-37 (The Lord Jesus is the light of the world, believe in Him).

8. The Lord Jesus is Greater Than All and Has Power and Authority over Time and Space

The Lord Jesus is the Son of God and the Son of Man, as testified by His ministry on earth with power and authority over human beings, time, and space. The Lord Jesus has power and authority over all humans, and He knows everything about humans, not by what one can see from the outside but by what is in their hearts and minds. He is greater than all in wisdom, knowledge, and understanding. The Lord Jesus, as God on earth, has the power and authority to stop time, bend time and space, and know and tell the times. The Lord Jesus is above time and space, and He has proved this through many miraculous works He performed while on earth. The Bible is the book of miracles of God, and the Lord Jesus in Himself is our God’s miracle who can give us salvation and a future with Him in His heavenly kingdom. By faith and with the

help of the Holy Spirit, we can understand and believe the miraculous work of God and find peace in the fact that the Lord Jesus secures our future.

Below, we highlight all the Gospels' passages, which entirely cover this theme, with hyperlinks to our [Bible Commentary Forever](#) (BCF) work, where you will find more comments and explanations. In addition, we provide a short description of each passage, characterizing its content.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** [Matthew 12:38-40](#) (The Lord Jesus sign for all generations is His death and resurrection); [Matthew 12:41-42](#) (The Lord Jesus is greater than the prophet Jonah and wiser than Solomon); [Matthew 14:22-33](#) (The Lord Jesus walks on the water, saves Peter from sinking, and calms the sea storm); [Matthew 16:21](#) (The Lord Jesus predicts His suffering); [Matthew 17:9-13](#) (The Lord Jesus tells that He will suffer at the hand of the Jews and that John the Baptist was Elijah to come); [Matthew 17:22-23](#) (The Lord Jesus predicts His betrayal); [Matthew 20:17-19](#) (The Lord Jesus predicts His death trial at the hands of the Jews and His crucifixion at the hands of Gentiles); [Matthew 21:1-3, 6-7](#) (The Lord Jesus, at Bethphage, sent two disciples to bring a colt to Him from a village); [Matthew 24:1-2](#) (The Lord Jesus predicts the destruction of the temple buildings); [Matthew 26:1-2](#) (The Lord Jesus predicts that He will be betrayed to be crucified); [Matthew 26:6-13](#) (The Lord Jesus at Simon the leper's house predicts His burial); [Matthew 26:17-19](#) (The Lord Jesus instructs the disciples to go to a certain man in the city and prepare the Passover); [Matthew 26:20-23](#) (The Lord knows the disciple who will betray Him); [Matthew 26:26-29](#) (The Lord Jesus institutes the New Covenant in His broken body and shed blood on the cross); [Matthew 26:30-35](#) (The Lord Jesus predicts the offense of the disciples and Peter); [Matthew 26:45-46](#) (The Son of Man recognizes the hour of His betrayal into the hands of sinners).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** [Mark 2:6-9](#) (The Lord Jesus knows the hearts of the scribes); [Mark 8:31](#) (The Lord Jesus predicts His suffering, rejection, crucifixion, and resurrection); [Mark 9:9-13](#) (The Lord Jesus predicts His resurrection and suffering and identifies John the Baptist as Elijah, who came to restore all things); [Mark 9:30-32](#) (The Lord Jesus predicts His betrayal, death, and resurrection on the third day); [Mark 9:33-34](#) (The Lord Jesus knows what humans talk in secret); [Mark 10:32-34](#) (As they went to Jerusalem, the Lord Jesus predicted His betrayal, condemnation to death, and deliverance to the

Gentiles); Mark 11:1-6 (The Lord Jesus sends two of His disciples to bring a colt tied); Mark 13:1-2 (The Lord Jesus predicts the destruction of the temple buildings); Mark 14:3-9 (The Lord Jesus in the house of Simon the leper predicts His burial); Mark 14:12-16 (The Lord Jesus sends the disciple into the city to prepare for the Passover at a certain man's house); Mark 14:17-21 (The Lord Jesus knows the disciple who will betray Him); Mark 14:22-25 (The Lord Jesus institutes the New Covenant in His broken body and shed blood on the cross); Mark 14:26-31 (The Lord Jesus predicts the offence of the disciples and Peter); Mark 14:41-42 (The Lord Jesus knows that His hour of being betrayed in the hands of sinners has come).

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** Luke 4:30 (The Lord Jesus shows His power and authority over time and living things); Luke 5:33-35 (The Lord Jesus is the bridegroom of the church); Luke 9:44-45 (The Lord Jesus predicts His betrayal into the hands of men); Luke 11:29-30 (The Lord Jesus' death and resurrection are His supernatural signs to humans); Luke 11:31-32 (The Lord Jesus is greater than the prophet Jonah and wiser than Solomon); Luke 12:49-55 (The Lord Jesus know that His suffering is for the sins of the world; He predicts the trouble on earth); Luke 13:31-35 (The Lord Jesus predicts His crucifixion in Jerusalem and the desolation of the house of Israel until they receive Him as the Savior); Luke 18:31-34 (The Lord Jesus foretells to His disciples His death and resurrection after three days); Luke 19:28-34 (The Lord Jesus sends two of His disciples into a village to bring Him a colt to ride into Jerusalem); Luke 19:41-44 (The Lord Jesus predicts the siege of Jerusalem); Luke 21:5-6 (The Lord Jesus foretells the destruction of the temple buildings); Luke 22:7-13 (The Lord Jesus sends Peter and John to prepare the Passover in the city, in the upper room at man's house); Luke 22:14-20 (The Lord Jesus takes the Last Passover with the disciples, proclaims the New Covenant in His broken body on the cross, and sheds blood on the cross); Luke 22:21-23 (The Lord knows the betrayer); Luke 22:31-34 (The Lord Jesus prayed for Peter's faith and foretells Peter's denial); Luke 22:35-38 (The Lord Jesus foretells His crucifixion between the lawless); Luke 23:27-31 (The Lord Jesus predicts the suffering in the world after His crucifixion);
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** John 2:1-12 (The Lord Jesus turns water into heavenly grape juice at the wedding in Cana of Galilee; this topic classification relates to who will drink and what they will see and feel); John 2:23-25 (The Lord Jesus knows what is in people's hearts); John 6:16-22 (The Lord Jesus

walks to the disciples on a stormy sea; He immediately transports the boat to the shore, bending time and space); John 6:52-56 (The Lord Jesus states: “The one that eats My flesh and drinks My blood abides in Me, and I in him); John 6:60-63 (The Lord Jesus tells that His words are Spirit and life); John 6:64-65 (The Lord Jesus know the betrayer and those that do not believe in Him); John 7:19-23 (The Lord Jesus is the Lord of the Sabbath); John 7:33-34 (The Lord Jesus predicts His death and resurrection); John 8:5-9 (The Lord Jesus knows the hearts and the sins of people); John 8:59 (The Lord Jesus concealed Himself and passed through the midst of His accusers); John 11:15-23 (The Lord Jesus tells Martha that Lazarus will rise again); John 12:2-8 (The Lord Jesus predicts His burial); John 12:31-33 (The Lord Jesus predicts His death on the cross and resurrection to draw all to Himself); John 13:2-3,11 (The Lord Jesus knows what will happen to Him, and He knows the one betraying Him); John 13:21-30 (The Lord Jesus identifies the betrayer as the one He gives the morsel to); John 13:36-38 (The Lord Jesus predicts Peter’s denial); John 16:16-19 (The Lord Jesus testifies to the disciples about His death and resurrection); John 18:9 (The words the Lord Jesus spoke are fulfilled); John 18:15-18,25-27 (Peter’s denial of the Lord Jesus); John 18:32 (The Lord Jesus’ word signifying by what death He was about to die is fulfilled); John 19:15-16 (The Lord Jesus is delivered to be crucified showing that He knew all things ahead); John 19:17-20 (The Lord Jesus, the King of the Jews, is crucified with the criminals); John 21:18-19 (The Lord Jesus predicts by what manner of death Peter will glorify Him).

9. The Miraculous Resurrection of the Lord Jesus’ Body from the Dead

The Lord Jesus is the Son of God and the Son of Man, as testified by His miraculous resurrection from the dead. The Lord Jesus’ body was taken down from the cross by Joseph of Arimathea and his helpers and placed in his tomb, hewn in a rock, and sealed with a large stone. The events of the miraculous resurrection of the Lord Jesus are given in all four Gospels and are a testimony to all humans forever. When the Lord Jesus returns to earth in His glory, the Bible tells us that all humans will see His pierced body, which was raised to life. Moreover, in the new world to come, the Lord Jesus will be the only human with human flesh as a testimony to His sacrifice for the human race and the salvation He provides for this sinful world. For a true believer in the Lord Jesus, we must believe in the complete body resurrection of the Lord Jesus and complete human body ascension to heaven and that He is seated at the right hand of the Father in His human body and heavenly body as one (Acts 2:29-35). His

human and heavenly bodies are now One with Him in heaven, and He is still the only Son of God and Son of Man and God in the Trinity of God. In this subsection, we present Bible passages that support the deity and humanity of the Lord Jesus through His death and resurrection; these passages bring people's testimony to the empty tomb of the Lord Jesus. Other resurrection Bible passages are part of another teaching category we considered.

Below, we highlight all the Gospels' passages, which entirely cover this theme, with hyperlinks to our [Bible Commentary Forever](#) (BCF) work, where you will find more comments and explanations. In addition, we provide a short description of each passage, characterizing its content.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** none.
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** [Mark 16:1-8](#) (Women witness the empty tomb of the Lord Jesus; a young man clothed in a white robe testifies that the Lord Jesus is risen); [Mark 16:12-13](#) (The testimony of the two disciples about the risen Lord).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** [Luke 24:1-3](#) (The women at the tomb do not find the body of the Lord Jesus inside the tomb); [Luke 24:12](#) (Peter witnesses the empty tomb); [Luke 24:22-24](#) (Some women witnessed the empty tomb and witnessed a vision of angels who said that the Lord Jesus "is living."); [Luke 24:33-34](#) (At Jerusalem, the disciples tell the other two about Peter seeing the risen Lord); [Luke 24:35](#) (The testimony of the two disciples about the risen Lord).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** [John 20:1-10](#) (Mary, Peter, and the other disciple witness the empty tomb).

Conclusions

The Lord Jesus Christ is the only Son of God and Son of Man. He is the only One the Father has begotten. He is the only way to the Father and the only One who can bring salvation to humankind and give eternal life to all who truly believe in Him. The Gospels provide us with numerous accounts about the deity and humanity of the Lord Jesus as the Son of God and the Son of Man and God of Trinity. These accounts are not the fabrication of some crafty people trying to deceive the world; instead, they are testimonies of ordinary people who suffered persecution for the name of the Lord Jesus as we can find in the Book of Acts. They didn't have anything to gain from this crooked world but only looked forward to the things to come and meet

their Lord and King again in heaven, so they stood firm on their faith and their testimony to what they witnessed on earth while walking with the Lord Jesus because of fear of God and love for the humankind to show them the way to be saved and gain eternal life in heaven with the beloved Son of God, Jesus Christ. The teachings of the Gospels, about the Lord Jesus Christ being the Son of God and the Son of Man should be more than enough for all humans to come and follow Him as their Lord and Savior. Therefore, we encourage all to read and meditate on the Word of God and give their hearts to the Lord Jesus to receive salvation and eternal life.

Meditation Tasks:

1. Meditate on each theme presented in this category; no one can understand the teachings of the Bible correctly if they do not believe that the Lord Jesus is the Son of God and the Son of Man at the same time, and He is God of the Trinity of God.

Teachings about How to be a Disciple of the Lord Jesus

Introduction

Continuation from “[The Teachings of the Lord Jesus](#).”

The Lord Jesus came to earth from the heart of God the Father as the Son of God and the Son of Man, to die on a cruel cross, to be buried in a grave, to rise from the dead on the third day, and to ascend into heaven and be seated at the right hand of God the Father, so we all humans might have the way into heaven and the hope of resurrection when the Lord Jesus will come in His Father’s glory to take His own ([Matthew 16:27](#), [John 11:25-26](#), [Romans 6:8-11](#), 1 Corinthians 15:12-19). The Bible tells us that the Lord Jesus is the only way to God the Father and heaven, so from heaven’s eyes, on this earth, there are two types of people: believers in the Lord Jesus, the Son of God, and non-believers. The teachings about being a disciple of the Lord Jesus are fundamental for all believers and non-believers alike, as there is no salvation for our souls but by faith in the Lord Jesus Christ, the Son of God. As disciples of the Lord Jesus, we must endure until the end of our lives on earth to be saved ([Matthew 24:13](#)) and have the patience of the saints by keeping the commandments of God and the faith in the Lord Jesus ([Revelations 14:12](#)). The believers in the Lord Jesus are responsible for keeping the faith, and the unbelievers are accountable for coming to the faith; therefore, as disciples of the Lord Jesus, we have a double duty: minister to others and keep the faith in the Lord Jesus until the end. In the Gospels, the Lord Jesus teaches us how to accomplish these duties.

Considering the task of ministering to others, as disciples of the Lord Jesus, we should remember that after the Lord Jesus’ resurrection from the dead, He met the eleven disciples on a mountain in Galilee, where He gave them the great commission, saying, in [Matthew 28:18-20](#), “All authority has been given to Me in heaven and on the earth. Go therefore, make disciples of all the nations, baptizing them into the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit: teaching them to observe all things whatever I commanded you; and behold, I am with you all the days, until the end of the age.” Therefore, our primary duty as disciples of the Lord Jesus is to go and make new disciples, meaning that when we meet someone, the first thing in our hearts should be to call upon the Lord for help to be the guide to

our tongue to speak and to deposit words in our hearts to be able to speak out those words for all that we have a chance to meet. But first, we must be aware of the fake (insincere) appearances of people who come and ask for opinions of the Word; don't answer from your own understanding; think of the Lord first, and the words will come.

Considering the task of keeping faith until the end, as disciples of the Lord Jesus, we are responsible for reading and meditating on the Holy Word and learning and practicing what the Word of God teaches us. As faithful disciples of the Lord Jesus, we must follow all the teachings and commandments that the Lord Jesus gives us in His Word. Furthermore, for a faithful disciple of the Lord Jesus, reading and meditating on the Word of God and living our life according to the commandments of the Lord should not be some random activity; instead, we must follow the teachings and commandments of our Lord Jesus continuously throughout our lives (Joshua 1:8, Psalm 1:1-6). By following the Lord Jesus' teachings and commandments and staying in prayer, we must trust and believe in His promise that He will never leave us or forsake us (Hebrew 13:5, Deuteronomy 31:8).

In the Gospels, the Lord Jesus presents numerous teachings on becoming and being His faithful disciples. As true disciples of the Lord Jesus, we must always follow and obey all His teachings to be pleasing to the Trinity of God (God the Father, God the Son, Jesus Christ, and God the Holy Spirit). To understand all the Gospels' teachings about how to be a disciple of the Lord Jesus, we organize all the Gospels' writings that fall into this category into eleven themes, as given below.

1. Repentance of sins.
2. The water baptism.
3. The Holy Spirit Baptism.
4. The commandments and the Law of God.
5. Faith in God and relationships with God.
6. The Lord Jesus came to complete the Law.
7. Personal relationships and living the life rightfully and pleasing to God.
8. Serving God.
9. How to be with the world.
10. How to be with other believers.
11. The light and the dark

The Presentation of the Teaching Themes

This section describes all the teaching themes by highlighting their essential features. Furthermore, we present a complete list with links to Bible passages in the Gospels that relate to each theme, with a short description of each passage. These links point to our Bible Commentary Forever work, where you will find more helpful comments to understand better the Word of God.

1. Repentance of Sins

The Lord Jesus is the Son of God and the Son of Man; He came to the earth to do the Father's will and provide salvation for humanity. The Bible teaches us in Romans 3:23, "for all have sinned, and fall short of the glory of God." The sins in our lives separate us from God, and the only way back to God the Father is through the Lord Jesus Christ. The Lord Jesus' body was broken, and His blood was shed on the cross for the sins of the world. Forgiveness of sins and salvation for our souls is in no one else but only through the beloved Son of God, the Holy Lamb of God, the only sinless Man who ever lived on earth. Salvation and eternal life are found only by repentance and faith in the Lord Jesus; faith that the Lord Jesus is the Son of God, and the Father has sent Him into the world to bring salvation to all. The Lord Jesus teaches us in the Gospels in many places that repentance of sins is the first step to the salvation of our souls and the way to make peace with God. As disciples of the Lord Jesus, we always need to come to the Father and ask for forgiveness in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ. No other name under heaven can provide forgiveness for our sins and make peace between us and God the Father if not the Lord Jesus Christ ([Acts 4:12](#)).

Below, we highlight all the Gospels' passages which we placed into this theme; we encourage all readers to check the hyperlinks to all the Bible passages, where you will also find more comments and explanations we provide in our Bible Commentary Forever (BCF for short) work.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** [Matthew 4:17](#) (The Lord Jesus teaches repentance for the kingdom of heavens); [Matthew 11:20-24](#) (Repent and accept the Lord Jesus as God. The Lord Jesus clearly tells us that if we do not repent, we will be destroyed in hell); [Matthew 11:25-26](#) (The Lord Jesus can forgive sins, and under the death of the Lord Jesus on the cross, sins can be

forgiven); Matthew 26:69-75 (Peter denies the Lord three times, and then he cries and repents from his heart).

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** Mark 1:14-15 (The Lord Jesus proclaims the Gospel of God and commands repentance and faith in the gospel); Mark 14:66-72 (Peter denies the Lord three times, and then he cries and repents from his heart).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** Luke 13:1-5 (Repent and receive forgiveness, or you will perish; here is the free choice of humans); Luke 18:9-14 (Pray humbly to God from your heart and ask His forgiveness from your heart); Luke 22:55-62 (Peter denies the Lord three times, and then he cries and repents from his heart).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** John 8:33-36 (Repent to God in the name of the Lord Jesus and He will set you free); John 13:8-10 (Clean your actions, repent, and acknowledge your sins, and you should be whole clean by the work of the Lord Jesus on the cross).

2. The Water Baptism

The water baptism is the baptism of the repentance unto remission of sins, which the Father has initiated through His servant, John the Baptist, to prepare the way for His beloved Son, Jesus Christ (Luke 3:1-14). The Gospels also tell us that the Lord Jesus Himself came to John the Baptist and asked to be baptized in water. The Son of God and the Son of Man, the only sinless man that ever lived on earth, came to be baptized by a human in order “to fulfill all righteousness.” The Lord Jesus is God and human, and this is an example for all humans to follow. If the sinless One has to be baptized in water, then all the people who want to follow the Lord Jesus must also do so. As is the walk through the gate of death, even so, a person baptizing in the water dies from the old life and becomes a new person in the Lord. The old book of life has been destroyed, and a new book of life starts (See Matthew 12:30, 36-37). When you merge under the water in the name of the Father, the Son Jesus Christ, and the Holy Spirit, your soul is touched by the Lord in that water. And when you come out from that water, the Lord becomes the guide of your soul in the unseen world and the master of your life in this world. Water baptism is important for a new believer, but the person must meditate on the Lord’s teaching and seek and ask for the Holy Spirit baptism as well. All humans need to be born of water and the Holy Spirit to enter the kingdom of heaven, as the Lord Jesus tells us in John 3:5. In Matthew

16:18, the Lord Jesus says to Peter, “Moreover, I also say to you, that you are Peter, and upon this rock, I will build My church; and the gates of Hades will not prevail against it.” The rock is the truth about the Lord Jesus that He is “the Christ, the Son of the Living God.” The Lord Jesus will build His church on the truth that Peter received, which is the rock, the foundation of the church. The Lord Jesus opened the gate of the heavens (See Matthew 3:16) and put the seal of His blood on the gates of hell when He was there (at the gates) during the three days (See 1 Peter 3:18-20). The Lord Jesus put the seal on the gates, which is His blood, and it is a forbidden seal; no evil can touch this seal or remove it (See Exodus 12:13). All His children have the salvation seal of the Lamb on them. The gates of Hades will never open for those who have the salvation seal of the Lamb on them. The salvation seal is put on a believer’s heart when the person believes and gives his heart to the Lord Jesus, and then the person goes and is baptized in the water by immersion (complete baptism, heart, and water, meaning soul and body). The believer’s responsibility is to keep this seal by staying in faith, studying the Word of God, and keeping the Word in the heart until the end of life on this earth. If you have the Word in your heart, you have the Lord’s shield of protection. As disciples of the Lord Jesus, no one can have any excuse not to be baptized in water; baptism in the water is a command from the Father. The Father gave the practice of water baptism to His messenger, John the Baptist, and the Father Himself upheld the water baptism practice for all believers in the Lord Jesus at the baptism of His beloved Son, Jesus Christ when He spoke from heaven. Therefore, all believers in the Lord Jesus must be baptized in water for the remission of their sins (Matthew 3:13-17).

Below, we highlight all the Gospels’ passages which we placed into this theme; we encourage all readers to check the hyperlinks to all the Bible passages, where you

will also find more comments and explanations we provide in our Bible Commentary Forever (BCF for short) work.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** Matthew 3:13-15 (The Lord Jesus is baptized in water by John the Baptist).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** none.
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** Luke 3:21 (The Lord Jesus is baptized in water by John the Baptist, and He prays to His Father).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** John 3:4-7 (The Lord Jesus teaches us that one must be born of water and the Spirit in order to enter the kingdom of the heaven).

3. The Holy Spirit Baptism

The Lord Jesus Himself was baptized in the water, and the Holy Spirit and many passages of the Scripture tell us that the Lord Jesus is the one that baptizes with the Holy Spirit (See for example Matthew 3:11-12, Matthew 3:13-17, Mark 1:7-8, Mark 1:9-12, Mark 16:16, Luke 3:16-17, Luke 3:21-22, Luke 12:50, John 1:33, John 3:5, John 3:23, John 3:32-34, John 3:34-35). A true believer in God's beloved Son should follow all the teachings and follow the example in the behavior of the beloved Son of God to live a faithful Christian life. While staying with His disciples in Jerusalem, after His bodily resurrection, the Lord Jesus ordered His disciples to wait for the promise of the Father, namely, the baptism with the Holy Spirit saying to them, in Luke 24:49: "And behold, I am sending out the promise of My Father upon you; but remain you in the city, until you be clothed with power from on high." Furthermore, Luke speaking through the Holy Spirit confirms the Lord Jesus' commandment and promise in Acts 1:4-5, by saying, "He commanded them not to depart from Jerusalem, but to wait for the promise of the Father: which you heard of Me; for John indeed baptized with water; however, you will be baptized with the Holy Spirit, not many days after these." Finally, in Acts chapter 2, we witness the coming of the Holy Spirit upon the disciples: "and they were all filled with the Holy Spirit, and began to speak in other tongues, as the Spirit was giving them utterance," (Acts 2:4). The baptism in the Holy Spirit, the promise of the Father, is for all believers in the beloved Son of God, not only for the ones that waited at that time in Jerusalem. Regardless of what comes first, the baptism of the Holy Spirit or water baptism, all believers must be baptized in the water to complete the transformation of a person in the body and the spirit. The sign of the Holy Spirit's

baptism must show according to the Bible, and we know in our spirit about this act (See [Acts 2:2-4](#)). The gift of speaking in tongues is the confirmation of the human spirit joining the salvation seal. The Lord God has a plan for that person when their spirit joins the salvation seal; the work from the will of the Father will be performed through that joining. Speaking out loud one word or a few words in a tongue is the sign of the Holy Spirit baptism, as established by God the Father Himself at His sending of the Holy Spirit upon the disciples who were waiting on the day of Pentecost at Jerusalem ([Acts 2:1-4](#), [Comments John 1:33](#)). As disciples of the Lord Jesus, we must keep praying and asking the Father's mercy in the name of the Lord Jesus to bless us with the baptism in the Holy Spirit so we can fulfill the call He has for us on this earth; we should never give up seeking to receive the baptism in the Holy Spirit ([Luke 11:13](#)).

There are many passages in the Gospels related to the Holy Spirit baptism; however, here in this category, we highlight one passage that relates to this theme, with a hyperlink to our Bible Commentary Forever (BCF for short) work where you will find more spiritual comments and explanations.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** none.
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** none.
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** none.
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** [John 3:8-12](#) (You do not know where the Holy Spirit is, not by eyes, nor by ears, but only by the heart being touched from Him; repent, pray, and wait on the Lord to receive the baptism in the Holy Spirit).

4. The Commandments and the Law of God

In [Mark 1:40-44](#), the Lord Jesus heals a leper. And, in [Mark 1:43-44](#) the Lord Jesus “strictly charged him, and straightaway sent him out, and says to him, See you say nothing to no one, but go, show yourself to the priest, and offer for your cleansing what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” In these verses, it shows to all humans, with all the mighty works the Lord Jesus performed, but first, He follows the rules the Father has set. What did the Lord Jesus tell the man to do first? To “offer for his cleansing” what the law has commanded. The Lord Jesus did not come to follow but to fulfill the law, yet He always follows the law. The Bible tells us that the Lord Jesus came to earth to fulfill the Father's plan for humanity by being the perfect sacrifice for the sins of the world and providing salvation for the souls of all

people. As believers in the Lord Jesus, we no longer need to follow the old sacrificial law but must follow the Lord Jesus' Law. As the Lord Jesus is an example for us following the Father's Law, we need to follow His Law, so by following His Law, through Him, we follow the entire Law of the Father. In the Gospels, the Lord Jesus provides us with numerous commandments to follow; however, the Lord Jesus talking to a lawyer in [Matthew 22:36-40](#), He gives us the two commandments on which the law hangs: "You shall love the Lord Thy God with all your heart, and with all your soul, and with all your mind" and "you shall love your neighbor as yourself." And from Romans 13:8-9, we understand that love fulfills the law: "Owe no one anything, except to love one another; for the one loving the other has fulfilled the law. For this, You shall not commit adultery, You shall not kill, You shall not steal, You shall not covet, and if there be any other commandment, it is summed up in this word, namely, You shall love your neighbor as yourself. Love does not do evil to the neighbor; love therefore is the fulfilment of the law."

So, then, what does it really mean to love in the context of the law of God? The love the Lord Jesus talks about is true love from our hearts, which is challenging for many of us to achieve. However, we must always strive to apply the love commandments in our life journey. Furthermore, as disciples of the Lord Jesus, we fulfill the love commandments by following all the commandments that the Lord Jesus outlines for us in His Word. Therefore, we must look at these two love commandments the Lord Jesus gives us, as they enclose many other individual commandments. Throughout the Gospels, these two commandments relate to many individual commandments that we must be aware of when relating to our God and neighbors. As disciples of the Lord Jesus, we are responsible for following all His commandments and being aware of their implications in our relationship with the law of God; we must always strive to hold our faith and a good conscience towards God (1 Timothy 1:19, 1 John 3:20-24).

Below, we highlight all the Gospels' passages which we placed into this theme, where you will find many individual commandments given to us by our Lord Jesus; we encourage all readers to check the hyperlinks to all the Bible passages, where you will also find more comments and explanations we provide in our Bible Commentary Forever (BCF for short) work.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** [Matthew 7:1-6](#) (Do not judge so that you are not judged); [Matthew 7:12](#) (Whatever you wish people do to you, do so to them); [Matthew 8:18-22](#) (The Lord Jesus teaches what it means to follow

Him; His home is in heaven, and He is the giver of life); Matthew 9:14-17 (The Lord Jesus teaches that we cannot mix the teachings of the Lord with the teachings of the world); Matthew 12:36-37 (The Lord Jesus teaches us to watch the words that we speak); Matthew 16:24-26 (The Lord Jesus teaches that by accepting Him we are not free anymore, we belong to Him); Matthew 18:1-6 (The Lord Jesus teaches us that being humble as a young child makes us greater in heaven); Matthew 19:3-9 (The Lord Jesus teaches about divorce and marriage; a believer should not divorce, except for fornication); Matthew 19:10-12 (The Lord Jesus teaches the two relationship options for a believer: live together with someone in a marriage relationships or be alone); Matthew 19:16-20 (The Lord Jesus teaches us that He is God and we must follow God's commandments to have eternal life); Matthew 22:15-22 (The wisdom of God is beyond the human mind and human understanding; the Lord Jesus teaches to give God the things of God, and to Caesar the things of Caesar); Matthew 22:34-40 (The Lord Jesus teaches us the two great commandments to live by); Matthew 26:40-41 ("Watch and pray, that you enter not into temptation"); Matthew 28:19-20 (The resurrected Lord Jesus gives the great commission to the disciples: "Go therefore, make disciples of all the nations, baptizing them into the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit ...").

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** Mark 2:18-22 (The Lord Jesus teaches that we cannot mix the teachings of the Lord with the teaching of the world); Mark 5:18-20 (The Lord Jesus teaches us to go and tell people about His mercy and what the Lord has done for us); Mark 8:34-38 (The Lord Jesus teaches how to be His disciples and not to be ashamed of Him, the Son of Man); Mark 9:35-37 (The Lord Jesus teaches us that being humble as a little child makes us greater in His kingdom); Mark 10:2-12 (The Lord Jesus teaches about divorce and marriage; one male and one female through marriage become one flesh in God's eyes); Mark 10:17-20 (The Lord Jesus teaches us that He is God and we must follow God's commandments to have eternal life); Mark 11:25-26 (The Lord Jesus teaches us to forgive others so the heavenly Father will forgive us as well); Mark 12:13-17 (The wisdom of God is beyond the human mind and human understanding; the Lord Jesus teaches to give God the things of God, and to Caesar the things of Caesar); Mark 12:30-34 (The Lord Jesus teaches us the

two great commandments to live by); Mark 14:37-38 (“Watch and pray, so that you enter not into temptation”).

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** Luke 5:36-39 (The Lord Jesus teaches that we cannot mix the teachings of the Lord with the teaching of the world); Luke 6:37 (The Lord Jesus teaches: do not judge, do not condemn, forgive); Luke 9:46-48 (The Lord Jesus teaches us that being humble as a little child makes us greater in heaven); Luke 9:57-62 (The Lord Jesus teaches what it means to follow Him; His home is in heaven, and He is the giver of life); Luke 10:25-28 (The Lord Jesus teaches us that we must follow God’s commandments to have eternal life); Luke 11:27-28 (True blessedness of God comes to those that hear and meditate on the word of God and keep it); Luke 12:13-15 (Keep your life away from any kind of avarice); Luke 16:18 (Do not divorce your spouse; but if there is forgiveness the marriage for life can continue); Luke 18:18-21 (The Lord Jesus teaches us that He is God and we must follow God’s commandments to have eternal life); Luke 20:19-26 (The wisdom of God is beyond the human mind and human understanding; the Lord Jesus teaches to give God the things of God, and to Caesar the things of Caesar); Luke 21:34-36 (Take heed to yourself and do not live in sins and pleasures of the world); Luke 22:40,46 (“Pray that you enter not into temptation”); Luke 24:44-48 (Read and meditate on the Word of God and be witnesses to its message about the death and resurrection of the Lord Jesus).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** John 7:24 (Do not judge by appearance, judge righteously); John 13:12-15 (The washing of feet is a straight requirement from the beloved Son of God; what He has done, He also requires us to do without exception); John 13:33-35 (The Lord Jesus gives us a new commandment to love one another); John 15:9-10 (Keep the commandments of the Lord Jesus so we abide in His love); John 21:4-6 (Obey the commandments of the Lord and help each other in the Lord).

5. Faith in God and Relationships with God

Believers in the Lord Jesus Christ or non-believers in the Lord Jesus Christ, we all need faith; as believers, we need more faith to grow closer to our Lord Jesus, and as non-believers, we need faith to become believers in the Lord Jesus Christ. No person under the heavens has any excuse not to believe in God, the Creator of the universe, earth, and life. When we look around us, we must see the hand of the Almighty God

in all of creation. Psalm 33 is a wonderful praise psalm to the Almighty God, the Creator of all things, seen and unseen.

However, one might ask what faith in God is and why we need faith. We can define faith as knowledge about God that was already put in our souls before we were even born. And, when we read the Bible or hear the Word of God, this knowledge and the Word will link the soul and the heart and will strengthen the soul's knowledge about faith. And when we start developing faith in our hearts, if we use the knowledge of the Word that we have learned from the Bible to ask the Lord to increase our faith, then that becomes a gift ([Romans 10:17](#), [Romans 4:3-5](#)). Hebrews 11:1 says, "faith is the assurance of things hoped for, a conviction of things not seen," and Hebrews 11:6 says that without faith, it is impossible to please God. But one may ask, should we believe in what, in whom, and why? [Acts 4:11](#) says that the Lord Jesus is "the stone, which has been regarded as nothing by you the builders, which has become into head of the corner." Therefore, the beloved Son of God is the true stone of faith for the world. His glory and power are unlimited; God the Father has given Him all authority over all humans. Only through Him can we reach the Father. For a disciple of the Lord Jesus, the main foundation of faith is based upon the resurrection of the Son of God; without the beloved Son on the Father's side, all human faith does not have any ground; everyone's faith must be built on the resurrection of the beloved Son of God. "Into head of the corner," which means that the Father will take souls into the kingdom only at the Son's request. In our journey as disciples of the Lord Jesus, we must always be watching and stay firm in the faith; be courageous; be strong (1 Corinthians 16:3); and always remember that the Lord Jesus is the way and the truth and the life and that no one comes to the Father except through Him ([John 14:6](#)). In the Gospels, the Lord Jesus teaches us how to stay firm in faith and build a strong relationship with God by: praying to the Father, believing that the Lord Jesus is the light of the world and the only way to the Father, believing in the Trinity of God (God the Father, God the Son Jesus, and God the Holy Spirit), believing that the Lord Jesus exists from the beginning with God the Father and the Holy Spirit, laying treasures in heaven, being always ready, watching our words, being aware of false teachers, being on guard, and many other such these commandments. As disciples of the Lord Jesus, we should take to heart all these teachings and pray to gain more faith and become closer to our Lord and Savior, Jesus Christ.

Below, we highlight all the Gospels' passages which we placed into this theme, where you will find many individual commandments given to us by our Lord Jesus; we encourage all readers to check the hyperlinks to all the Bible passages, where you

will also find more comments and explanations we provide in our Bible Commentary Forever (BCF for short) work.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** Matthew 6:9-13 (The Lord's prayer); Matthew 6:16-18 (The Lord Jesus teaches how to fast to be pleasing to God the Father in heaven); Matthew 6:19-21 (Do not lay up treasure on earth; instead, lay up treasure in heaven); Matthew 6:25-34 (Do not worry; seek first the kingdom of God and all other things you need will be added to you); Matthew 10:16-26 (Be practically wise, pure, and ready; tribulations will come; do not fear; the Spirit of the Father is with you); Matthew 11:28-30 (Come to the Lord Jesus and stay under His blood to find rest); Matthew 12:31-32 (Watch the words we say about the Lord Jesus and the Holy Spirit); Matthew 15:10-14 (The Lord Jesus teaches to watch the blind guides); Matthew 16:5-12 (The Lord Jesus warns us not to mingle the teachings of the Word of Life with the teachings of humans so that our faith will not become contaminated); Matthew 17:19-21 (The Lord Jesus teaches us that little faith can do much, even move the mountains); Matthew 19:25-26 (With God all things are possible); Matthew 21:20-22 (The Lord Jesus teaches that if you have faith, whatever you may ask in prayer and believing will be granted if it is God's will); Matthew 24:25-27 (The Lord Jesus tells us about His coming and tells us to watch for false christs and prophets); Matthew 24:32-35 (Watch for the signs of the Lord Jesus' return; His words will be accomplished); Matthew 25:14-30 (The parable of the talents teaches us that each of us has knowledge about the Creator in our souls from the beginning, and each one of us is responsible for searching and building up our faith and using the gifts the Lord has given us).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** Mark 8:13-21 (The Lord Jesus warns us not to mingle the teachings of the Word of Life with the teachings of humans so that our faith will not become contaminated); Mark 9:28-29 (The Lord Jesus teaches us to pray for achieving the work of God); Mark 10:24-27 (With God all things are possible); Mark 11:19,21-24 (The Lord Jesus teaches that if you have faith, whatever you may ask in prayer and believing will be granted if it is God's will); Mark 12:41-44 (The Lord Jesus teaches to have faith from your heart in

serving God); Mark 13:28-31 (Watch for the signs of the Lord Jesus' return; His words will be accomplished).

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** Luke 6:39-40 (The disciple is not above his teacher); Luke 11:1-4 (The Lord's prayer); Luke 12:1 (The Lord Jesus teaches to be aware of false teachings from lying spirits); Luke 12:10 (Watch the words we say about the Lord Jesus and the Holy Spirit); Luke 12:16-21 (The parable of the wealthy person: store treasure for yourself in heaven, not on earth); Luke 12:22-31 (Do not worry; seek first the kingdom of God and all other things you need will be added to you); Luke 12:32-34 (Fear not: exchange your possessions for alms to God, who will store them for you in heaven); Luke 13:6-9 (The parable of the barren fig tree: the Lord Jesus teaches us to produce fruits of faith and love); Luke 13:23-30 (Struggle to walk the narrow way of faith, so you can enter the kingdom of God); Luke 14:25-27 (Love the Lord Jesus, follow Him, and carry your cross daily); Luke 14:28-30 (Read the Word, meditate, and pray; keep your faith in the Lord Jesus and keep all the commandments); Luke 14:31-33 (When you go in the world pray and ask guidance from the Lord as many adversaries are around); Luke 17:5-6 (Little faith can do great miracles); Luke 17:15-19 (Have faith and give glory to God for all things); Luke 18:1-8 (The parable of the judge and the widow: we always ought to pray and not lose heart); Luke 18:26-27 (With God all things are possible); Luke 21:1-4 (The Lord Jesus teaches to have faith from your heart in serving God); Luke 24:10-11 (Do not doubt the bodily resurrection of the Lord Jesus).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** John 6:28-29 (Have faith in the Lord Jesus who the Father sent); John 12:42-43 (Believe in the Lord Jesus and do not be afraid to confess Him to the world); John 14:21 (Have the commandments of God and love the Lord Jesus, so we are loved by the Father and the Son); John 15:1-4 (Abide in the Lord Jesus and He will abide in us, so we can bear fruit for Him); John 17:7-8 (Have faith in the Lord Jesus and believe that the Father has sent Him); John 20:29 (Blessed are those that believe the testimony of the Bible about the Lord Jesus); John 21:1-3 (The life without the Lord Jesus has no success); John 21:8-11 (The disciples faced their own challenges and learned that without faith in the Lord, they would not succeed; when they followed the advice, they get all they wanted and more); John 21:15-17 (Love the Lord Jesus from all our hearts and do the ministry He called you for); John 21:20-23 (Do not compare with others; mind your own call and follow the Lord Jesus regardless of circumstances).

6. The Lord Jesus Came to Complete the Law

The teaching that the Lord Jesus is the completion of the Old Law, which God the Father gave to His chosen people, has great significance for all humans. The Lord Jesus Himself, in [Matthew 5:17](#), tells us, “Do not consider that I came to abolish the Law or the Prophets; I did not come to abolish, but to complete.” And in Romans 10:5, the Word reads, “For Christ is the end of the law unto righteousness to every one that believes.” Furthermore, in [Luke 16:16-18](#), the Lord Jesus predicts the completion of the Old Law. So, what do these sayings mean for us as believers in the Lord Jesus Christ? They tell us that the Father fulfilled His promises to His people. The Old Law cannot be forgotten, but the New Law will be the continuation of making the Old Law complete by the birth of the beloved Son of God, His death on the cross, and His resurrection to fulfill the promise of the Father. As believers in the Lord Jesus, we no longer need to follow the Old Law; the Lord Jesus has fulfilled and abolished the Old Law; we just follow the Lord Jesus’ Law; the Son of God is the New Law for us. In Hebrews 10:4, the Word says, “For it is impossible that the blood of bulls and goats should take away sins,” telling us that it was necessary for a new perfect sacrifice to wash away the sins of the world. In Hebrews chapter 10, we further learn that the Lord Jesus Christ, the Son of God and the Son of Man, is the perfect sacrifice made once for the entire human race. He offered Himself once and forever as a sacrifice for sins and then sat down at the right hand of God the Father. Because of that, God the Father took away the Old Covenant and established a New Covenant in the blood of the Lord Jesus, “by which will, we have been sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.” So, for a believer in the Lord Jesus, keeping the Old Covenant means keeping the New Covenant in the blood of the Lord Jesus. The Lord Jesus is the way, the truth, and the life, and no one comes to the Father but by Him ([John 14:6](#)). As disciples of the Lord Jesus, it is essential to believe that the Lord Jesus came to fulfill and complete the Law of God and that He is our New Law; He is the Lord of the Sabbath for us, and in Him, all of the Law of the Father is completed and fulfilled.

Below, we highlight one important Bible passage that relates to this theme, where you will find more comments and explanations, which we provide in the Bible Commentary Forever (BCF for short) work.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** [Matthew 5:17-20](#) (The Lord Jesus came to complete the Law of God; He is the fulfillment of the Law of God and the

New Law of God for us to enter the kingdom of the heavens, as established by God the Father).

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** none.
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** none.
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** none.

7. Personal Relationships and Living the Life Rightfully and Pleasing to God

As followers of the Lord Jesus, one might ask how to behave towards God, live our lives rightfully, and be pleasing to God. In Romans chapter 6, the Holy Spirit, speaking through Apostle Paul teaches us that we must be dead to sin and alive to God. And, in Romans 6:15, we have a question to consider: “What then? Shall we sin, because we are not under law, but under grace? God forbid.” Reading further, we learn that the wages of sins are death and that the free gift of God is eternal life by faith in the Lord Jesus Christ. God the Father is pleased with us when we have faith in the Lord Jesus and surrender our lives entirely to our Lord Jesus Christ His beloved Son, and love Him as our Savior and giver of life for our souls. The first commandment the Lord Jesus gave us in [Matthew 22:37](#) is, “You shall love the Lord Thy God with all your heart, and with all your soul, and with all your mind.” By loving God, we should strive to cut the sins in our lives and be pleasing to Him by living a holy life. This love commandment can be summed up in many individual commandments that the Lord Jesus outlines for us in the Gospels. As disciples of the Lord Jesus, we should pay attention to all of these individual commandments that the Lord Jesus gives us to better fulfill the “love the Lord Thy God” commandment. Most of the individual commandments we place into this theme deal with personal relationships that teach us how to be as persons, don’t be ashamed of our Lord Jesus, stay firm in faith, forgive people, watch our hearts carefully, be humble towards God and people, and many more. As disciples of the Lord Jesus, we must pray and respond to the prompting of the Holy Spirit in our hearts when we are at fault, repent, and correct our ways so we live lives pleasing to our God.

Below, we highlight all the Gospels’ passages which we placed into this theme, where you will find many individual commandments given to us by our Lord Jesus; we encourage all readers to check the hyperlinks to all the Bible passages, where you

will also find more comments and explanations we provide in our Bible Commentary Forever (BCF for short) work.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** Matthew 5:21-48 (The Lord Jesus teaches us how to behave as His followers, emphasizing the following personal relationships: anger, lust, divorce, oaths, retaliation, and love for our enemies); Matthew 6:1-4 (Make your alms to God in secret so your heavenly Father who sees in secret will reward you); Matthew 6:5-8 (When you pray, do not be like the hypocrites; pray in secret, trusting that the Father knows what we need); Matthew 6:14-15 (Forgive people their trespasses, so your heavenly Father will also forgive you); Matthew 10:32-33 (Do not be ashamed of the Lord Jesus; confess Him before people); Matthew 10:34-36 (The believers' tribulations can rise from within our families, but we must stay firm in our faith in the Lord Jesus until the end); Matthew 10:37-39 (Love God above your family and worldly tribulations); Matthew 12:33-35 (The Lord Jesus teaches that we must choose life and walk in the light of the Lord Jesus so that we bear good fruit and glorify the Father); Matthew 15:15-20 (The Lord Jesus teaches His disciples that the things coming out of the mouth defile the man since those things reflect the heart of the person); Matthew 18:11-14 (The parable of the lost sheep: the Father's will is that all believers in His Son keep their faith until the end); Matthew 19:13-15 (The Lord Jesus teaches us that we must have innocent hearts as little children to enter the kingdom of the heavens); Matthew 23:11-12 (The Lord Jesus teaches how to be the greatest in the His kingdom).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** Mark 7:14-23 (The Lord Jesus teaches His disciples that the things coming out of the mouth defile the man since those things reflect the heart of the person); Mark 10:13-16 (The Lord Jesus teaches us that we must have innocent hearts as little children to enter the kingdom of the heavens); Mark 14:51-52 (Let the Word of God be the cloth of your soul, so you can follow God; this event is a spiritual comparison for humans to see).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** Luke 6:27-36 (The Lord Jesus teaches us to love our enemies and do good to all, so we can be sons of the Most High); Luke 6:41-42 (The Lord Jesus teaches us not to be hypocrites in judging others); Luke 9:23-26 (Take up your cross and follow the Lord Jesus daily and do not be ashamed of serving Him); Luke 12:56-59 (Judge righteously and make peace with your opponent); Luke 15:3-7 (The parable of the lost sheep: the will of the Father is that all believers in His Son keep their faith until the end); Luke

15:8-10 (The parable of the lost coin: the will of the Father is that all believers in His Son keep their faith until the end); Luke 18:15-17 (The Lord Jesus teaches us to have an innocent heart like little children in receiving the kingdom of God).

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** John 6:23-27 (“Search not food that is perishing, but the food that is enduring unto eternal life, which the Son of Man will give to you.”); John 6:30-31 (Believe without doubt and do not search for sings from above); John 8:31-32 (Abide in the word of the Lord Jesus and you will know the truth, and the truth will set you free); John 13:4-7 (The Lord Jesus has accepted His duty as the servant of the Father; He came to provide everything for us to cleanse us and makes us pure); John 15:6-8,11-12 (Abide in the Lord Jesus and His words and glorify the Father; love one another); John 16:20-22 (Worship the Trinity of God so your weep and lament will turn into joy).

8. Serving God

In 1 Corinthians chapter 12, the Bible teaches us about spiritual gifts and that we, as disciples of the Lord Jesus, must work in unity since God the Father, God the Son Jesus Christ, and God the Holy Spirit are One in the Trinity of God; there are various types of services to the Lord, but we all must serve the Lord in unity since there is only one Lord, Jesus Christ, by whom we can be saved. We all must use the gifts Christ has bestowed on us by His grace to serve the Lord in unity.

Before the Lord Jesus ascended into heaven to be seated at the right hand of the Father, He gave all of His disciples the great commission to go and make new disciples and baptize them in the name of the Father, Son Jesus Christ, and Holy Spirit (Matthew 28:18-19). Therefore, as disciples of the Lord Jesus Christ, we should be part of the great commission that the Lord Jesus bestowed on His church and pray and ask the Lord to guide us on how to be part of His great commission; nothing is too small in the eyes of the Lord Jesus, and whatever we do in His name, He is happy and takes our deeds and our names in front of the Father; if we give prayers, two coins or many coins to support the great commission or ourselves to go to be part of the mission field, we all should seek the Lord’s guidance and help. Let us remember that in Mark 12:41-44, the Lord Jesus commanded the poor woman who gave the two lepta, reminding us that for the Lord Jesus, what is important is that whatever we do for Him, we do it from our hearts.

In the Gospels, the Lord Jesus gives us many teachings on how to be good servants. Two practical examples of serving the Lord Jesus are given to us in Luke

10:38-42 when the Lord Jesus enters the village of Martha and Mary, and they receive Him into the house. The conclusion the Lord Jesus gives in verse 42 is that for serving Him, “little is demanded, not much; for Mary has chosen the good portion, which will not be taken away from her.” This verse tells all humans that when you see someone glorifying the Lord, regardless of the way the person is doing, do not try to stop anyone. The little action each person offers to the Lord is the thing the Lord likes to see, and He is happy to see when anyone glorifies the Lord, even in small actions. The Lord is pleased with both women’s services; they are an example for all humans. One likes to do physical work in serving, and the other likes to stay put and listen to the Lord. Both actions are pleasing to the Lord as long as they are done from the heart and in His name. Some people interpret that to serve the Lord, you must do all the work as Martha has done, and others want to be like Mary, serving the Lord by listening and praying alone, but both servings come as one in pleasing the Lord, equal amount and value for both actions.

This section enumerates many services that the Lord Jesus commands His disciples to do. As disciples of the Lord Jesus, we must pray and ask for His guidance and help to choose how to serve Him. But we must remember that all the service we give to the Lord Jesus must be with our whole heart; He knows our hearts and minds, so first, we need to give our hearts to Him and then ask Him to guide us to find the service that He has for us on this earth.

Below, we highlight all the Gospels’ passages which we placed into this theme; we encourage all readers to check the hyperlinks to all the Bible passages, where you will also find more comments and explanations we provide in our Bible Commentary Forever (BCF for short) work.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** Matthew 9:37-38 (The harvest of souls on earth is plentiful, and we must pray to the Lord of the harvest for laborers); Matthew 10:5-14 (The Lord Jesus instructs His twelve apostles and sends them out to minister); Matthew 15:1-9 (The Lord Jesus teaches that we must serve God not traditions of men); Matthew 18:18-20 (The Lord Jesus teaches that where two or three agree on Biblical things on earth, He will be there, and His heavenly Father will do them); Matthew 19:21-24 (The Lord Jesus teaches to abandon inner attachment or our hearts to riches and family and become free in hearing the purpose of the Lord for us); Matthew 20:24-28 (The Lord Jesus teaches us how to be first among His disciples; He came to serve

mankind, and we must follow His example); Matthew 27:55-56 (Serve the Lord from your hearts without expecting anything of this earth in return).

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** Mark 7:1-13 (The Lord Jesus teaches that we cannot use the tradition of men to control the commandments of God); Mark 9:38-41 (The Lord Jesus teaches us not to stop people from serving Him); Mark 10:21-23 (The Lord Jesus teaches to abandon inner attachment or our hearts to riches and family and become free in hearing the purpose of the Lord for us); Mark 10:41-45 (The Lord Jesus teaches us how to be first among His disciples; He came to serve mankind, and we must follow His example); Mark 15:40-41 (Serve the Lord from your hearts without expecting anything of this earth in return).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** Luke 6:38 (Serve the Lord God by giving to those who ask); Luke 9:1-6 (The Lord Jesus instructs His twelve apostles and sends them out to minister); Luke 9:49-50 (The Lord Jesus teaches us not to stop people from serving Him); Luke 10:1-16 (The Lord Jesus sends the seventy-two to minister, and He teaches them the way of ministry); Luke 10:38-42 (The Lord Jesus teaches that when you see someone glorifying the Lord, regardless of the way the person is doing, do not try to stop anyone; the little action each person offers to the Lord is the thing the Lord likes to see, and He is happy to see when anyone glorifies the Lord, even in small actions); Luke 11:37-41 (The Lord Jesus teaches that we cannot use the tradition of men to control the commandments of God; instead tell people about the mercy of God); Luke 12:41-48 (The parable of trustworthy and prudent guardian: as a servant of the Lord be a prudent guardian and do your service to the Lord diligently); Luke 14:12-14 (Invite the poor and the unwanted and help them, and you will be blessed); Luke 17:7-10 (To be a servant of the Lord, you must humble yourself, do your duty as a good servant of the Lord and all the rewards will be waiting); Luke 18:22-25 (The Lord Jesus teaches to abandon inner attachment or our hearts to riches and become free in hearing the purpose of the Lord for us); Luke 22:24-27 (The Lord Jesus teaches how to be the greatest in His kingdom; He came to serve mankind, and we must follow His example).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** none.

9. How to Be with the World

In [Matthew 12:21](#), we read, “And in His name, the Gentiles will hope.” Therefore, the only hope of the entire world is the Lord Jesus. Then, in [Matthew 28:19-20](#), the Lord Jesus gives us the ultimate commandment to go into the world and make disciples. We all must believe the testimony of the Bible about the Lord Jesus being the Son of God and that He came to earth to bring salvation to the world. As believers, we must testify to the world about His deity, death, and resurrection from the dead, as the apostles did in the Book of Acts. Therefore, one of the main duties of a true believer in the Lord Jesus is to support missionary work and contribute to the ministry of the Word of God into the world in any way we can. The Lord Jesus teaches us in the Gospels two important principles that, as disciples, we must follow when ministering to the world:

- Minister the Word of God in love to all; do not be angry with the people regardless of whether they receive the Word or not.
- We must live in unity as believers in the Lord Jesus and be an example of unity in faith so the world may believe in the Lord Jesus and come and glorify the Father.

Below, we highlight all the Gospels’ passages which we placed into this theme; we encourage all readers to check the hyperlinks to all the Bible passages, where you will also find more comments and explanations we provide in our Bible Commentary Forever (BCF for short) work.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** none.
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** none.
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** [Luke 9:51-56](#) (The Lord teaches the disciples not to be angry with those who do not receive them; instead, when someone wishes bad or does bad to you, pray for them and ask the mercy of God to cover them so that their hearts will be open and they can see the light of mercy).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** [John 17:18-22](#) (As believers, live in unity, that the world may believe in the Lord Jesus and will come to glorify the Father).

10. How to Be with Other Believers

In the Gospels, the Lord Jesus teaches us the two most important commandments: to love the Lord our God from all our hearts and love the neighbor as ourselves. Also, in 1 John 4:20-21, the Bible teaches us that to claim that we love God, we must first

love our fellow believers. In the Gospels, there are many teachings related to loving one another; however, the Lord Jesus gives us two basic teachings about how to be with other believers, and as disciples, we should follow in all related situations these teachings:

- If a believer sins against us, we should follow the instructions given in [Matthew 18:15-17](#).
- If a believer sins against us, and they come and ask forgiveness, we must forgive them as long as needed.

Below, we highlight all the Gospels' passages which we placed into this theme; we encourage all readers to check the hyperlinks to all the Bible passages, where you will also find more comments and explanations we provide in our Bible Commentary Forever (BCF for short) work.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** [Matthew 18:15-17](#) (The Lord Jesus teaches us what to do when a fellow believer sins against us); [Matthew 18:21-22](#) (The Lord Jesus teaches us to always forgive our brothers and sisters in faith).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** none.
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** [Luke 17:3-4](#) (Forgive your brothers and sisters in the Lord always if they repent).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** none.

11. The Light and the Dark

In Genesis 1:2-3, the Bible says, "And the earth was waste and void; and darkness was upon the face of the deep; and the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters. And God said, Let there be light; and there was light." These verses tell us that the light from the palm of God comes out and shines throughout the earth, but it has no shape, no substance; this light is the light that is part of God. We can think about it as the "glory of God," but there is no substance, just pure light. This light is not the same as the light humans know. From these verses, we can clearly see that the light shines in the darkness and that this light is good for us. As humans, we are created in God's image, so we have a body, a soul, and a spirit. We should be aware that when the Bible talks about light, it often talks about the light for our souls, and the question for every human is what the true light is for their souls and how to find that light that gives them salvation. In the Gospels, the Lord Jesus tells us in many

places that He is the light of the world and that He came from the Father to give us the true light for our souls. Specifically, in [John 8:12](#), the Lord Jesus says to the people around Him, “I am the light of the world; the one following Me will not walk in the darkness but will have the light of life.” The beloved Son of God has told this to all, not only the people in that time but to everyone. There is only one way by which our souls can be saved and not go into darkness, and that is by coming to the beloved Son of God and staying in His bosom because it is only with Him that the light will be, in every other place, the rest will be in darkness, but if you are staying with the beloved Son of God, you are in the light. The path that the beloved Son of God has created for all humans is the path that follows His teaching; if you walk according to what the Holy Bible is teaching you, you will not walk in the darkness. The light from the beloved Son of God will lead your life; when that light leads your life, you yourself will absorb that light into your soul and be in the light of safety; that is why you need the light of life from the Lord Jesus. The light from the Lord will give life to your soul.

The Bible tells us that the world lives in darkness, and they need to come out of it; we, as the disciples of the Lord Jesus, should carry with us the true light of the gospel and share it with the world. The only way to come out of the darkness is through the light of the gospel of the Glory of Christ, who is the image of God. I will cite here 2 Corinthians 4:3-6 as a reminder for all the disciples of the Lord Jesus of our mission to be the light in the darkness: “And even if our gospel is veiled, it is veiled in them that perish; in whom the god of this world has blinded the minds of the unbelieving, that the light of the gospel of the glory of Christ, who is the image of God, should not dawn upon them. For we preach not ourselves, but Christ Jesus as Lord, and ourselves as your servants for Jesus’ sake. Seeing it is God, that said, Light shall shine out of darkness, who shined in our hearts, to give the light of the knowledge of the glory of God in the face of Jesus Christ.”

Below, we highlight all the Gospels’ passages which we placed into this theme; we encourage all readers to check the hyperlinks to all the Bible passages, where you will also find more comments and explanations we provide in our Bible Commentary Forever (BCF for short) work.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** [Matthew 5:13-16](#) (The Lord Jesus teaches us that we are His salt and His light in the world); [Matthew 6:22-24](#) (Our spiritual eye must be full of light; we cannot serve two masters); [Matthew](#)

10:27-31 (Fear God and be the light in the darkness; speak to the world all the understanding the Lord gives you from His Holy Word).

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** Mark 4:21-25 (The Lord Jesus teaches that the Bible is the lamp for all humans in the world and we must bring it forth); Mark 9:49-50 (The Lord Jesus teaches that the Word of God is the fire that cleanses everyone and preserves life into eternity).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** Luke 8:16-17 (The Lord Jesus teaches that the Bible is the lamp for all humans in the world and we must bring it forth); Luke 11:33-36 (The parable of the knowledge about the Holy Word: when you gain knowledge about the Holy Word you also must share that knowledge with others); Luke 12:2-3 (All truth about Jesus shall be made known, and it cannot be hidden that He is the Son of God, conceived by the Holy Spirit through the Virgin Mary, crucified, and died for our sins and that He rose again on the third day in the same body; and is our responsibility to share it); Luke 12:4-9,11-12 (Revere God who can cast your soul into hell; fear not people and acknowledge the Lord Jesus before them); Luke 14:34-35 (Meditate on the Word of God and keep the faith until the end).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** John 3:18-21 (The light of God has already come into the world through the beloved Son of God; if mankind does not believe in the true light that came, they will face the troubles in the dark alone).

Conclusions

In this blog, we present the main topic of how to be a disciple of the Lord Jesus, which we divided into eleven themes. Each theme presents an essential aspect of the main topic. Being disciples of the Lord Jesus is a blessing, and we should thank the Lord Jesus daily for choosing us to be part of His kingdom and serve Him. However, as disciples, we have many responsibilities towards the Trinity of God, other believers, and the world around us. This blog presents many Bible passages, grouped into eleven themes, covering the Lord Jesus' teachings on being a true disciple of the Lord Jesus and pleasing to the Trinity of God. Our duty as disciples of the Lord Jesus is to continually read and meditate on the Word of God and stay in prayer to understand our call as disciples of the Lord Jesus. The Lord Jesus doesn't want us just to keep idle; He wants us to participate in His great work of building His kingdom; either through little or much, we can all contribute to His great work and be pleasing to Him.

Meditation Tasks:

1. Meditate on each theme presented in this category and ask yourself how to be a better disciple of the Lord Jesus.

Teachings about the Kingdom of Heaven, Spiritual Rewards, Persecutions, and Woes

Introduction

Continuation from “[The Teachings of the Lord Jesus](#).”

In Genesis 1:26, we read, “And God said, Let Us make man in our image, after our likeness: ...” Here, first, we must remember that God is One when it comes to the Father, the Son Jesus, and the Holy Spirit. When God of Three created all things, He is One but Three in One, which is why it refers to us here, meaning “Three of Us.” The Lord of the Trinity created all things. We also must consider that the Bible is one, the Old Testament and the New Testament, and we must link them all together. And the Bible tells us in [John 1:1](#) that all things were created through the Word, the Lord Jesus (see [Comments John 1:1](#)). Furthermore, when the verse says, “man in our image,” that means that our human likeness (features) is like that of God; this refers only to the look, but God of Three also has Spirit (see [John 14:9](#)). To create humans in His image, a human will have a soul and spirit. And that is why humans are different than animals. Humans created in the image of God have souls, but animals do not have souls. Therefore, we should consider how much the Lord loves humans: He created them in His likeness. Humans have body, soul, and spirit as a unit. However, when we die on this earth, our bodies return to the ground, and our souls and spirits go back to God to their designated spiritual realms (read our article: [Body, Soul, and Spirit: A Biblical Perspective](#)). Specifically, the Bible teaches us that there are two places where our souls can end up until the judgment time comes: Heaven or Hades. In [Luke 12:4-5](#), the Lord Jesus tells us, “Now I say to you, My friends, Be not afraid of those that kill the body, and after this are not able anything more to do. But I will warn you whom you shall revere: Revere Him, who after having killed has authority to cast into the hell; yes, I say to you, Revere Him.” And, in [Matthew 10:28](#), we read, “And you should not be afraid of those killing the body, but are not

able to kill the soul; however, rather fear Him being able to destroy both soul and body in hell.” Here, we can comment on what the Lord Jesus says to us.

“Those killing the body” refers to the ones who are against those who believe in the Lord Jesus. There are many like these around us, and many come among us. Be aware of those who are among you and pretend to be believers in the Lord Jesus like you, but they are not. Those are the real enemies of the true believers in the Lord Jesus; watch out for them; some are church leaders.

“Him being able to destroy both soul and body in hell,” refers to the Trinity of God, God the Father, God the Son Jesus, and God the Holy Spirit; all have the power to destroy the soul, but only the Father has the authority to command to have the soul destroyed in hell.

Furthermore, in [Luke 12:16-21](#), the Lord Jesus tells us the parable of a wealthy person whose ground brought forth a good harvest. In this parable, the Lord Jesus teaches us about the importance of the soul of man versus the pleasures of the flesh in this life on earth, which do not last. Specifically, in [Luke 12:20](#), the Lord tells us that the Lord God has the power over our souls, “But God said to him, Foolish one, this night is your soul demanded back of you; and what you have prepared, to whom will be?” Therefore, when the Lord has taken you away from this earth, your soul itself will take your life with it, and that is why the verse tells all to think twice; what you have collected on this earth means nothing for the soul. You might build up treasures of this earth, but you do not build treasures for the world to come. The treasures you build on this earth mean nothing to the Lord; you don’t buy any place with the Lord in heaven unless you build up treasures towards the Lord.

In this teaching topic, we present the Gospels’ teachings about the kingdom of heaven. Human minds cannot understand the kingdom of heaven, so the Lord Jesus used many parables to teach us about the kingdom of heaven; we should pray for guidance with the help of the Holy Spirit to have our spiritual eyes and ears open so we can understand what heaven means for us. As believers in the Lord Jesus, we can build many treasures in the heavens and gain many spiritual rewards that the Lord keeps for us for when we depart from this earth; also, we might face persecution on this earth because of our faith in the Lord Jesus, but those persecutions are converted in many blessings in the kingdom of heaven, and the Father will reward us bountifully for our suffering for the name of His beloved Son, Jesus Christ. Moreover, the Lord gives many woes in the Bible as warnings to the world to make them fear God and consider His beloved Son as the Redeemer of their souls. God the

Father, God the Son Jesus, and God the Holy Spirit want all humans to come and be part of the kingdom of the beloved Son of God, Jesus Christ, and enjoy the blessings of the kingdom of heaven. In Luke 12:49, the Lord Jesus says, “I came to bring fire upon the earth; and I wish that it will be, now after all this waiting, kindled.” By saying this, the Lord Jesus tells the whole earth to know that He came down with fire; whosoever is against God, that fire will consume that person. This fire will be a burning feeling, which the Lord puts deep into the soul; when it burns out, the suffering of that person will be beyond words can tell, but this fire burning, will be burning only in the souls of the ones that are against God, that is also a warning. This fire burning is a deep feeling of the soul, and that person cannot find peace regardless of what they will do; the peace of God will run away from them. The Lord’s wish is to receive every soul, even those that go against God; the Lord desires to welcome them; even those souls that already received the burning fire suffering, the Lord wants them to be saved; the Lord’s mercy is great. Therefore, the Lord wants this fire to start to consume these people who are against God, but He wishes that they will repent and come to the Lord to be forgiven.

We combined all the relevant teachings in the Gospels related to the kingdom of heaven, spiritual rewards, persecutions, and woes under one category as they are related to the salvation of our souls. However, to clearly understand these teachings, we subgroup them into nine themes, as given below.

1. Blessings and rewards of the kingdom of heaven.
2. The way to the kingdom of heaven.
3. The parables of the kingdom of heaven.
4. The parables of the new world to come.
5. Wait for the promise of the Father, the Holy Spirit.
6. Woes to the whole world for those that do not believe in the Lord Jesus.
7. Persecutions upon believers in the Lord Jesus.
8. Beware of temptations to sin.
9. Beware of false prophets and teachings.

The Presentation of the Teaching Themes

This section describes all the teaching themes by highlighting their essential features. Furthermore, we provide a complete list of Bible passages in all the Gospels that relate to each theme, with a short description of each passage. Each Bible passage is

also linked to our [Bible Commentary Forever](#) work, where you will find more helpful spiritual comments to help you understand the passage better.

1. Blessings and Rewards of the Kingdom of Heaven

The Lord Jesus loves all humans and has come to save the whole world, not only some. In [John 15:13](#), the Lord Jesus tells us, “Greater love than this no one has, that anyone should lay down his life for his friends.” As the verse tells us, there is no greater love than what the beloved Son of God has done to give His life for mankind. But we all must remember that the Father has loved humans so much as well until He has sent His only begotten Son to come down on earth for all mankind to have a way to glorify and thank the Father; the beloved Son of God has become the bridge for all mankind to succeed in glorifying the Father. The Lord Jesus didn’t just come to give His life for the world, but He rose from the dead and is now seated at the Father’s right hand, preparing a place for each one of His followers ([John 14:1-3](#)). He is waiting in heaven for us all and preparing gifts and rewards for when we will be with Him in His kingdom. He is waiting to gladly tell us all, “Well done, good and faithful servant! You have been faithful over a few things; I will set you over many things; enter you into the joy of your master!” ([Matthew 25:23](#)). Moreover, the Lord Jesus, in His teachings, tells us about the blessings of the kingdom of heaven so we are all encouraged and don’t lose heart and can overcome the trials of this world and look forward to meeting Him and being with Him in His kingdom.

The Lord Jesus tells us about many blessings awaiting us in heaven; those who enter into heaven will all receive these blessings if they keep faith until the end. As followers of the Lord Jesus, we must strive to keep the faith until the end of our lives on earth by following the teachings and the commandments of our Lord and Master, the Lord Jesus Christ. Below, we highlight all the Gospel passages where we find teachings about the blessings of the kingdom of the heavens. Every believer should meditate on these blessings and ask themselves if they qualify and what they should improve to feel assured they get them. Every blessing is important for all believers, and we should all try to get all the blessings that the Lord Jesus teaches us; some of them might be hard for us to achieve, but we must pray and ask the mercy of the Lord Jesus to help us to fully accomplish the Lord Jesus’ plan for our lives on this earth. We also provide hyperlinks for all referred Bible passages to the Bible

Commentary Forever (BCF for short) work, where you can find more spiritual insights.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** Matthew 5:1-9 (The teachings of the Lord Jesus about the blessings of the kingdom of heaven and the rewards that follow in heaven); Matthew 7:7-11 (Ask, seek, and knock and the Father who is in the heavens will reward us with good things); Matthew 10:40-42 (Receive and help those that come in the name of the Lord); Matthew 12:46-50 (Those that do the will of God the Father are our brothers, sisters, and mothers); Matthew 13:18-23 (The Lord Jesus explains to His disciples the parable of the sower).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** Mark 3:31-35 (Those that do the will of God the Father are our brothers, sisters, and mothers); Mark 4:13-20 (The Lord Jesus explains to His disciples the parable of the sower).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** Luke 6:20-21 (The teachings of the Lord Jesus about the blessings of the kingdom of heaven and the rewards that follow in heaven); Luke 8:11-15 (The Lord Jesus explains to His disciples the parable of the sower); Luke 8:19-21 (Those that do the will of God the Father are our mothers and brothers); Luke 11:5-13 (Ask, seek, and knock and the heavenly Father will give the Holy Spirit to those that ask Him); Luke 19:16-26 (The parable of ten minas; heavenly rewards for being a faithful servant).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** none.

2. The Way to Heaven

In the Gospel of John 8:13, the Lord Jesus, talking to the Pharisees about His testimony as being the light of the world, tells them, “Even if I am bearing witness of Myself, My testimony is true; because I know from where I am coming, and where I am going; however, you know not from where I come, or where I am going.” As the verse tells all believers, the beloved Son of God knows where He is coming from and has told all readers that He knows that He is going back to the Father soon. Even though He Himself had told what is to be, humans could not believe His word, but all that believe and put trust in Him and will always meditate in the Holy Bible will have that understanding because the Holy Bible has told all from the beginning of life until the end of life. Therefore, when your heart wavers, return to the Holy Word, which will help you and strengthen your faith. When you read the Holy Word, think of the One the Holy Word tells you about, and think that you are created from the ground, but you are beloved by the Father. The Lord Jesus came from heaven and

went back to heaven, and He is the only One who can tell us the way to heaven and the Father.

Also, the Lord Jesus tells us in [Matthew 28:18](#) that God the Father has given Him all authority in heaven and on earth; therefore, the Lord Jesus is the only one who can teach the way into heaven and His kingdom, which will last for eternity; He is the narrow gate to heaven, and we must enter by it; there is no other way into heaven and we have only this life on earth to choose the way to the heaven; after our souls depart from this earth there is no chance for our souls to be saved. In [Luke 16:19-31](#), the Lord Jesus tells the story of the rich man and Lazarus, where we find out that the poor man, Lazarus, went into Abraham's bosom and the rich man, who had no faith in God, went into Hades, a place of torment. In this story, the Lord Jesus tells us that until His return back to earth, there is a place of rest for the souls of the believers and a place of torment for the souls of the unbelievers, and there is a chasm fixed between these two places which chasm cannot be crossed anymore. The only way for a person's soul today not to end up in that place of torment is to have faith in the Lord Jesus and believe that He is the way as He tells us in [John 14:6](#), "I am the way, and the truth, and the life; no one comes to the Father, if not by Me."

Below, we highlight all the Gospels passages we chose for this category that teach us the way to heaven; we must meditate on all these passages, believe, and practice them in our lives so our souls will be safe in the bosom of the Lord Jesus. Also, we provide hyperlinks for these passages to our Bible Commentary Forever (BCF for short) work, where you can find more spiritual insights related to these passages.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** [Matthew 7:13-14](#) (The Lord Jesus is the narrow gate to heaven; enter by it); [Matthew 7:24-27](#) (The way to heaven is the rock of our faith: the bodily resurrection of the Lord Jesus); [Matthew 13:9-13](#) (Let your spiritual ears be opened to hear and understand the Word of God); [Matthew 13:14-17](#) (Listen and believe the teachings of the Lord Jesus so you will be blessed); [Matthew 13:51-52](#) (A true disciple of the Lord Jesus is taught by the Bible through the Holy Spirit); [Matthew 19:27-30](#) (Leave everything in this world behind and follow the Lord Jesus to gain eternal life with Him in heaven).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** [Mark 4:9-12](#) (Let your spiritual eyes and ears be opened to understand the Word of God); [Mark 10:28-31](#) (Leave

everything in this world behind and follow the Lord Jesus to gain eternal life with Him in heaven).

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** Luke 6:47-49 (The way to heaven is the rock of our faith: the bodily resurrection of the Lord Jesus); Luke 8:9-10 (Let your spiritual eyes and ears be opened to understand the Word of God); Luke 8:18 (Take heed to how you hear so you understand the Word of God); Luke 10:29-37 (The parable of the good Samaritan; love your neighbor); Luke 14:7-11 (“For all that exalt themselves will be humbled, and the one that humbles himself will be exalted.”); Luke 18:28-30 (Leave everything in this world behind and follow the Lord Jesus to gain eternal life with Him in heaven).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** John 10:1-6 (The Lord Jesus is the door of the sheep; through Him we can enter into the kingdom of heaven); John 13:16-17 (“A servant is not greater than his Lord”; do what the Lord teaches).

3. The Parables of the Kingdom of Heaven

The main question for all people, not only for believers in the Lord Jesus, should be, “What is heaven for me?” With our limited minds, we cannot picture our heaven; it is beyond our understanding. But for all of us, ultimately, heaven should be the Lord Jesus Himself. Within the Lord Jesus Himself, we can find the safety of the kingdom of the heavens. The kingdom of heaven cannot be compared with anything we have in this world, so the Lord Jesus, while on earth, used parables to describe the things of the kingdom of the heavens. The parables of the Lord Jesus are about the kingdom of heaven and the spiritual world; therefore, we cannot understand them from an earthly mind’s view. We must pray to the Lord to open our spiritual eyes and ears to understand them.

In the Gospel of Matthew chapter 13, the Lord Jesus taught a great multitude that stood on the seashore while He sat into a boat. He spoke many parables to them about the kingdom of the heavens. In Matthew 13:10, the disciples ask the Lord Jesus a fundamental question that should resonate with us today as well, “Why do Thou speak to them in parables?” The Lord Jesus gave an interesting spiritual answer in Matthew 13:11-13, saying, “Because to you it has been given to know the mysteries of the kingdom of the heavens; however, to them it has not been given. For whoever has, to him will be given, and he will have abundance; now whoever has not, from him will be taken away even what he has. Because of this, I speak to them

in parables; because seeing they do not see, and hearing they do not hear, nor do they understand.”

All who read this passage of the Bible should seriously meditate on it to understand the Lord’s meaning when answering that way. We, as followers of the Lord Jesus, must understand that, within the crowds, the purpose of coming to listen to the Lord Jesus was different. Some were coming to find mistakes and point them out. Some were coming to find weak points and point them out so that they could deter people from having faith in the Lord Jesus. To all those, the secrets of the kingdom of the heavens have not been given. However, some came with clean hearts and wanted to hear the Lord Jesus before deciding whether to believe in Him or not; to all those, the Lord will give them the understanding of the secrets of the kingdom of the heavens. This behavior also applies today when we talk to people about our Lord and Savior, Jesus Christ.

Furthermore, if we keep ourselves in the Word of God, more spiritual blessings will be given to us; spiritual blessings for this life on earth are the understanding of the Word of God and faith in the Lord Jesus, peace with God, and joy that we can feel deep inside our souls. If we have these spiritual blessings on this earth, when we depart, these spiritual blessings will be transformed to be used for our life after death. The peace of God comes only to those who have a clean heart. The heart that is like a child’s heart will be the heart that comes closer to the kingdom of heaven, and joy comes to those who have true faith in the Lord Jesus.

But to those who look after the pleasures of the world and think they got it all and this is their kingdom, those pleasures will be taken away if they do not want to receive the pleasure of knowing the Word of the Lord. Nothing in this world is worth knowing more than the Word of the Lord.

And, when the Lord Jesus says, “because seeing they do not see, and hearing they do not hear, nor do they understand,” He refers to those who have rejected the miracles and the words of the Lord Jesus. Their eyes have seen what many didn’t have a chance to see. Many feel they have sinned but completely reject the Lord. Yet, if they themselves cannot benefit personally, they reject and try to limit the power of God. The prophecy is speaking about self-centered people; they see the Lord Jesus and hear the Lord Jesus speaking but reject Him. Blessed are those who come after and, by just hearing and not seeing, believe in the Lord Jesus. Therefore, we must believe in the Lord Jesus of the Bible, that He is the Son of God and God of the Trinity, and

humbly come to Him to ask for understanding so when we depart from this earth, we can meet Him in His kingdom.

Below, we highlight the main parables that the Lord Jesus spoke about the kingdom of heaven, which are found in the Gospels. They tell us about the kingdom of the heavens and what the kingdom of heaven should be for us. We encourage all readers to meditate on these parables and try to understand the spiritual meaning of each parable. Also, we provide hyperlinks to our Bible Commentary Forever (BCF for short) work, where you can find more in-depth spiritual explanations that you could apply to understand the parables better.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** [Matthew 11:16-17](#) (The parable of the marketplace flute: the children of God rejoice in the Lord by praising and singing and those who believe like them will glorify the Lord together with them); [Matthew 13:3-8](#) (The parables of the sower); [Matthew 13:31-32](#) (The parable of the grain of mustard); [Matthew 13:33](#) (The parable of the leaven); [Matthew 13:44](#) (The parable of the treasure hidden in the field); [Matthew 13:45-46](#) (The parable of the merchant seeking beautiful pearls).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** [Mark 4:3-8](#) (The parable of the sower); [Mark 4:30-32](#) (The parable of a grain of mustard).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** [Luke 7:31-35](#) (The parable of the children playing the pipe and singing in the marketplace); [Luke 8:4-8](#) (The parable of the sower); [Luke 13:18-19](#) (The parable of the kernel of mustard); [Luke 13:20-21](#) (The parable of the leaven); [Luke 16:1-15](#) (The parable of the unrepented manager; do not misuse the gifts from God).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** none.

4. The Parables of the New World to Come

In the Gospel of [Luke 22:24-38](#), we find the discourse of the Lord Jesus to the disciples before His betrayal. The discourse of the Lord Jesus includes the appointment of a kingdom to His followers to be with Him. Specifically, in [Luke 22:28-30](#), the Lord Jesus says, “But you are those that have continued with Me in My trials; and I appoint to you a kingdom, even as My Father appointed to Me, that you may eat and may drink at My table, in My kingdom; and will sit on thrones judging the twelve tribes of Israel.”

When we have given our hearts to the beloved Son of God and have invited Him to be with us, the Lord also appointed us to be with Him in His kingdom if we continue to keep the faith until the end of our life on earth. When the verse tells us that we are at His table with Him, this is where we will all enjoy our blessings for eternity. Also, when the Lord Jesus says, “and will sit on thrones judging the twelve tribes of Israel,” the Lord Jesus does not refer only to the Apostles, but in truth, this promise includes all the true believers in the beloved Son of God. On the judgment day, we all will have a duty to be behind the throne of God and witness the majesty of the Lord Jesus in judging all those who did not follow and obey the teachings of the Lord.

Furthermore, when the Lord Jesus says, “and will sit on thrones,” it tells us that behind the throne of God, there will be small thrones for everyone, and all true believers will have their own spot behind the throne of God. It is difficult for the human mind to imagine the picture of the throne of God and the area of the small thrones, which is wider than any mind can imagine. Remember, we are not in our human bodies; the heavenly bodies are different. We do not know anything about the heavenly body, which is why we say that the human mind cannot imagine how magnificent the throne of God is.

When the Lord Jesus says, “judging the twelve tribes of Israel,” in this spot, not only will His people alone be judged at that time, but the outsiders will also be judged there. All true believers in the Lord Jesus will be witnesses, but we will not be part of the decision in judging His people. However, for outsiders, all true believers will be part of the judging, but we are not told what part we will be.

Meditating on this passage of Scripture should encourage us to know more about the new world to come, where the Lord Jesus is our King and reigns in His full glory and majesty. The Lord Jesus tells us in the Gospels in many parables about this new world to come. By the mercy of the Lord and by prayer and guidance of the Holy Spirit, we can gain more knowledge and understanding about this new world by meditating on these parables. Below, we highlight all the Gospel passages where the Lord Jesus teaches us about the new world to come. We encourage all readers to meditate on these passages and follow the hyperlinks to our Bible Commentary Forever (BCF for short) work, where you will find more spiritual insights related to these passages.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** [Matthew 13:24-30](#) (The parable of the good seed and the tares among the wheat); [Matthew 13:34-43](#) (The Lord Jesus

explains to His disciples the parable of the good seed and the tares); Matthew 13:47-50 (The parable of the fishing-net, cast into the sea); Matthew 18:23-35 (The parable of the merciful king; there will be a judgment day when the Lord will settle accounts with all the people of the earth); Matthew 20:1-16 (The Lord Jesus tells the parable of the laborers in the vineyard; the Lord is fair, and He gives one Bible to the whole world; in heaven, there is no disagreement from below to above, and all must accept the authority of the master).

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** Mark 4:26-29 (The parable of “a man should throw seed upon the ground”).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** Luke 19:11-15 (The parable of the ten minas; do business until I come back).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** none.

5. Wait for the Promise of the Father, the Holy Spirit

The Gospel of Luke chapter 24 presents us with the events of the resurrection of the Lord Jesus. Before the Lord Jesus’ ascension to heaven, He opened the disciples’ minds to understand the Scriptures and instructed them to proclaim repentance and remission of sins in His name and testify about His trials and His resurrection from the dead. Moreover, in Luke 24:49, the Lord Jesus says to them: “And behold, I am sending out the promise of My Father upon you; but remain you in the city, until you be clothed with power from on high.”

We might ask ourselves, what is the promise of the Father that the Lord Jesus talks about here, and as His followers, do we need this promise? In Acts chapter 2, we find out what the promise of the Father is: specifically, the miraculous baptism with the Holy Spirit, which came upon all the disciples gathered on the day of Pentecost in one place in Jerusalem.

Furthermore, in Acts 4:29-31, the followers of the Lord Jesus pray together in unity, saying, “And now, Lord, look upon their threatenings, and grant to Thy servants to speak Thy word with all boldness, in that Thy stretch out Thy hand, for healing, and signs and wonders to be done through the name of Thy holy Servant Jesus. And they having prayed, the place was shaken in which they were assembled; and they were all filled with the Holy Spirit, and were speaking the word of God with boldness.” When the verse says, “In that Thy stretch out Thy hand,” it clearly tells us that the Father Himself has His own plan because of the coming of His Son on earth. When

the Father stretches out His hand to take care of the things around the world, the result will impact all living, not only humans; all things that God Almighty has created will notice His power.

In 1 Corinthians 12, we read, “And God has set some in the church, first apostles, secondly prophets, thirdly teachers, then miracles, then gifts of healings, helps, governments, diverse kinds of tongues.”

In this verse, “first apostles” refers to the twelve apostles appointed by the Lord Jesus. The twelve disciples also called the twelve apostles, were specifically the disciples of the Lord Jesus Himself, and this amount has not changed; there are still only twelve apostles of the Lord Jesus. The twelve apostles of the Lord Jesus have been with the Lord throughout His ministry, from the baptism of John to the day that the Lord Jesus ascended into heaven ([Acts 1:22](#)).

The Lord Jesus came to earth as the Son of God and the Son of Man, suffered death on the cross for the sins of the world, was buried, rose from the dead on the third day, and ascended to the Father, where He is preparing a kingdom for His own. After the Lord Jesus’ ascension to heaven, God the Father sent the Holy Spirit on earth in the name of the Lord Jesus so the apostles could testify about the work of the Father’s beloved Son, Lord Jesus, on earth and His resurrection and start the church of God on earth. Now, we all are the next generation of disciples who must continue the work of God on this earth until the Lord Jesus returns to earth with His angels in His Father’s glory. Therefore, all believers in the Lord Jesus should pray for the promise of the Father and ask for mercy to receive the baptism in the Holy Spirit and His gifts and be part of His mighty plan. To fulfill the Lord’s plan, we all need the help and power of the Holy Spirit, so we need the gifts of the Holy Spirit to proclaim the kingdom of the Lord and endure the world’s persecutions. In [Luke 12:50](#), the Lord Jesus says, “However I have a baptism to be baptized; and how am I distressed until it be accomplished!” For the Lord Himself, there are two kinds of baptism that He is talking about here: first, the physical baptism in water as an example for all humans, and second, the baptism in the Holy Spirit as all have seen that the Holy Spirit descended on Him. These baptisms have shown all humans the blessings that the Father has prepared for all who accept and follow the beloved Son of God. All people should meditate on all the teachings of the Bible, without exception. We encourage all readers to read our article “[Holy Spirit Baptism for a Christian](#).”

Below, we highlight a few passages in the Gospels that relate to this theme in this category. We encourage all readers to check the hyperlinks to all the Bible passages,

where you will also find more comments and explanations that we provide in our Bible Commentary Forever (BCF for short) work.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** none.
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** none.
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** Luke 24:49 (The Lord Jesus tells His disciples that He is sending the promise of the Father, the baptism with the Holy Spirit; repent, pray, and wait for the promise; the baptism in the Holy Spirit is for all that believe and wait on the Lord).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** John 3:3 (You must be born from above to enter the kingdom of God); John 7:35-38 (“Whoever believes in Me, just as the Scripture has said, out of his heart will flow rivers of living water”).

6. Woes to the Whole World for Those that Do Not Believe in the Lord Jesus

In 1 John 5:18-20, the Holy Spirit, speaking through the apostle John, says, “We know that whoever is born of God does not sin; but he that was born of God keeps himself, and the evil one does not touch him. We know that we are of God, and the whole world lies in the evil one. And we know that the Son of God has come, and has given us an understanding, that we know Him that is true, and we are in Him that is true, even in His Son Jesus Christ. This is the true God, and eternal life.” These verses tell us that the world is under the influence of the dark and that the Lord Jesus, the true God, came into the world to bring light and truth to the world and give us eternal life.

In the Gospel of Matthew chapter 18, the Lord Jesus teaches about entering the kingdom of the heavens. Specifically, there are no clear human words to describe the kingdom of heaven, so the Lord Jesus teaches us in parables and comparisons to get the idea and find the way to enter the kingdom of heaven.

As followers of the Lord Jesus, we know that the world tries to fight against God from the beginning, and reading the Gospels, we can see that the leaders of the Jews at that time and the people of the world who let themselves be under the power of the darkness have fought hard against the Lord Jesus to the point to kill Him on a cruel Roman cross. However, the Lord Jesus did not stay in the grave: He is alive forevermore, as God cannot die, so He rose from the dead on the third day, and all authority and power is given to Him by God the Father Himself. Because of the evil deeds of the world, the Lord Jesus, in His teachings, also brings many warnings and

woes to the world for fighting against God and leading people astray with false gods and humanistic theories. Specifically, in Matthew 18:6-7, the Lord Jesus says, “But whoever may cause one of these little ones who believe in Me to stumble, it is better for him that a great millstone may be hung around his neck, and he may be sunk in the depth of the sea. Woe to the world because of stumbling blocks! It is necessary for the stumbling blocks to come, but woe to the one by whom the stumbling block comes!” Anyone reading these verses should watch their actions towards God and the people of God; all should come and give their hearts to the Lord Jesus, ask forgiveness, and seek peace with God the Father through His beloved Son Jesus Christ. Below, we discuss these verses and warn all readers to watch their actions toward God and His followers.

“Little ones” here refers to persons with clean hearts who follow and believe the teachings of the Bible as the Word of God. “Whoever may cause one of these little ones who believe in Me to stumble” refers to someone who comes and misinterprets the Bible using the name of the Lord, making these “little ones” misunderstand the Bible and creating doubt in them. Those persons have no worth in being born, as this verse says. They betray the Lord for various reasons. They misinterpret the Bible to bring glory to themselves, but the glory belongs to the Lord, not the one who uses the Word of the Lord.

“Woe to the world because of stumbling blocks” or “woe to the world for temptations to sin.” The temptations to sin spoken in this verse are directly related to sin against the Lord. Because of believing in themselves, humans disregard the Creator who created all things. And, because the world does not think that all things come from God, this is a sin against God. Knowledge and technology also lead to temptations to sin. Technology relates to making life easier, but humans use some technology to put themselves up. For example, people try to create rain and then put themselves at the same level as God; the smart ones lift their fists and think that they themselves are gods. Humans can play with nature, but can they create one seed without the Lord’s hand? They gather and transform seeds but forget to think about the One that created the seed. Also, they are developing advanced technology and many smart things, but they forget about the One who made all the materials used in all things. The next temptation to come to the whole world is greed. The greed of all things, not just the things of this world, but the greed for the unseen things as well; because the Lord calls some to do something and those persons already

think about the reward they will receive, that is greed. Humans need to feel important in this world and in the world to come. The sin of greed for the things of this world is a sin against God's work. This greed makes humans wish for things that are not made by the hand of the Lord (i.e., biological cloning, DNA engineering, stem-cell engineering, in vitro fertilization, transgenderism, transhumanism, tattooing, and body transformation, and related practices) and tempts them to think that they can be equal to God. To fight against greed, be content and thankful for what you have received; be content in all things. It doesn't matter how small we receive; just be content and thankful with a true heart. The temptations to sin spoken in this verse are directly related to sin against the Lord.

"It is necessary for the stumbling blocks to come." Temptations must come because of the will of the Father to save humans. Temptations will help humans turn to the Lord; when they see that they alone cannot fight temptations, they will seek help from the Lord. The purpose of temptations to come is to save the obedient ones. This way works for those who listen and obey, but the ones that do not come, the Lord works with them as well, but they choose not to come (See 1 Corinthians 10:13). Not that the latter do not feel guilty, but they choose to have fun in the world.

"But woe to the one by whom the stumbling block comes!" Temptation cannot come on everyone; temptation doesn't run by its own will. For those who do not stay in the Word, temptation has power over them. But, for those covered by the blood of the Lamb, it is their own fault that temptation comes upon them; they have the Lord as their shield to protect them, but they do not rely on Him. This woe is for those covered by the blood and ignoring the Word. Many of them sin and blame the Lord for causing them to sin, but God does not cause anyone to sin (See James 1:13-18). There is no sin in God, so He cannot cause someone to sin.

The Lord Jesus teaches about many woes in the Gospels; these woes address not only the people at that time but all believers by name and all those who do not believe that the Lord Jesus is the Son of God and the Son of Man and that He came to earth to save the world. The woes given by the Lord Jesus target evil practices against the Trinity of God, and all who read the Word of God should think hard about these woes, and all should come with their hearts to glorify and honor God the way the Bible teaches. These woes may not be relevant to us while we live our lives on

this earth, but all should consider that life on earth is short, and our souls will be the ones suffering for eternity under these woes. In 1 Peter 1:24-25, the Holy Spirit says, “For, all flesh is as grass, and all the glory thereof as the flower of grass. The grass withers and the flower falls, But the word of the Lord abides forever. And this is the word of good tidings which was preached to you.” So, we call each one to believe the Word of God, have faith in the Lord Jesus, and choose Him to be the Master of their lives and be spared of these terrible woes the Lord Jesus talks about in the Gospels.

Below, we highlight all the Bible passages in the Gospels that relate to the woes; we also provide hyperlinks to our Bible Commentary Forever (BCF for short) work, where you will find more comments and explanations on these passages.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** [Matthew 10:15](#) (Woe against those who do not receive the good news); [Matthew 16:1-4](#) (Believe in the Lord Jesus while on earth to not be counted as an evil and adulterous generation); [Matthew 18:7-10](#) (Woe to the world because of the stumbling blocks); [Matthew 23:13](#) (Woe to those shutting the kingdom of the heaven before people); [Matthew 23:14](#) (Woe to those devouring widows' houses); [Matthew 23:15](#) (Woe to those teaching false doctrines); [Matthew 23:16-22](#) (Woe to the blind guides); [Matthew 23:23-24](#) (Woe to those neglecting the Law of God); [Matthew 23:25-26](#) (Woe for greed and self-indulgence in the heart); [Matthew 23:27-28](#) (Woe for uncleanness of the heart); [Matthew 23:29-32](#) (Woe for unrighteousness towards the servants of the Lord); [Matthew 26:24-25](#) (Woe to the betrayers of the Lord Jesus).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** [Mark 8:10-12](#) (Believe in the Lord Jesus while on earth to not be counted as an evil and adulterous generation); [Mark 9:42-48](#) (Woe to the world because of the stumbling blocks).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** [Luke 6:24](#) (Woe to the rich who do not build treasures in heaven); [Luke 6:25a](#) (Woe to those that do not feed their souls with the Word of God); [Luke 6:25b](#) (Woe to those that care only for the enjoyment of this world, and not for the world to come); [Luke 11:42](#) (Woe to those neglecting the Law of God); [Luke 6:26](#) (Woe to those that are well spoken by people; all should think twice about when someone comes to you and praises you more than the truth in it); [Luke 11:43](#) (Woe to those that put themselves first); [Luke 11:44](#) (Woe to the leaders for not listening to the voice of the Lord); [Luke 11:45-46](#) (Woe to those that do not follow the Law of God); [Luke 11:47-51](#) (Woe

for unrighteousness towards the servants of the Lord); Luke 11:52 (Woe to those that use their own understanding to teach the people); Luke 17:1-2 (Woe to the world because of the stumbling blocks).

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** none.

7. Persecutions upon Believers in the Lord Jesus

In the Gospel of John 15:18-25, the Lord Jesus teaches about the world's persecution and hatred. When one believes in the beloved Son of God and follows Him, the world will hate and persecute them because the Lord Jesus' holy teachings condemn the actions of the world. Every believer must stay firm on the Holy Bible's teaching and not cultivate doubt in the heart; the doubt creates a path for the world to enter and pollute one's faith. However, we must never forget that God the Father and the Son Jesus are One; therefore, whoever hates the Son hates the Father also. The world hated the Lord Jesus without a cause, and they will also hate those who believe in Him without a cause, as we can read in John 15:18-20: "If the world hates you, you know that it has hated Me before you. If you were of the world, the world would love its own; but because you are not of the world, but I chose you out of the world, therefore the world hates you. Remember the word that I said to you, A servant is not greater than his master. If they persecuted Me, also they will persecute you; if they kept My word, they will keep yours also."

For this theme, let us comment more on the last verse of this Bible passage.

"A servant is not greater than his master." As the verse has told, remember as well, the beloved Son of God has been born in human form and takes the position of a servant to the Father; when anyone has glorified the beloved Son of God, that glorifying will go to the Father because the beloved Son is a servant of the Father; all glorifying and worshiping He will lead them to the Father because when you glorify the Father, the Trinity of God also has been glorified in the same time, and that is why the verse has told the servant is not greater than the master.

"If they persecuted Me, also they will persecute you." Also, you, as a believer, must do your duty as well; the believer's duty is to share the belief that they have and tell their belief to everyone they meet; however, when the time is right, the Lord will speak into your heart when it is time to give out your belief as well, and that soul will hear what you said; it may not sink down deep in their soul yet, but in time what they heard will take root, and it will be

spreading everywhere into their soul. It will be a time they cannot escape the truth, their ear of the soul will also open, and they will feel in their hearts that there is no place else to go but only to come at the foot of the cross and glorify the Trinity of God with all their soul and mind. However, when you do your duty, persecution can come as well.

“If they kept My word, they will keep yours also.” When those that hear the Word do nothing, that is also disobedience to the Lord Himself; when disobedience has occurred and sank down into their heart, they have persecuted their own soul, which the Lord has given them. The Word they hear will also be used to judge them at the judgment time; if you have told the Holy Word to them and they have ignored that, that is like crucifying the heart of the Lord. When disobedience comes, they have persecuted their own soul. In that time, when they have persecuted the beloved Son of God, whomever He has sent, they didn’t listen to that one, and they would turn back and persecute that person who has told them the truth about the things that had happened; when you have told them what had happened to the beloved Son of God, you also act as a witness and messenger at the same time, and for that reason, they will persecute you.

Therefore, for us, as true believers, knowing what the Lord Jesus talked about the persecution of Him, and that we will also face persecution in this world, we should remember that when the world does not listen to Him, they do not listen to the Father Himself; so, when we go and tell the Holy Word to them if they reject the word we tell, they reject the Trinity of God. Nevertheless, the Bible teaches us to endure until the end against all persecutions of this world coming to us on account of our testimony about the Lord Jesus, and we will be mightily blessed in the kingdom of heaven.

Below, we highlight some relevant Gospel passages to this theme, with hyperlinks to our Bible Commentary Forever (BCF for short) work, where you will find more spiritual comments and explanations.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** [Matthew 5:10-12](#) (Blessings to those being persecuted and insulted on account of the Lord Jesus and His righteousness).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** none.
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** [Luke 6:22-23](#) (Blessings to those being persecuted on account of the Son of Man); [Luke 21:12-19](#) (The Lord Jesus warns His disciples about the persecution to come for His Name's sake).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** [John 16:33](#) (In the world you have tribulations because of testifying the Lord Jesus).

8. Beware of temptations to sin

There are many sins and temptations to sin in this sinful world, but the Lord Jesus came to earth to show the Father's mercy to the world and bring salvation to all. The greed of all things, not just the things of this world, is a great sin upon humans. Humans want to feel important in this world and in the world to come. We all struggle with sins, and the Holy Spirit, speaking through the Apostle Paul, tells us in Romans 7:13-25 that we are all wretched humans full of sins, but we should remember that we have a Holy Redeemer waiting for us to knock at His door and receive His mercy and forgiveness He freely gives to all: "Wretched man that I am! who will deliver me out of the body of this death? I thank God through Jesus Christ our Lord. So, then I of myself with the mind, indeed, serve the law of God; but with the flesh the law of sin" (Romans 7:24-25). However, in 1 Corinthians, the Lord tells us that we have victory over this sinful life through the beloved Son of God and can become part of His kingdom in heaven: "but thanks be to God, who gives us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ."

Teaching about the soul life, in [Luke 16:19-31](#), the Lord Jesus tells us the story of the rich man and Lazarus. In this story, the Lord Jesus presents the contrast of life on this earth between those who are rich on this earth and those who are poor, and then He presents the contrast of eternal life between those who are saved in His bosom and those who go to Hades. All readers should seriously contemplate their life journey on this earth and meditate about heaven and where their souls might end. Nobody should want to be tormented in Hades, as we read about the rich man case in [Luke](#)

16:19-23, “And in Hades having lifted up his eyes, being in torment, he sees Abraham afar off, and Lazarus in his bosom. And he cried out and said, Father Abraham, have mercy on me, and send Lazarus, that he may dip the tip of his finger in water, and cool my tongue; for I am in anguish in this flame.” These verses need further explanations for the readers to help get a clear understanding of the soul’s life in Hades so they might consider life with the Lord Jesus.

- The verses tell us what the end situation of this rich man of earth is and let us know what the situation of Lazarus, the poor man, is at the end of his earthly life. Everyone knows the meaning of torment, but nobody knows the feeling of how tormenting it would be to see far off the people in Heaven; this torment is greater than words can tell. The souls that are in Hades can see Heaven; you can see it, but you cannot go there; this is the part of the torment that the soul receives. All should come to the Lord Jesus as soon as they hear His name and be saved from the flames of Hades.
- Furthermore, these verses show the suffering of the soul by knowing where the water is but remaining thirsty and not being able to get it; the internal torment is greater than the outward appearance of suffering; the anguished soul is in the flame of fire, the outward appearance is suffering from the flame, and also there is internal suffering from thirst; all readers should think about this torment, it is too great to carry. When the verse says, “he may dip the tip of his finger in water, and cool my tongue,” it tells us that the way of the soul’s body in that time is not the same as we are now; the tongue is not the part of thirst for the body, the tongue of the soul is the heart of the living of the soul, the suffering of the heart itself. The water in this verse is not the water that we all drink; this water is the mercy of God that the soul needs, for the soul being in torture, will need the mercy of God to help eliminate the feeling of thirst.

In this Bible passage, the Lord Jesus tells all humans that there is no salvation for the soul beyond their life on this earth. All humans must know that the Lord Jesus is the way and the life; no one goes to the Father and heaven if not by Him (John 14:6). So, sinners come to the Lord Jesus, repent, and receive His mercy and love; when you depart from this earth, you will have your soul be at peace and happy in the bosom of the Lord Jesus, not in the flames of Hades.

Many Gospel passages talk about sins and temptations to sin; however, we highlight this single story of the rich man and Lazarus in this section; we encourage all readers to meditate on this entire story and check the hyperlink provided, where you will find

more explanations which we post in our Bible Commentary Forever (BCF for short) work.

- BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew: none.
- BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark: none.
- BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke: [Luke 16:19-31](#) (The Lord Jesus tells us the rich man and Lazarus story; the Lord Jesus teaches about Heaven and Hades showing the righteous judgment of God regarding the treasures of earth).
- BCF Links in the Gospel of John: none.

9. Beware of False Prophets and Teachings

In the Gospel of [John 6:30-35](#), the Lord Jesus tells the Jews and us today that He is the bread coming down from heaven, and we must eat His flesh and drink His blood to be saved, meaning that we must believe in the New covenant established in His blood and surrender completely, both soul and body, to follow Him who sacrificed His life for us to give us eternal life ([Luke 22:19-20](#)). Furthermore, in [John 6:63-65](#), the Lord Jesus says, “It is the Spirit that gives life; the flesh profits nothing; the words that I speak to you are Spirit and are life. But they are some of you that believe not. For Jesus knew from the beginning who they are the ones not believing, and who it is that will betray Him. And He said, Because of this I have said to you, that no one is able to come to Me, if not it be given to him from the Father.” It is worth meditating on this last verse to understand what the Lord Jesus teaches us.

“If not it be given to him from the Father.” This saying is not predestination at all, but each person has their own choice: free will. If the heart is darkened, the ear will not hear the truth; we can think here that one of His own disciples betrayed the Lord after listening to the Living Word for a long time, and still, his heart was not opened. So, ultimately, it is everyone’s own free choice; will you listen to the little voice in your heart and follow God, or will you just listen to humans cursing God? The Lord God created humans to have free will, so it is our choice to choose the bread coming down from heaven, the Lord Jesus, or choose the food of the darkness, false teachings, and have our souls cast into Hades.

“If not it be given to him.” Talking about the little voice in your heart, if you give attention to that little voice in your heart, you will not turn away from the Living Word; that is why the verse has told, “if not it be given to him,” to

those that listen to that little voice, that little voice is from the Father Himself, listen to that little voice, and that will lead you to be saved. This is no predestination, as everyone has that little voice, but some have chosen to ignore it and walk away from what that little voice has told them. All have the ability to hear in their hearts that there is a God, and they should worship Him. That is why the free choice has been told about; everyone has the freedom to listen to the little voice or not listen; that is what this verse says.

"Given" here means that the Father speaks to all with the little voice in their heart, so all have the same chance to listen to His voice, but then they have the freedom to take what has been given to them or not.

The Lord Jesus Himself warns us in many places in the Gospels to be aware of false prophets and teachers. As followers of the Lord Jesus, we must always pray, read, and meditate in the Word of God so we are not led astray by the world's teachings and false prophets. We must watch and be aware of the schemes of the evil one and be sober and vigilant because the adversary, the evil one, is out there trying to devour the souls of humans (1 Peter 5:8). Specifically, In Matthew 7:17, the Lord Jesus warns us to "beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly are ravenous wolves." Therefore, for all of us, it is hard to recognize false prophets if we do not pray and ask the Lord Jesus for help. By learning the Word of God with the help of the Holy Spirit, the Word of God teaches us that we can recognize the false teachers by their stance on the following three points: the Lord Jesus' birth must be by the Holy Spirit through the Virgin Mary; the Lord Jesus' death must be death on the cross for atonement for our sins; and the Lord Jesus' resurrection must be bodily (in the flesh) resurrection.

So, we all must watch and beware of false teachers and prophets and stay firm in faith in the Word of God as given to us in the Holy Bible. By praying and asking the Holy Spirit for guidance in the name of Jesus, the Holy Spirit will guide our souls and minds to the right path, and we will be safe in the arms of the Lord Jesus. By being sensitive to the little voice of the Holy Spirit, we can be assured that our souls are saved and secured for eternity as told by the Lord Jesus in John 10:27-28, "My sheep hear My voice, and I know them, and they follow Me; My Father, who has given to Me, is greater than all; and no one is able to snatch out from the Father's hand." Below, we highlight two significant Gospel passages that fall into this theme; we encourage all readers to meditate on these passages by prayer and following the

hyperlinks provided to our Bible Commentary Forever (BCF for short) work, where you will find more insightful comments and explanations.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** Matthew 7:15-23 (Beware of false prophets; look for their fruits to recognize them; their stands on the virgin birth, death and resurrection, and the deity of the Lord Jesus are important).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** none.
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** Luke 6:43-46 (Beware of false prophets; look for their fruits to recognize them; their stands on the virgin birth, death and resurrection, and the deity of the Lord Jesus are important).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** none.

Conclusions

In this blog, we present the main topic of teachings about the kingdom of heaven, spiritual rewards, persecutions, and woes, which we divide into nine themes. Each theme presents an essential aspect of the main topic. Heaven is important for every soul on this earth. Heaven is the Lord Jesus Himself, who came down from heaven to show us the way and teach us how to find the Trinity of God (God the Father, God the Son Jesus, and God the Holy Spirit) in heaven (John 6:38). Heaven is the place where the Lord Jesus is. Hades is the place where the evil ones go. Therefore, in this blog, we present the teachings about heaven and rewards to encourage everyone to seek heaven and find spiritual joy in heaven with the Lord Jesus and the teachings about woes so everyone is aware of the sufferings that are there in Hades; we want to make everyone aware that by their free will, they can choose either Heaven or Hades. However, we encourage all to praise and glorify the Trinity of God and choose heaven with the Lord Jesus and look forward to their hope of resurrection in the new world to come: “Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who according to His great mercy begat us again unto a living hope by the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead, unto an inheritance incorruptible, and undefiled, and that does not fade away, reserved in heaven for you, who by the power of God are guarded through faith unto a salvation ready to be revealed in the last time” (1 Peter 1:3-5).

This blog presents many Bible passages, grouped into nine themes, covering the Lord Jesus’ teachings about heaven, spiritual rewards, persecutions, and woes. Our duty as disciples of the Lord Jesus is to continually read and meditate on the Word of God and stay in prayer to keep the faith until the end of our lives on this earth and

find heaven for our souls. Furthermore, we encourage all who read this blog to obey the call of the Lord Jesus in their hearts and choose life for their souls; the Lord Jesus wants to bless all to be with Him in heaven, and He has a place for everyone, heaven is unmeasurable, and all are welcome inside the kingdom of the beloved Son of God.

Meditation Tasks:

1. Meditate on each theme presented in this category and ask yourself what heaven means for you.

Teachings about How Believers should Relate to the Trinity of God and How Believers should Respond to Temptations and Challenges of Life

Introduction

Continuation from “[The Teachings of the Lord Jesus](#).”

The Bible teaches us in Proverbs 1:7 that “The fear of the Lord is the beginning of knowledge; But the foolish despise wisdom and instruction,” and in Proverbs 9:10 that “The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom; And the knowledge of the Holy One is understanding.” First, we should ask ourselves who is the Lord, and second, why should we fear the Lord? The Lord is the Trinity of God, God the Father, God the Son Jesus Christ, and God the Holy Spirit, and the Trinity of God is One from eternity. The Lord Jesus Christ as the pre-incarnate Word is part of the Trinity of God and of all creation ([John 1:1-4](#), Colossians 1:15). God the Father has sent His beloved Son, the Lord Jesus as the light of the world, “who was born, not out of blood, nor out of the will of the flesh, nor out of the will of man, but of God” ([John 1:13](#)). And in [John 1:14](#), we are told, “And the Word became flesh and dwelt among us, and we beheld His glory, glory as of the only begotten from the Father, full of grace and truth,” meaning that from the first breath of life that the beloved Son of God has taken on this earth, His glory has shown to all humans, the glory from the Father Himself; the glory from the Father Himself has come down with the beloved Son as well, all humans can see through His grace and the truth that He is teaching to all humans; all His teaching is the truth of life and every human should take it seriously, the Bible is the Word of life for all. The Bible tells us that the Lord Jesus is the only way to the Trinity of God and the Lord God Almighty; every human on this earth can go to God the Father and the Trinity of God only through the Lord Jesus ([John 14:6](#)).

One might say, “why should I fear or revere the Lord God Almighty.” All humans should consider the creation around them as a testimony of the existence of the Trinity of God and that all things, seen and unseen, have a Creator, and we can relate to the Creator of all things only through the Lord Jesus Christ. All should remember that the Lord God Almighty is the Creator of all things, seen and unseen, and that the life of humans does not end here on this earth when we die (read our article: [Body, Soul, and Spirit: A Biblical Perspective](#)). Therefore, the Creator of all things (The Trinity of God) deserves our worship, so come and glorify the Creator through the Lord Jesus Christ.

In the Gospel of [Luke 12:4-7](#), the Lord Jesus teaching the disciples and the multitudes teaches us all whom we should revere and fear and why, saying, “Now I say to you My friends, Be not afraid of those that kill the body, and after this are not able anything more to do. But I will warn you whom you shall revere: Revere Him, who after having killed has authority to cast into the hell; yes, I say to you, Revere Him. Contrariwise, even the hairs of your head have been all counted. Fear not, you are more valuable than many sparrows.” Furthermore, in the Gospel of [Matthew 10:27](#), the Lord Jesus says: “And you should not be afraid of those killing the body, but are not able to kill the soul; however, rather fear Him being able to destroy both soul and body in hell.”

When the Lord Jesus says, “those killing the body,” it refers to the ones who are against those who believe in the Lord Jesus. There are many like these around us, and many come among us. Be aware of those who are among you and pretend to be like you, but they are not. Those are the real enemies of the true believers in the Lord Jesus; watch out for them; some are church leaders. Also, the Lord Jesus teaches us all that there is a life after this earth and our souls do not just vanish but will end up either in heaven or hell; therefore, we must fear God, who has the power to “destroy both the soul and body in hell.”

We should know that the Three in One is the Father, the Son Jesus, and the Holy Spirit and that all have the power to destroy the soul, but only the Father has the authority to command the soul to be destroyed. Therefore, all should revere the Trinity of God through the Lord Jesus, the Son of God.

Also, the Lord Jesus tells all that God the Father knows all things, and we live and move in Him ([Acts 17:28](#)), and He cares for us all and wants us all to know that we are valuable in His eyes, and He loves humans to the point that He sent His beloved Son to die for us and show us the way to be saved (1 John 4:9-10). Furthermore, if

one “shall confess that Jesus is the Son of God, God abides in him, and he in God. And we know and have believed the love which God has in us. God is love; and he that abides in love abides in God, and God abides in him. Herein, love is made perfect with us, that we may have boldness in the day of judgment; because as he is, even so are we in this world. There is no fear in love; but perfect love casts out fear, because fear has punishment; and the one that fears is not made perfect in love. We love, because he first loved us” (1 John 4:15-19). Therefore, if we love the Lord Jesus, the Son of God, from all our hearts and confess Him as the Lord of our lives, we love the Trinity of God, and we relate to the Trinity of God and God the Father with love and as a result, God will show His love to us and will cast out all our fears; our souls will be safe for eternity with the Lord Jesus.

All believers must understand how they can relate to the Trinity of God, and the Lord Jesus teaches us about this in the Gospels. Furthermore, how we respond to life’s temptations and challenges impacts our relation to the Trinity of God. During our life on earth, we all face temptations and challenges. The tempter is always waiting to use whoever in their fight against God. They will use all those willing to work with them (1 Peter 5:8). All believers should take note that when anyone does work for the Lord God Almighty, the dark side will try to stop them (Acts 5:13-18). However, all believers should also understand that evil spirits cannot do physical work or bodily harm in any case; they can only play with the minds of humans; the Holy Spirit inside a believer protects our minds, hearts, body, spirit, and soul on account of our confession of faith in the Lord Jesus. Therefore, we must constantly pray and guard our minds and hearts, “and the peace of God, which passes all understanding, will guard your hearts and your thoughts in Christ Jesus” (Philippians 4:7).

To understand all the Gospels’ teachings about how believers should relate to the Trinity of God and respond to temptations and challenges of life, we group these teachings into six themes, as given below.

1. The Father sent His beloved Son to save the world.
2. The Father cares for humans and sends His servants to point to whom they should follow.
3. The Father is merciful, and He waits for all to repent and come to Him.
4. Blessed is the faithful servant.
5. How to respond to temptations.
6. How to respond to life challenges.

The Presentation of the Teaching Themes

This section describes all the teaching themes by highlighting their essential features. Furthermore, we present a complete list with links to Bible passages in the Gospels that relate to each theme, with a short description of each passage. These links point to our Bible Commentary Forever work, where you will find more helpful comments to understand better the Word of God.

1. The Father Sent His Beloved Son to Save the World, Respect God's Authority

In [John 3:16-17](#) we read, "For God so loved the world, that He gave the only begotten Son, so that everyone believing in Him may not perish, but have eternal life. For God did not send away the Son into the world to judge the world; but that the world may be saved through Him." These verses merit some comments for further understanding.

"For God so loved the world, that He gave the only begotten Son." As the verse tells all humans, because of love for His creation, the Father has given His only begotten Son, to come down and be born as a human, and this is the true proof of the love the Father has. Even the verse says "the world," but the love here has meaning from the Father for humans because the Father Himself has given His beloved Son to come down and be born as a human to save all humans.

"So that everyone believing in Him ..." This part of the verse itself is a promise from the Father, that everyone who believes and trusts in the beloved Son of God will have eternal life with Him at the end.

"... but that the world may be saved through Him." The world will be saved through the beloved Son of God, but also the world will be judged fairly by the beloved Son of God Himself.

After the coming of the Son of God into the world, the Bible tells us that humans can relate to God the Father and the Trinity of God only through the beloved Son of God, Jesus Christ, the Son of God and the Son of Man ([John 14:6](#)). The Lord Jesus is the Son of God and the Son of Man and God of the Trinity of God; He is One with God the Father and God the Holy Spirit (read our article: [The Trinity of God](#)). The Gospels tell us how the Lord Jesus is the Son of God and the Son of Man at the same time; specifically, the Holy Spirit conceived the baby Jesus in the Virgin Mary's

womb. The Holy Spirit dwelt in the egg of Mary to make the egg conceive — God to be a Man ([Matthew 1:18-25](#), [Luke 2:1-20](#)).

The Old Testament prophets have seen and announced the coming of the Son of God, the Lord Jesus, into the world as the Savior of the world ([John 8:56-59](#)). The Lord Jesus, after His resurrection and ascension to the Father, has sent the promise of the Father, the Holy Spirit, who testifies about the work of the Son of God to the whole world ([Luke 24:49](#), [John 15:26](#), [1 John 5:6-8](#), [Acts 1:8](#)). Therefore, we can only understand the Bible and relate correctly to the Trinity of God through the Holy Spirit and by believing and confessing the Lord Jesus as the Son of God and the Son of Man, and God of the Trinity (read our article: [The Lord Jesus: the Son of God and the Son of Man](#)).

The Father sent the Son to the world to show His love to humans and bring the humans back to Him through His Son; He didn't send the Son to be a human so humans can impersonate or make images of His Son in any form or shape and lower Him down to some sort of idol (read our article: [Who is Your God?](#)). Specifically, in [1 John 5:21](#), the Holy Spirit, speaking through apostle John, urges us all to guard ourselves from idols; therefore, we need to respect the Trinity of God and honor all the persons in the Trinity of God by guarding ourselves from idols. No person should worship idols of any kind, and no person should make images of any person of the Trinity of God, including the Lord Jesus. We must glorify the Father and worship the Trinity of God in spirit and in truth and in the name of the Lord Jesus, the beloved Son of God ([John 4:24](#)). By honoring the Lord Jesus, we honor the Father and the Trinity of God. The Father has given all judgment to His Son, Jesus Christ; so, honor the Son as you honor the Father; the Son gives eternal life to all that come to Him ([John 5:22-27](#)). We all must believe that the Lord Jesus is God of the Trinity and He is “the King of kings, and Lord of lords; who only has immortality, dwelling in light unapproachable; whom no man has seen, nor can see; to whom be honor and power eternal” as written in [1 Timothy 6:15-16](#), and only through Him we can gain eternal life.

The Father has sent the Son into the world to save the world, but the world mistreated the Son of God and put Him on the Roman cross to die. While on earth, the Lord Jesus debated with the Jews, giving many parables that tell about His suffering and mistreatment coming from the humans He created. God cannot die, so the Lord Jesus, after He was crucified, was buried, rose from the dead on the third day, and ascended to heaven, where He is seated at the right hand of the Father,

meaning He has full authority and power as the Father ([Luke 24:36-53](#), [Acts 1:9-18](#)). God the Father has exalted the Son above all powers and authorities so all people can be saved by faith in His name ([John 3:14-15](#)). Let us humbly come to the foot of the cross of Calvary, glorify the name of the Lord Jesus, and give Him the praise and honor He richly deserves.

Below, we highlight all the Gospel passages that we group to this theme; we also provide hyperlinks to our [Bible Commentary Forever](#) (BCF for short), where you will find more comments and explanations.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** [Matthew 20:20-23](#) (The mother of Zebedee's sons comes to the Lord Jesus, worshiping and asking for a favor for her sons; the Father has full authority in all things: respect God's authority); [Matthew 21:37-41](#) (The parable of the master of a house and the farmers: the Father sent His beloved Son to save the world, but His people, with the hand of the outsiders, have killed God's Son on a cross; now, the Holy Spirit will administer the leadership to whoever He pleases, to the ones who are worthy to do the work, not based on looks but on the heart).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** [Mark 10:35-40](#) (The sons of Zebedee, James and John, come to the Lord Jesus asking for a favor; the Father has full authority in all things: respect God's authority); [Mark 12:6-9](#) (The parable of a man who planted a vineyard and rented to the farmers: the Father sent His beloved Son to save the world, but His people, with the hand of the outsiders, have killed God's Son on a cross; now, the Holy Spirit will administer the leadership to whoever He pleases, to the ones who are worthy to do the work, not based on looks but on the heart).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** [Luke 20:13-18](#) (The parable of a man who planted a vineyard and rented to the farmers: the Father sent His beloved Son to save the world, but His people, with the hand of the outsiders, have killed God's Son on a cross; now, the Holy Spirit will administer the leadership to whoever He pleases, to the ones who are worthy to do the work, not based on looks but on the heart).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** [John 3:14-15](#) (The Father exalted the beloved Son of God not only for hope alone but also for people to be saved; the most important thing in life for humans on this earth to be saved is to believe and trust in the beloved Son of God; only through Him can we have eternal

life); John 3:16-17 (Here is a promise from the Father: everyone who believes and trusts in the beloved Son of God will have eternal life with Him at the end; the world will be saved through the beloved Son of God, and the world will also be judged fairly by the beloved Son of God Himself); John 5:22-27 (The Father has given all judgment to His Son, Jesus Christ; honor the Son as you honor the Father; the Son has eternal life to give to all that come to Him); John 7:39 (Everyone who believes in the beloved Son of God will receive His Spirit, who will convince the heart to obey His teaching; all who obey and believe will receive the Spirit of the beloved Son of God); John 10:7-15 (The Lord Jesus is the good shepherd who laid down His life for all the world; He is the door of the sheep, and whoever enters through Him will be saved); John 14:1-4 (The Lord Jesus prepares a place in His Father's house for all those who believe in Him; He will return to receive His own); John 14:13-18 (The Father is glorified on earth in His beloved Son, and only through the Son, Jesus Christ, can we reach the Father and receive the Holy Spirit); John 16:5-11 (The Son came from the Father to save the world and returned to the Father; being at the Father's right hand, the Lord Jesus sends the Holy Spirit to those who believe in Him; the Holy Spirit, having come, convicts the world concerning sin, righteousness, and judgment); John 17:11-17 (The Lord Jesus prays to the Father for His disciples to keep them in the Father's way and from evil); John 17:25-26 (The true disciples know that the Lord Jesus comes from the Father).

2. The Father Cares for Humans and Sends His Servants to Point to Whom They Should Follow

God the Father has sent many prophets throughout the Old Testament time to call His people back to Him and show them the way to be saved. In the Gospels, the Lord Jesus talks in many parables about the servants of the Lord coming to earth to His chosen people to show the way. In this theme, we will focus on one particular parable from Matthew 21:33-36, the parable of the master of the house and the farmers. In this parable, the Lord Jesus says:

“There was a man, a master of a house, who planted a vineyard, and set a hedge around it, and dug a winepress in it, and built a tower, and rented it out to farmers, and traveled abroad. Then when the season of the fruits drew near, he sent his servants to the farmers, to receive his fruits. And the farmers having taken his servants, indeed they beat one, and killed another, and stoned another. Again, he sent other servants more than the first, and they did to them in like manner.” It is

important to fully understand the meaning of this parable for the purpose of this theme. Below, we explain this parable that the Lord Jesus gave to all humans.

“Master” refers to the Father; “house” refers to the seen and the unseen world; “who planted a vineyard” refers to the place to be for God’s people, the Jews, and the chosen ones; “set a hedge around it” means that the Lord put the guide and protection for His people; imagine the Holy Spirit covering them with His wings; that is the fence for His people; even today, all His children have a seal in their hearts to link with the Holy Spirit, and the wing of the Holy Spirit extends to that person; “dug a winepress in it” refers to the procedure (the call from the Lord) to separate the election among His children, the election of who has specific duties in life to do for the Lord; “built a tower” refers to the Word of God, all the regulations and the rules that have been written, and the Lord Jesus coming to point out the rule for all His chosen ones to follow that rule. Through the Lord Jesus, all have the same rule, and nobody can say I know the Lord more than another. All will know Him because of the same rule; “rented it out to farmers” means that everything, the vineyard, the winepress, and the tower, have been leased; “farmers” refers to the Jews and the chosen ones; “traveled abroad” refers to the Father.

“When the season of the fruit drew near” refers to the times when the “farmers” make mistakes, and they need to repent; “his servants” are the election that went through the winepress; “to receive his fruit” refers to receiving the ones who repent and glorify the Lord in their hearts, the ones who come to the point of feeling sorry and want to restart again with the Lord.

The Lord sends His angel to the chosen ones (His servants) to give the message; those then go to the farmers (the Jews and the chosen ones), and they have been mistreated. These verses talk about what the humans did to the Lord’s servants. The Lord sent His servants to serve the humans, but they killed some, beat some, and stoned some, but the Lord never gives up; He keeps sending more of His servants. The Father’s love is greater than His anger.

Ultimately, before sending His Son into the world, God the Father sent His special messenger, John the Baptist, to give the baptism in water to humans for the repentance of sins and to prepare the way for the coming of God’s beloved Son, Jesus Christ (Matthew 3:1-12). In the Gospel of John 1:6-9, we read, “There came a

man, sent from God, whose name was John. He came as a witness, that he might testify concerning the Light, that all might believe on account of him. That one was not the Light but came in order that he might testify concerning the Light.” This passage tells all humans that John is a witness to the Lord. John is a witness to the true Light, which is the most important thing, and we are also told of his duty. John, the man that the Lord used to be as a witness, all humans should look and think of the way of his faith; the way he lived may not fit all people, but the way of his heart and his faith all humans can look to as an example. Furthermore, the passage tells us that the beloved Son of God Himself exists from the beginning, from before the earth was created, and with the mercy of the Father, the true Light has come, not to be just the Light of the earth, but to be the true way for all humans to go to worship the Father in heaven; come to that Light for being saved. The Lord Jesus, the Son of God, is the true Light that came to give life to all that believe in His name (John 1:10-14).

In Luke 1:17, the Word of God tells us that John the Baptist came in the power of the old-time prophet Elijah to show the way to be saved and make ready for the Lord a people for Him. Elijah is a prophet of the Lord from the Old Testament time. To put two servants of the Lord in parallel, John and Elijah, here they are compared to the spirit and power. The difference between these two was that John would tell people about the beloved Son of God, and Elijah talked to people about the power of the Father. However, as happened to many of the Lord’s servants, the people put John the Baptist to death, and sadly, they have also put to death the Son of God Himself, the Lord Jesus, by hanging Him on a Roman cross (Matthew 17:11-13). However, the God Most High has exalted His beloved Son by raising the beloved Son up from the dead, which His own children have crucified on the cross; but the beloved Son of God is also God Almighty, so He cannot die; He is alive and has been raised from the grave (Luke 24:36-53, Acts 5:30-32). Meditating on this theme, we should believe the Word of God and listen to the work of all God’s holy servants; they all point to the coming of the Lord Jesus; therefore, come at the foot of the cross of the Lord Jesus, repent from all our sins, listen to the teaching of the Lord Jesus, and follow Him as our Lord and Savior.

Below, we highlight all the Gospel passages that we group to this theme; we also provide hyperlinks to our [Bible Commentary Forever](#) (BCF for short), where you will find more comments and explanations.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** [Matthew 21:23-27](#) (The Lord Jesus confirms to the Jews that John the Baptist was the messenger of the Lord, and he followed the Lord's commandment to give the water baptism for the repentance of sins); [Matthew 21:28-32](#) (The parable of a man and two sons: the Father sends His servants to the people to show the way; each person's response to the Father's call will determine where each one will go); [Matthew 21:33-36](#) (The parable of the master of a house and the farmers: the Lord sends His servants to call people to repent and turn to the Lord, but they beat some, stone some, and kill some); [Matthew 22:1-10](#) (The parable of a king who gave a wedding feast for his son: from the Lord Jesus' crucifixion until His second coming to earth, humans are called to follow Him; the Father sends servants to testify about salvation through His beloved Son, the Lord Jesus).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** [Mark 11:27-33](#) (The Lord Jesus confirms to the Jews that John the Baptist was the messenger of the Lord, and he followed the Lord's commandment to give the water baptism for the repentance of sins); [Mark 12:1-5](#) (The parable of a man who planted a vineyard and rented to the farmers: the Lord sends His servants to call people to repent and turn to the Lord, but they beat some, and kill some);
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** [Luke 14:15-24](#) (The parable of the great dinner: The Lord sends His servants at dinner time to invite many to His Son's wedding feast; dinner time is the time from the Lord Jesus's crucifixion until His second coming on earth); [Luke 20:1-8](#) (The Lord Jesus confirms to the Jews that John the Baptist was the messenger of the Lord, and he followed the Lord's commandment to give the water baptism for the repentance of sins); [Luke 20:9-12](#) (The parable of a man who planted a vineyard and rented to the farmers: the Lord sends His servants to call people to repent and turn to the Lord, but they beat some, and dishonor some).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** none.

3. The Father Is Merciful, and He Waits for all to Repent and Come to Him

In 2 Chronicles 7:14, the Scripture tells us, "If My people, who are called by My name, shall humble themselves, and pray, and seek My face, and turn from their

wicked ways; then will I hear from heaven, and will forgive their sin, and will heal their land.” The Trinity of God (God the Father, God the Son Jesus Christ, and God the Holy Spirit) is waiting not only for the Jewish people to pray and humble to Him, but He is waiting for all of us to turn from our wicked ways and repent and ask forgiveness in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ, His Son, whom God the Father sent to the earth to die for our sins and give salvation and eternal life to the world. In [Acts 5:31](#), the Scripture tells us that, “Him, God exalted as Prince and Savior by His right hand, to give repentance to Israel, and remission of sins,” meaning that the Lord God Almighty has exalted His beloved Son above all; the right hand of God the Father belongs to His beloved Son only; when sitting at the right hand of the Father, the Son will also have all authority of judgment as well. Now the Father has exalted His Son above all things, the beloved Son of God has the authority to give life to all He wills. And when the verse says, “to give repentance to Israel, and remission of sins,” it tells us that the Trinity of God gives a chance to all humans, not only to His children alone. If all have a humble heart and a repenting spirit, forgiveness will be given to that soul. The forgiveness of sins will come after the repentance of the spirit. Those who put themselves higher than all, and have no humbleness, and are not willing to repent will be punished for eternity.

Moreover, Psalm 103:8 says, “The Lord is merciful and gracious, slow to anger, and abundant in lovingkindness.” The Lord Jesus Christ is the true mercy, grace, and love of the Father to the human race, as [John 3:16](#) tells all: “For God so loved the world, that He gave the only begotten Son, so that everyone believing in Him may not perish, but have eternal life.” All humans, regardless of race, color, shape, and language, are welcome in God’s Son’s kingdom. All should know that there is no other way for anyone to get eternal life if not through the Lord Jesus, the beloved Son of God, who died on the cross and was buried and rose on the third day. He is the One that is now exalted by God the Father to be at the Father’s right hand.

Many Bible passages talk about the Father’s mercy and love for all humans. This section highlights two Gospel passages most relevant to this topic: [Luke 15:20-32](#) (the parable of a man and his two sons) and [John 14:22-25](#) (come to the Father through the Lord Jesus). We will comment here on this theme on one particular verse from [John 14:23](#), which says, “Jesus answered and said to him, If

anyone loves Me, he will keep My word, and My Father will love him, and We will come to him, and will make a home with him.”

“If anyone loves Me, he will keep My word.” So, as the verse clearly tells, if you love the beloved Son of God, you will keep His teachings in your heart; but, when you keep His word, you must also read and meditate on the Holy Bible; the Holy Bible has all the teachings, and those teachings will make your heart ready to receive Him as well.

“And My Father will love him.” Give attention to what the verse has said to all true believers. The beloved Son of God has told all that the Father Himself will love you because you love the beloved Son of God. And this is the way the Father shows love to anyone: when that person meditates on the Holy Word, that person will realize the peace in their heart, and during that time, within the heart, they will have great joy because the Father Himself also is happy with that soul. The root of all happiness for the soul is the Holy Word of God.

“And We will come to him.” Give attention to the word “We”; this refers to the Trinity of God, and at the same time, the Spirit of the beloved Son of God will also be there.

“And will make a home with him.” When the heart of a true believer becomes home for the Lord, that heart of the blessed one will receive the greatest joy of life, which will also make the faith grow. The home is the place where God will dwell and also will make that home the proper place for receiving all praising of the soul; the request the soul will ask for the Lord to dwell in will receive the answer, and deep in the heart of true believers, it will acknowledge the answer they have received, which they can feel by the soul, not by the feeling of the head itself; that feeling will be deep down until the person cannot tell where that happiness comes from. Therefore, to decorate the heart to be the home of the Lord, all believers should put the praises in the heart which glorify the Trinity of God; the words used for glorifying the Trinity of God will decorate the heart of the soul itself for the Lord.

This is the greatest mercy shown to a human heart when the Father and the Son Jesus come and dwell in it. Below, we highlight two Gospel passages that we group into

this theme; we also provide hyperlinks to our [Bible Commentary Forever](#) (BCF for short), where you will find more comments and explanations.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** none.
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** none.
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** [Luke 15:20](#) (The parable of a man and two sons: the father has pity on his son as he sees him returning home); [Luke 15:21-23](#) (The parable of a man and two sons: the son asks forgiveness, and the father is happy to receive him back; the father cares for his son and celebrates); [Luke 15:24](#) (The parable of a man and two sons: the father gladly forgives his son saying, “for this my son was dead and is alive again; was lost, and is found”); [Luke 15:25-28](#) (The parable of a man and two sons: the father loves both sons; the older son is discontent and angry that the father celebrates the return of his lost son, but the father encourages him); [Luke 15:29-32](#) (The parable of a man and two sons: the Lord God loves all and He allows everyone to use all His created things without payment).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** [John 14:22-25](#) (Love the Lord Jesus, keep His word, and the Father will love us, and the Father and the Lord Jesus will come to make a home with us).

4. Blessed Is the Faithful Servant

As followers of the Lord Jesus, we must keep faith on this earth until the end of our lives, and only then will we have eternal life in heaven with the Lord Jesus in His kingdom. In the Gospel of [Matthew 24:13](#), the Lord Jesus tells us that “the one having endured to the end, this will be saved,” and in [John 6:40](#), the Lord Jesus tells us, “For this is the will of My Father, in order that everyone beholding the Son, and believing in Him, should have eternal life, and I will raise him up at the last day.” These verses tell us all that we must be faithful followers (servants) of the Lord Jesus until the end of our lives, and when the end time comes, we will be raised up to life again and be part of the Lord Jesus’ kingdom. The Lord Jesus tells us in the Gospels that we must follow Him from our hearts and we must be faithful servants by doing the Lord’s will all the days of our lives; all believers must testify to the Word of God and what the Lord Jesus did for the world, specifically, that He came to the earth to show the way and bring salvation to all humans, He died on the cross, was buried and on the third day He rose again and now is seated at the right hand of the Father, meaning that He has full power and authority as the Father has. Our faith in the Lord

Jesus must be a testimony to all whom the Lord brings in our path, but we first must have the fundamentals of our faith in the Lord Jesus straightened to be able to share the truth of the Gospel and be faithful servants. We encourage all reading this blog to check our core faith statements and meditate on the Word of God to understand who the Lord Jesus is and what He did for the world before they go out and share with other people (BCFM Core Faith). In the Gospel of [Matthew 24:45-51](#), the Lord Jesus tells the parable of the faithful and wise servant. In this parable, the Lord Jesus blesses the faithful and wise servant but admonishes the evil servant. The faithful is the person who is willing at all costs to follow, and the servant is the person that the Lord has called for certain duties. There are many duties in the kingdom of God; the Lord calls many servants. The wise is the one that gets certain duties that need the wisdom to be done.

We, as the servants of the Lord Jesus must look daily upon our Master and Lord and pray for guidance and protection; we need to pray at all times to the Father in the name of the Lord Jesus to be refilled with the Holy Spirit to be able to hear the voice of our Lord and Savior, the Lord Jesus Christ, and do His will so we will be called faithful and wise servants. Furthermore, we must understand that as servants of the Lord Jesus, we will face many challenges, but if we stay firm in faith, He is faithful to us, and He will be our strength, guide, and support, and He will never fail us or forsake us (Hebrews 13:5). In the Gospel of [John 15:18-23](#), the Lord Jesus tells all that the servant is not greater than their master. Specifically, in [John 15:23](#), the Lord Jesus says, “The one that hates Me, hates My Father also.” The verse tells all believers the truth because there is no difference between the Father and the Son: they are One. If you have listened to the Son, you have listened to the Father as well; when you do not believe in the Son, you also have not believed in the Father who sent Him. In this verse, most people concentrate on the word hate, but hate here is not the feeling of dislike or detestation but refers to not accepting. His people did not accept His teaching when He told them where He was coming from.

Think this way as well: what are the reasons people hate God? Humans have no reason to hate God, but they do have reason to hate the beloved Son of God because He has come down and taken the form of a human; the weakness of being human, God has tasted, and because of that, humans cannot accept that now God knows all weakness of humans because the Father has sent the beloved Son to be human, and use that human nature in condemning the human mistakes; however, this is not the true purpose that the beloved Son of God has come down to be human, He came down in order to save humans. The beloved Son of God in human form knows how

much humans can take the suffering, and when He has returned to the Father, that knowledge as human will save the human souls in the end. Therefore, when they have reason to hate the Son, they also hate the Father at the same time, and for that same reason, they hate both the Father and the Son. Humans put the meaning on the word hate, but does anyone think what hate means for the Lord? Hate for the Lord is nothing like humans understand hate; by not accepting the authority of God, that is hate as well; if you do not accept His authority, you have hated your Master.

We know that the world hates us on account of our testimony to the resurrection of the Lord Jesus, but we must endure until the end, and we must be faithful servants worthy of our blessed Lord Jesus Christ. The world might shame us or even order us to stop teaching in the name of the Lord Jesus, as the Jews did to the apostle in the book of [Acts 4:17-18](#), and [Acts 5:27-28](#), but by the power of the Holy Spirit, we must be bold like Peter and say, “We must obey God rather than men” ([Acts 5:29](#)).

Below, we highlight two Gospel passages that we group into this theme; we also provide hyperlinks to our [Bible Commentary Forever](#) (BCF for short), where you will find more comments and explanations.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** [Matthew 24:45-51](#) (The parable of the faithful and wise servant: the faithful is the person who is willing at all costs to follow the Lord, and the servant is the person that the Lord has called for certain duties).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** none.
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** none.
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** [John 15:18-23](#) (A servant is not greater than his master; believers must do their duty and share the Lord Jesus with those they meet, regardless of any persecution they might face).

5. How to Respond to Temptations

The book of Genesis tells us that the Trinity of God is the Creator of all the worlds, first the unseen world and then the seen world. God created all spiritual beings, and He gave them all free will. So, among the spiritual beings, there has arisen an enemy of God, the adversary, the evil one, the prince of the air, the tempter (Ephesians 2:2) who is out there in the spiritual world fighting God Almighty. However, he is a created being and has no power over God Almighty, but they try to fight God in all ways possible. The Trinity of God created the heavens and the earth. Then He

created the man Adam and then the woman Eve, and blessed them to multiply, so from them, all humans have been procreated (Genesis 2:4-3:24). The Lord God created humans for His pleasure and because of His love for His beloved Son, Jesus Christ (Revelation 4:11). God Almighty also gave all humans free will to choose their way. And, because of God's love for humans, the tempter was out there from the beginning of human existence, since Adam and Eve, to trick them into following him and disobeying their Creator, the Trinity of God (Genesis 3:1). The serpent (the tempter) of Genesis 3:1 is not like the serpent nowadays. The serpent that the first humans faced was a spiritual serpent, which is why the serpent could trick humans. Since the creation of humans, the tempter continuously fights God by using humans. But from the beginning, the Lord God tells all humans to do well, and we can rule over the evil ones, and they will flee from us, saying, "If you do well, shall it not be lifted up? And if you do not well, sin crouches at the door; and to you shall be its desire; but you do rule over it" (Genesis 4:7). Furthermore, the Holy Spirit speaking through Peter warns all believers, saying, "Be sober, be watchful: your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walks about, seeking whom he may devour, whom withstand steadfast in your faith, knowing that the same sufferings are accomplished in your brethren who are in the world" (1 Peter 5:8-9); but further on in James 4:7-8, the Holy Spirit advises us, saying, "Be subject therefore to God; but resist the devil, and he will flee from you. Draw near to God, and He will draw near to you. Cleanse your hands, you sinners; and purify your hearts, you double-minded."

As followers of the Lord Jesus, we must endure until the end, resist the evil ones, repent from all our sins, and always follow our Lord and Savior in all things. The Lord Jesus Himself, the Son of God and the Son of Man, the only sinless Man that ever lived on this earth (1 Peter 1:18-20), was Himself tempted after His water baptism and His Holy Spirit baptism. We read in the Gospels that the Lord Jesus, full of the Holy Spirit, was led in the wilderness by the Spirit for forty days, fasting, where He was tempted by the devil ([Matthew 4:1-11](#), [Mark 4:12-13](#), and [Luke 4:1-13](#)). Temptation comes to everyone, and the Lord Jesus is one hundred percent human. The Lord Jesus was led by the Spirit to be tempted as every human would be, so He is an example for us of how to overcome temptation. As the Son of Man, the Lord Jesus faced three major temptations: the temptation of the flesh, the temptation of pride, and the temptation of easy life and laziness. Going through these temptations, the Lord shows us the key to fighting temptations: stand firm on the Word of God; "it is written" is His reply to each temptation. For the purpose of this

theme, it is beneficial to understand what the Lord Jesus teaches about these temptations; therefore, we will comment below on them.

- The temptation of satisfaction of the flesh (Matthew 4:3-4, Luke 4:3-4). This temptation is a big temptation for all humans. When they are hungry, humans can do anything to satisfy their hunger. In response to this temptation, the Lord Jesus tells us that food for the soul is more important than food for the stomach.
- The temptation of pride (Matthew 4:5-7, Luke 4:9-12). This temptation is the temptation to prove that you are somebody important, which is a hard temptation for humans. The Lord Jesus teaches that on earth, the Lord Jesus came to obey His Father and do the Father's will. By not challenging the Lord, you admit that you are the Lord's servant, and you keep your pride under control.
- The temptation of an easy life and laziness (Matthew 4:8-11, Luke 4:5-8). This temptation is also a hard temptation for all humans. In Luke 4:5-8, we are told that the devil showed to the Lord Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and claims that he has power over them. By showing to the Lord of Life and claiming they have authority over all the kingdoms of the world, the devil is daring to claim his authority. However, we should understand that the devil does have authority, but only over those humans who reject the Lord of Life. And on the earth, itself, the devil can cause problems and suffering because, from the beginning, the Lord has given them a certain authority. The devil can break things on earth in the sense of destruction, but they cannot make anything disappear; only God can. The Lord answers the devil by saying, "It is written, You shall worship the Lord your God, and Him only shall you serve." The Lord Jesus has told the devil here the true way of salvation. The way of salvation also applies to all the fallen angels that fall by trickery; those angels still have a chance to be saved the same way as the children of humans. These angels relate to those angels before the creation of the world. At that time, the heavenly was occupied with many levels of rulers, and these rulers had a duty to give work to the angels. However, some rulers have betrayed the God Almighty, lifted themselves to be equal to the Creator, and tricked many angels into falling with them. When the Father threw them out of heaven, He also gave them a chance to repent, the same way as the children of man; all still have a chance to be saved.

In [Luke 4:13](#), we read, “And having accomplished every temptation, the devil departed from Him until an opportune time.”

After the devil had tempted the Lord, they left Him, but they went in wait to take time and tempt Him again. This verse also tells all humans that when they have been tempted, it will never be once only; always, the same temptation will come and tempt them again until they have given that temptation to the Lord for help because only the beloved Son of God has already won against all the temptations that the devil has tempted Him.

Therefore, as children of God, we must always be ready in the Word of God, stay firm in the Word of God, and believe that our shield is our faith in the Lord Jesus, who won the victory against the evil one on the cross of Calvary. We are shielded by the blood of Jesus, which is our salvation seal put on our hearts when we go and are baptized in water (see our article: [Baptism in Water](#)). Furthermore, as children of God, we have the Holy Spirit and the Spirit of Christ in our hearts, and therefore, no spirits of any kind have power over us; there is no greater spiritual power than the Holy Spirit and the Spirit of Jesus Christ (1 John 4:4).

Below, we highlight all the Gospel passages that relate to this theme; we encourage all readers to check the hyperlinks to all the Bible passages, where you will also find more comments and explanations we provide in our [Bible Commentary Forever](#) (BCF for short) work.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** [Matthew 4:3-4](#) (The temptation of satisfaction of the flesh: the Lord Jesus teaches that the Word of God is food for the soul and it is more important than food for the stomach); [Matthew 4:5-7](#) (The temptation of pride: the Lord Jesus teaches that we should not test the Lord and must keep our pride under control); [Matthew 4:8-11](#) (The temptation of an easy life and laziness: the Lord Jesus teaches that only through the Lord can we fight evil; we must commit to serving the Lord for all of our lives).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** [Mark 1:12-13](#) (The Lord Jesus walked through temptations for forty days alone in the wilderness; He relied on strength from His Father).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** [Luke 4:3-4](#) (The temptation of satisfaction of the flesh: the Lord Jesus teaches that the Word of God is food for the soul and it is more important than food for the stomach); [Luke 4:5-8](#) (The temptation of an easy life and laziness: the Lord Jesus teaches that only through the Lord can

we fight evil; we must commit to serving the Lord for all of our lives); Luke 4:9-12 (The temptation of pride: the Lord Jesus teaches that we should not test the Lord and must keep our pride under control); Luke 4:13 (The beloved Son of God has already won against all the temptations that the devil has tempted Him; we must give all our temptations to the Lord Jesus for help).

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** none.

6. How to Respond to Life Challenges

Life challenges are different than temptations; life challenges are difficult situations we face in our lives; temptations are different than life challenges because temptations come in the weak point of the mind; when the mind is weak, the temptation has power and can influence people if they don't ask for help from the Lord. Whether rich or poor, we all face life challenges in our earthly lives. Some of us face challenges in life because of poverty, lack of sufficient income, sicknesses in the body or mind, loneliness, or many other conditions. But, whatever our condition might be, we should follow the Holy Spirit's encouragement given through the apostle Paul in Philippians 4:11-13, saying, "for I have learned, in whatsoever state I am, therein to be content. I know how to be abased, and I know also how to abound; in everything and in all things, I have learned the secret of both to be filled and to be hungry, both to abound and to be in want. I can do all things in Him that strengthens me."

The Lord Jesus Himself, the Son of God and the Son of Man, faced life challenges on this earth even from His birth; as a family, Joseph and Mary resided in a manger where Mary gave birth to the Son of God, the Lord Jesus (Luke 2:7). Later, Joseph had to take Mary and the Lord Jesus and flee to Egypt to protect the Lord Jesus from the dark attacks of Herod (Matthew 2:13-15). Then, throughout His ministry on earth, the Lord Jesus was hated by the leaders of the Jews, who constantly sought to destroy Him, ultimately managing with the help of the outsiders and the dark to put the Lord Jesus to death on a cruel Roman cross (Matthew 27:32-56, Mark 15:21-41, Luke, 23:26-49, John 19:15-19, Acts 2:23). The Lord Jesus came to earth to do the Father's will and bring salvation to the whole world (John 6:37-39). So, He continued with His ministry on earth despite knowing that He would be betrayed by one of His own disciples and be mocked, abused, and crucified by His own people. Furthermore, the Gospels show that, regardless of the life challenges He faced during His ministry on earth, the Lord Jesus showed mercy and compassion to all and

helped all who came to Him; He taught the multitudes, He healed multitudes physically and spiritually, and fed them when they were hungry.

In the Gospel of Matthew 8:19-22, a scribe and a disciple come to the Lord Jesus considering to follow Him, but each one had some earthly life challenges stopping them. The Lord Jesus answers to the scribe, saying, “The foxes have dens, and the birds of the heaven nests; but the Son of Man has not where to lay His head,” and to the disciple, saying, “Follow Me, and leave the dead to bury their own dead.” By His answers, the Lord tells all that His true home is not on earth but in the heavens. Following the Lord Jesus means to build treasures in heaven, not on earth. Furthermore, He tells all that the living ones are with the Lord Jesus; He is the giver of life. We must follow Him, and we pass from death unto life; we are not among the dead anymore. Therefore, regardless of our life challenges, we must follow the Lord Jesus all our lives, and we will be with Him in His kingdom forever.

The Lord Jesus teaches us in the Gospels in many places how to respond to life challenges; however, in this theme, we selected only two passages from the parable of a man and two sons from the Gospel of Luke. Some call this parable the parable of the prodigal son, but we call it the parable of a man and two sons (Luke 15:11) since both sons play a role in this parable. Reading this parable in Luke 15:11-32, the Lord Jesus tells us that the younger son asks his earthly father to give him the part of his earthly inheritance falling to him, but the older son does not ask anything; instead, the older son remains at home with his father. Then, the Lord Jesus tells in the parable that the young son leaves his father and his home and takes a journey into a faraway country where he wastes all his inheritance and faces many life challenges before he decides to return home to his father and asks him to forgive him and help him. We will comment below on the passage in Luke 15:17-19, where the Lord Jesus teaches us how to respond to our life challenges.

17 But having come to himself, he said, How many hired servants of my father have an abundance of bread, but I am perishing here with hunger!

“But having come to himself.” The Lord wants to tell everyone that when you come to yourself, you realize that you can’t make it alone. But you have someone who loves you and will give you according to your needs, regardless

of whether they are earthly or spiritual; come to that One. God Almighty is the merciful One who will help you when you repent and come to ask His mercy.

“How many hired servants of my father ...” All followers of the Lord Jesus should think again: when you come to the Lord with faith, do not look at what someone else has. Instead, go back to your God, who has all of your needs, and you will have leftovers; don’t be proud of yourself; come back home to the Lord, your true Father.

18 I will arise and go to my father and will say to him, Father, I have sinned to heaven, and before you;

This son came to himself now and admitted his sin against his father as all humans should do; confess your sins and ask forgiveness, and believe that your God is merciful and He will forgive you all your sins if you repent.

“I have sinned to heaven.” In this place, the saying “I have sinned to heaven” means sinned against the will of the Father; when God created humans, the children must obey the parents, and here, in this parable, the son did not obey his earthly father. So, here it talks about children and parents who are believers.

19 I am no longer worthy to be called your son. Make me as one of your servants.

This verse is the heart of this parable: to see yourself as not worthy but still wanting to serve the Lord God Almighty. To be “a servant of the Lord” is what the heart of all believers should be, not just enjoying God’s creation. So, feel like God’s servant and do according to His will. A servant will wait for the master’s order; you, as followers of the Lord Jesus, wait upon the Lord’s mercy and wishes.

While on this earth, we all must honor our heavenly Father, be content with what the Lord provides for us, work hard to do whatever our hands can find to do, and provide for our needs and our family’s needs (Ecclesiastes 9:10, 2 Thessalonians 3:6-15). Most importantly, we must be the Lord Jesus’ servants, a true light to those we meet, show love to all, and help others (Matthew 5:14-16).

Below, we highlight two important Bible passages that relate to this theme; you can follow the hyperlinks provided to find more comments and explanations, which we provide in the [Bible Commentary Forever](#) (BCF for short) work.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** none.
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** none.
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** [Luke 15:11-16](#) (The parable of a man and two sons: honor your father and be content with what the Lord provides; do not waste the blessings that the Lord provides; work for a living); [Luke 15:17-19](#) (The parable of a man and two sons: acknowledge your mistakes; repent and ask forgiveness from God and those you hurt; be humble);
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** none.

Conclusions

In this blog, we present the main topic of how believers should relate to the Trinity of God and how believers should respond to temptations and challenges of life, which we divided into six themes. Each theme presents an essential aspect of the main topic. Being disciples of the Lord Jesus is a blessing, and we should all know that for us, the Trinity of God (God the Father, God the Son Jesus Christ, and God the Holy Spirit) is our God. We need to know how to relate to our God, the Trinity of God, and each Person of the Trinity. Specifically, we must understand that the only way to the Trinity of God and the Persons of the Trinity for a human is through the Lord Jesus, the Son of God and the Son of Man. In our lives as the followers of the Lord Jesus on this earth, we need to honor and glorify the Father and pray to the Father in the name of the Lord Jesus, and we need to pray constantly to be refilled with the Holy Spirit in the name of our Lord Jesus. We must keep the faith until the end of our lives on this earth, so we must give all our temptations and life challenges to the Lord Jesus, who won the victory over all temptations and life challenges; He is the only One who has mercy and can help us. We encourage all readers to stay firm in their faith and come to the Lord Jesus, repent, and ask for His help in all things.

Meditation Tasks:

1. Meditate on each theme presented in this category and try to find the best way for yourself to relate to the Trinity of God.
2. Analyze your heart and mind and see if temptations are present; if so, go to the Lord Jesus, repent, and ask for His help.

3. We all face challenges in life; bring all your challenges to the Lord in prayer and ask for help and understanding.

Teachings about the Cross of the Lord Jesus: Persecution, Betrayal, Trial, Suffering, Crucifixion, Death and Burial

Introduction

Continuation from “The Teachings of the Lord Jesus.”

The Gospels present us with the Son of God, the Lord Jesus, and His work on earth: His birth, His ministry, His persecution, His trial, His suffering on the cross, and His victory over death. The dark worked with the help of humans to destroy the Son of God while on earth in all ways possible, starting to build opposition against Him even from His birth (Matthew 2:16-18). With the help of wicked men, the dark worked toward the Lord Jesus’ persecution, betrayal, trial, suffering, crucifixion, death, and burial. But the Lord Jesus, the Son of God, is God of the Trinity, and on the cross, He won the victory over the dark by rising from the dead in His body on the third day, then ascending to heaven in His earthly and heavenly body as one (Luke 24:50-51, Acts 1:9-11). The Father Himself glorified and exalted His beloved Son above all and received Him back in heaven where He is seated at the right hand of the Father, where He belongs, and all those who pierced Him on the cross will see Him coming back to earth on the clouds of heaven with great power and glory (Mark 14:62).

The Son of God, the Lord Jesus, has come to earth, to His own, to bring salvation to the world, but His own have plotted with the lawless hands and have put Him on the cross (Acts 2:23). The death of the Lord Jesus on the cross, His broken body, and His shed blood on that cross are the essence of the New Covenant that God the Father has established with humankind. The Lord Jesus, the beloved Son of God, the Lamb of God, the only sinless Man, died on that cross to take away the sins of the world (John 1:29). There is no forgiveness of sins for any human if not through the cleansing blood of the Lord Jesus, which He shed on that cruel cross (1 John 2:2). The Holy Spirit, speaking through the prophet Isaiah, says about our Lord Jesus in Isaiah 53:5: “*He was wounded for our transgressions, He was bruised for our iniquities; the chastisement of our peace was upon Him; and with His stripes we are*

healed.” The Bible clearly tells us that we can find peace and healing for our souls only when we come to the Lord God Almighty, in the name of the Lord Jesus, His beloved Son, and believe in the cleansing power of the blood of His Son, the Lord Jesus.

The Gospel of Matthew 26:26-28 tells us about the New Covenant that the Father has established through His beloved Son Jesus Christ:

26 *And while they were eating, Jesus took bread, and blessed, broke it, and having given to the disciples, He said, Take, eat; this is My body.*

The bread the Lord and the disciples used at the Passover meal was unleavened bread. For us as Christians, “unleavened bread” also signifies that the Lord Jesus is sinless and pure. He was born in a body of flesh, but He is completely clean. He never commits any sin. He lives with a body that is of the dust of the earth, but that body is clean. No human being can be as clean as the Lord Jesus.

When baptizing in water, we baptize in His blood of the covenant, and we should use the practice of baptizing by immersion under water. When you don’t immerse yourself under the water when you baptize, you do not follow the Lord’s example. The Bible tells us that the Lord Jesus is the example to follow for all humans on earth. We should be baptized by immersion under water, not sprinkled over with water.

27 *And He took a cup, and having given thanks, gave to them, saying, Drink of it, all of you;*

28 *for this is My blood of the covenant, which is poured out for many for forgiveness of sins.*

This blood of the new covenant refers to the moment when they pierced the Lord Jesus’ side. The Bible says that blood and water came out; the blood is for cleansing, but the water represents water baptism. When the water from His body dropped to the earth, it spread everywhere on earth. Therefore, you can be baptized in every part of the earth to be born again in the water of His blood, and that is why you need to be baptized. Blood represents cleansing; when His blood was poured out, the cleansing water was also poured out all over the world to wash all the sins of humans. We should think about why it is

written that blood and water flowed out. We need to be baptized in the water so we can benefit from His blood cleansing.

The believers that did not acknowledge the power of the Blood of Jesus have not received the forgiveness of their sins. The beloved Son of God has accepted His duty from the Father, and anyone who wants to be a true believer must also accept their own duty that the Lord has put in his heart regardless of what type of duty and how important that duty is, do that duty with the heart of joy.

The Lord Jesus, the sinless Lamb of God, was crucified for the sins of the world, died on that cross, was buried in a new tomb that was secured and sealed, descended into Hades, and on the third day, He rose again: the Lord Jesus is the Son of Man and God of the Trinity, God cannot die (Mark 12:27), and the flesh He took on this earth cannot see decay (Acts 2:27-31; Psalm 16:10).

While on the cross, to atone for the sins of the world, the Lord Jesus was separated for a moment from the Father because He carried all the sins of the world on His shoulders by His death. We read about this in the Gospel of Matthew 27:46:

Then about the ninth hour, Jesus cried with a loud voice, saying, Eli, Eli, lama sabachthani? That is, My God, My God, why have Thou forsaken Me?

How sad heaven is when the Son cannot feel the Father! The death of Jesus' human body had an impact on heaven as well because that human is the Son of Man, departing from the earth; there was sadness beyond what human words can explain (See Complementary Comments on Matthew 25:6). Because the Lord was in a human body, while at the point of death, the Father just stayed above watching; the Father was not in human form, but His feeling was impacted because of the human death in His Son's body. There was sorrow beyond what human words can say when the Three in One felt separated; because the Son took human form, the death of the human body of the Son also impacted the Father. When the death of the Son happened, the Son went down to the death place to give light to the dark place. The Father will not go there; His glory will destroy the death there.

The Lord gave the Holy Spirit word-by-word dictated Bible to humankind (read our article: Bible Dictation), and the Bible records the salvation work of the beloved Son of God on earth. All humans can see God in the creation and are responsible for

believing that there is a Creator (Romans 1:20), the Trinity of God, who sent His Son into the world to bring salvation to all (John 3:16). There is no need for further signs and miracles to be shown to the world; the only sign given to “this generation” is the Lord Jesus’ death on the cross and His bodily resurrection from the dead. “This generation” refers to all the generations of humans from the Lord Jesus’ crucifixion until His second coming to the earth.

In the Gospel of Matthew 16:1-4, the Lord Jesus, interacting with the leaders of the Jews at that time, talks about the sign of His death and resurrection as the ultimate sign for humankind. Below, we comment on these verses:

1 *And the Pharisees and Sadducees having approached, tempting, asked Him to show them a sign from heaven.*

If you believe there is no further need to see any miracles in front of your eyes. Believing is by the heart and not by the eyes. Faith comes by the heart first, not by the eyes. The Pharisees and Sadducees wanted to tempt the Lord Jesus, to show people that the Lord Jesus is nobody, that they are the only ones who can interpret the times, and that only they alone can understand what God is doing.

2 *And answering, He said to them, When it is evening, you say, Fair weather, for the sky is red.*

3 *And in the morning, A storm today, for the sky is red, gloomy. Indeed, you know how to discern the appearance of the sky, but the signs of the times you are not able.*

Humans always make guesses; they always use human interpretation as that is God’s doing. For example, we interpret the meaning of a red sky, but who made that red sky? We make interpretations about why the sky is red, but we forget that the Lord is the one who made it red. We forget to think about who made all the things. First, we must acknowledge the Creator’s hand in everything.

“... but the signs of the times you are not able.” This saying, simply tells us that humans cannot interpret the signs of the times since only the Lord can. We do not need a sign, and we should not waste our time interpreting because the times are changing according to the Father’s will.

4 An evil and adulterous generation seeks a sign; but a sign will not be given to it, if not the sign of Jonah. And having left them, He departed.

“An evil and adulterous generation ...” is a fitting word for them. They have seen the miracles the Lord Jesus has done so far, but they still ask for a sign. The Pharisees and Sadducees could not understand the meaning of the Lord being among humans, so they asked for a sign from heaven. They are darkened and blind; another generation has not seen the miracles, yet they believe, so this generation has a greater sin. Even for us, we read about the miracles the Lord has done, which we have not seen, but the Word has talked to us, and we believe.

“... but a sign will not be given to it, if not the sign of Jonah.” As the prophet Jonah was kept in the dark for three days, the Lord Jesus will be kept in the dark of the earth for three days. But, in that time, the Lord’s mercy was extended to the dark side; it is written in the Bible (See 1 Peter 3:18-20; Ephesians 4:8-9) that the dark has heard the Lord Jesus’ voice. The Bible never talks about the Hades in detail because it is not for us to know these things in detail. The Lord gave a chance to those in the darkness (in Hades) to be saved, to those souls that were on earth before the Lord came to earth, who did not have a chance to hear the good news of the Gospel. During those three days when the Lord was in the grave, the Lord Jesus Himself ministered to those lost souls. He did not go there to make disciples; He just went to bring the lost souls (that belong to Him) into Abraham’s bosom, the souls that never had a chance to be saved before. At the same time, during these three days, the Lord Jesus also went to Abraham’s bosom, which is a waiting place for those who believed in God but didn’t have a chance to hear the good news. Even these souls need to hear the good news because there is only one way to be saved: through faith in the Lord Jesus. Abraham’s bosom is a place of waiting for the souls that have faith in God and have departed from earth before the coming of the Lord Jesus. The souls of the believers who die in the Lord Jesus also have their own place of waiting.

Therefore, we all must come to the foot of the cross, believe in the Lord Jesus’ salvation work, ask for forgiveness from the Father in the name of the Lord Jesus, and make peace with God the Father in order to secure our place for eternity with His beloved Son, the Lord Jesus (read our article: [Make Peace with God the Father through His Son Jesus Christ](#)).

To understand all the Gospels' teachings about the cross of the Lord Jesus, we organize all the Gospels' teachings that fall into this category into three themes, as given below.

1. Persecution, betrayal, and suffering.
2. Crucifixion and the meaning of the cross.
3. Death and burial.

The Presentation of the Teaching Themes

This section describes all the teaching themes by highlighting their essential features. Furthermore, we present a complete list with links to Bible passages in the Gospels that relate to each theme, with a short description of each passage. These links point to our Bible Commentary Forever work, where you will find more helpful comments to understand better the Word of God.

1. Persecution, Betrayal, Trial, and Suffering

The Bible shows us that the dark knows who the Son of God is and that He came to earth to bring salvation to humankind ([Luke 4:34](#), [Luke 4:41](#), [Mark 3:11](#)), so they used humans to try to destroy Him. The Gospels show us how the dark slowly built up their fight on earth against the Son of God with the help of the leaders of the Jews and the outsiders until they put the Lord Jesus to death on the cross of Golgotha ([Mark 15:22-32](#)). At first, even His brothers did not believe in Him and were jealous of Him ([John 7:3-5](#), [Mark 3:21](#)), and He was not honored in His own region, where people scoffed at Him ([Mark 6:3-6](#)). Furthermore, as the Lord Jesus ministered to people all over and performed miracles among the people, the leaders of the Jews, because of jealousy and hatred, started to plot to destroy Him ([Matthew 12:14](#), [John 7:1](#)). They tried to frighten the people who believed that the Lord Jesus is the Christ of God by persecuting those who confessed Him as Christ ([John 9:22](#), [John 9:34](#)), and even plotted to kill Lazarus who the Lord raised from the dead because on his account many came to believe in the Lord Jesus ([John 12:9-11](#)). Finally, the dark, with the help of the betrayer ([Luke 22:3-6](#)), one of the Lord Jesus' disciples, used the Jews to arrest and condemn the Lord Jesus and, with the help of the outsiders, to put Him on the cross ([John 18:2-40](#)).

In John chapter 14, the Lord Jesus talks to His disciples about the Trinity of God, His love for the Father, and what it means to be a true believer. He also prepares the disciples for what is going to happen to Him by telling them ahead about His coming suffering on the cross, specifically talking about who is behind the fight against God

and who wants to destroy the Son of God and His work of salvation by saying in John 14:30-31:

I will no longer talk much with you, for the ruler of this world comes; and he has nothing on Me; but that the world may know that I love the Father, and according as the Father gives Me commandment, even so, I do. Arise, let Us go from here.

“... for the ruler of this world comes.” The dark does not know the plan of salvation; the only thing the dark wants is to fight with God, and the only way the dark can think of how to fight is by using humans. If God in human form has spent life as a human, then the dark itself can only think that humans mean something to God, and for them, the beloved Son of God in human form must die first in order to destroy the plan of God for humans; God in human form must disappear first for them. As the verse has told to all believers, the dark wants to concur the whole world, and now they are coming. If one does not meditate on the Word and follows the teaching of God, the evil one will use the pleasures of this world itself to lead that soul astray; the human soul always seeks first for fun; to meditate on the Word, it needs work to do, and humans do not like to be serious about the Word of God, and the dark side will use this weakness of humans in order to make humans fall in the trap of pleasures and fun of the earthly things.

“And he has nothing on Me.” Because the beloved Son of God is in human form, the dark themselves believe that if God goes into their domain of the dark, God Himself will lose His own power. They believe this world (the earth itself) is the world of light and has given the power to the beloved Son of God, and if the beloved Son of God goes into the dark domain, He will lose His power; for the dark believe that this world has given the beloved Son of God power. So, the dark themselves believe that if they can keep the beloved Son of God in their domain, they have won the fight with God because their power is strongest in the dark domain. God is the God of light, so the dark believe that if the beloved Son of God will be kept in the dark domain, He will have no power left to fight. For the dark itself, that is the victory: if they can keep the beloved Son of God in their domain, they can brag they have won, and the beloved Son of God will become a slave in the dark domain. The dark never understands the power of God; they can only think that in their own domain, God cannot fight with them on their own terms. So, the “nothing” in this verse refers to keeping the beloved Son of God without power in the dark domain. In

the dark's thought, the Son in human form does not have the same power as the Father in heavenly form does. So, when the verse says, "he has nothing on Me," it refers to the fact that the dark has thought in their own mind that they can use the beloved Son of God to trick humans into believing in the dark, so if they can keep the beloved Son in their domain the claim for humans (human souls) has succeeded in their hand, which is false since the Lord Jesus won the victory over the dark and death by raising from the dead.

And in Luke 18:31-33, we read:

And taking aside the twelve, He said to them, Behold, we go up to Jerusalem, and all things that are written through the prophets about the Son of Man will be accomplished. For He will be delivered up to the Gentiles, and will be mocked, and will be shamefully treated, and will be spit upon; and having scourged they will put Him to death, and the third day He will rise again.

Remember who was the ruler of the people at that time; in order to be delivered to the people, first the Lord Jesus must be given into the hands of the ruler of the earth, and then they will make the Gentiles do their will to the beloved Son of God, in order for them not to feel guilty towards God because they are not the ones who mistreated the beloved Son of God. The way they disgraced the Lord Jesus was as if He was a criminal, but the beloved Son of God was willing to accept that treatment in order to turn around and save all humans on earth to be as His own people.

Death for the human body is a fearful thing even for the beloved Son of God Himself, but He knows perfectly well that in three days, He will rise again.

When the beloved Son of God spoke to them about His death, this was according to the Father's will, but the human mind would not be able to understand, even His own disciples; they were simple humans as well. The things that He had told them, for the human mind to understand, would not be revealed yet until He would explain to them in their hearts, not by human words but by the spiritual way only.

The Jews put the Lord Jesus on the cross with the help of the outsiders, but it was not the outsiders who accused the beloved Son of God; His own people were the ones who wanted to use the outsiders to kill the innocent Lamb of God. As shown in John 18:19, Pilate did not know the true accusation that the people of God had for the

outsiders to punish the innocent One and asked: “What accusation do you bring against this Man?”

Each Gospel presents some information related to the Lord Jesus’ trial, but to have a complete picture of the trial as given by all the Gospels, we need to combine all the events. To achieve this, we follow the timely sequence of the Lord Jesus’ trial as presented in the Gospel of Luke as we believe that the Gospel of Luke presents the events of the ministry of the Lord on earth in an orderly manner ([Comments Luke 1:3](#)); then, based on this timely sequence we can clearly connect all the events that took place during the Lord Jesus’ trial, as shown below.

- [Luke 22:54](#): The Lord Jesus was taken into the high priest’s house (Annas’ house, see [John 18:19-23](#)).
- [Luke 22:63-65](#): The Lord Jesus was mocked by those that held Him (this happened when Jesus was taken from Annas and awaiting the council of the high priests and the elders to gather together at Caiaphas, the high priest; also, during this time was when Jesus looked at Peter when Peter denied Him).
- [Luke 22:66-71](#): The Lord Jesus was tried by the council of the Jews (the elders, chief priests, and the scribes).
- [Luke 23:1-2](#): The council of the Jews brought the Lord Jesus to Pilate and accused Him of “perverting our nation, and forbidding to give tribute to Caesar, and saying that He Himself is Christ a King” (See [Comments John 18:2](#)).
- [Luke 23:3-6](#): Pilate questioned the Lord Jesus.
- [Luke 23:7-11](#): Herod questioned the Lord Jesus, and the chief priests and the scribes accused Him.
- [Luke 23:12-16](#): The Lord Jesus was returned to Pilate, but neither Pilate nor Herod found Him guilty.

Now, the events from the Gospels of John, Matthew, and Mark can be easily related to the orderly sequence in the Gospel of Luke, as shown below.

- John 18:13-14,19-23: Annas, the priest, questioned the Lord Jesus.
- John 18:24: The Lord Jesus was sent to Caiaphas, the high priest (the council of the Jews trial).
- John 18:28-38: The Lord Jesus was tried by Pilate.
- Matthew 27:1-2: The Lord Jesus was tried by the chief priests and the elders.
- Matthew 27:11-14: The Lord Jesus was tried by Pilate and accused by the chief priests and the elders of the Jews.
- Mark 15:1: The Lord Jesus was tried by the chief priests, the elders, and the scribes, and the whole council bound Him and sent Him to Pilate (the council of Jews trial).
- Mark 15:2-5: The Lord Jesus was tried by Pilate.

Therefore, let us come in faith at the foot of the cross and ask forgiveness since the Bible tells us that all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God (Romans 3:23-24). We must come to the Lord Jesus in faith, believe that He is the only Savior of the world and the only way to the Father (John 14:6), and ask Him to give us the promise of the Father (Luke 24:49) so we can understand the meaning of the cross and His sufferings, which He endured for our sins.

Below, we highlight all the Gospels' links that relate to this theme, where you will find more comments and explanations, which we provide in the Bible Commentary Forever (BCF for short) work.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** Matthew 12:14 (The Pharisees make plans to destroy the Lord Jesus); Matthew 14:1-12 (John the Baptist is put into prison and then killed on account of his testimony); Matthew 23:33-39 (The children of God have persecuted, killed, and stoned many servants and prophets of the Lord; therefore, their house will remain desolate until they repent and accept the Son of God, the Lord Jesus); Matthew 26:3-5 (The chief priests and the elders take council to seize the Lord Jesus and kill Him); Matthew 26:14-16 (The betrayer plots to betray the Lord Jesus for money); Matthew 26:47-50 (The betrayer with a great multitude go and seize the Lord Jesus); Matthew 26:57-62 (The trial of the Lord Jesus at the high priest palace

using false witnesses); Matthew 26:65-68 (The Jews accuse the Lord Jesus of blasphemy and deserving death; they mock and abuse Him); Matthew 27:1-10 (The Jews deliver the Lord Jesus to Pilate the governor; the word spoken through the prophet Jeremiah is fulfilled); Matthew 27:11-26 (Pilate and the Jews condemn the Lord Jesus to be crucified; they release a criminal instead of the sinless Lamb of God); Matthew 27:27-32 (The soldiers and the people mock and abuse the Lord; they take Him to be crucified).

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** Mark 3:6 (The Pharisees make plans to destroy the Lord Jesus); Mark 6:14-29 (John the Baptist is put into prison and then killed on account of his testimony); Mark 11:18 (The chief priests and the scribes seek to destroy the Lord Jesus); Mark 14:1-2 (The chief priests and the scribes seek to kill the Lord Jesus); Mark 14:10-11 (The betrayer plots to betray the Lord Jesus for money); Mark 14:43-50 (The betrayer with a multitude with swords and staves go and seize the Lord Jesus); Mark 14:53-60 (The trial of the Lord Jesus at the high priest house using false witnesses); Mark 14:63-65 (The Jews accuse the Lord Jesus of blasphemy and deserving death; they mock and abuse Him); Mark 15:1-15 (The Jews deliver the Lord Jesus to Pilate; Pilate and the Jews condemn the Lord Jesus to be crucified; they release a criminal instead of the sinless Lamb of God); Mark 15:16-21 (The soldiers and the people mock and abuse the Lord; they crown Him with a crown of thorn and they take Him to be crucified).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** Luke 3:19-20 (John the Baptist is put into prison on account of his testimony); Luke 9:7-9 (John the Baptist is beheaded on account of his testimony); Luke 11:53-54 (The scribes and Pharisees seek to entrap the Lord Jesus in order to condemn Him); Luke 22:1-2 (The chief priests and the scribes seek how to put the Lord Jesus to death); Luke 22:3-6 (The betrayer plots to betray the Lord Jesus for money); Luke 22:47-48 (The Lord Jesus prays in a place at the Mount of Olives; the betrayer comes with a crowd to betray the Son of Man); Luke 22:52-54 (The chief priests, the captains of the temple, and the elders seize the Lord Jesus and take Him to the high priest house); Luke 22:63-66,71 (The men that held the Lord Jesus mock Him and beat Him and lead Him into their council to condemn Him); Luke 23:1-6 (The Jews deliver the Lord Jesus to Pilate and accuse Him of many things); Luke 23:7-12 (Pilate sends the Lord Jesus to Herod; the chief priests and the scribes vehemently accuse Him; they mock Him and send Him back to Pilate); Luke

23:13-25 (Pilate and the Jews condemn the Lord Jesus to be crucified; they release a criminal instead of the sinless Lamb of God).

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** John 5:15-16 (The Jews persecute the Lord Jesus for doing healings on the Sabbath); John 7:1 (The Jews seek to kill the Lord Jesus); John 7:32 (The chief priests and the Pharisees send officers in order to take the Lord Jesus); John 7:49-53 (The Jews plot to condemn the Lord Jesus; Nicodemus defends the Lord Jesus); John 8:41 (The Jews reject the Lord Jesus and deny His deity); John 9:17-23 (The Jews persecute those who would confess the Lord Jesus as the Christ); John 10:20-21 (Division arises on account of the Lord Jesus); John 10:39 (The Jews seek to seize the Lord Jesus, but are not able); John 11:46-50 (The chief priests and the Pharisees assembled a council to condemn the Lord Jesus to death, fearing the people might follow Him); John 11:53-57 (The chief priests and the Pharisees take council to seize and kill the Lord Jesus; the Lord Jesus does not walk openly among the Jews; the Jews give orders to people to report where He is); John 12:1,9-11 (The Lord Jesus is in Bethany; the Jews plot to kill Lazarus because the Lord raised him from the dead); John 14:29-32 (The dark does not know the salvation plan; the dark wants to destroy the Son of God with the help of humans); John 16:1-4 (The Lord Jesus' disciples will face persecution because the world does not know the Father nor the Son); John 18:2-5 (The betrayer comes with a military guard and servants from the Jews to seize the Lord Jesus); John 18:10-14 (The military guard, the commander, and the servants of the Jews bind the Lord Jesus and take Him to the high priest house); John 18:22-23 (The officer of the high priest strikes the Lord Jesus with his hand); John 18:24 (Annas sends the Lord Jesus to Caiaphas the high priest); John 18:28-31,33-35 (The Jews send the Lord Jesus to the outsiders to be judged and put to death; Pilate questions the Lord Jesus); John 18:38-40 (The Jews ask Pilate to release a criminal and condemn the Lord Jesus to death); John 19:1-5 (The Lord Jesus is scourged, they put a crown of thorns on His head, and array Him in a purple robe; they mock Him and abuse Him); John 19:6-12 (The Jews ask Pilate to crucify the Lord Jesus because His claim to be the Son of God; Pilate seeks to release the Lord Jesus); John 19:13-14 (Pilate judges the Lord Jesus at the place called the Stone Pavement).

2. Crucifixion and the Meaning of the Cross

Humans, if they don't stay in prayer, are easily controlled by the activity of the dark and lose focus of their God and Savior. The Lord Jesus took much abuse, mocking, and suffering from His capture until His death on the cross.

The Lord Jesus was accused of blasphemy (Mark 14:64) by His own chosen people, the Jews, and handed to the outsiders to be judged and put to death on the cross (Mark 15:1, John 18:28). During the Lord Jesus' trial, the Jews cried out to Pilate, "If you release this Man, you are not a friend of Caesar," who after hearing these words sat down on the judgment seat and judged the Lord Jesus (John 19:12-13). Moreover, the Bible tells us in John 19:15 that the Jews cried out, "Take away, take away, crucify Him! Pilate says to them, Shall I crucify your King? The chief priests answered, We have no king but Caesar." Then, at the cross, to show people that the Lord Jesus deserved death, they crucified Him in between two criminals by piercing His body with nails to a wooden cross (Acts 2:23).

The Bible provides enough information to approximate the timeline of the Lord's trial and crucifixion (See Comments John 19:14). Specifically, the Gospels give us three precise times related to our Lord Jesus' trial, crucifixion, and death, which we convert to the Roman time method.

- John 19:14 tells us the time when the Lord Jesus was tried and condemned by Pilate and the Jews at the Stone Pavement: "Now it was the day before the Sabbath of the Passover; the hour was even as the sixth" (6 am).
- Mark 15:25 gives the time of the crucifixion as "And it was the third hour, and they crucified Him" (9 a.m.).
- The time of Jesus' death on the cross is given in Luke 23:44, Matthew 27:45-49, and Mark 15:33-37. In Mark 15:34, we are told, "And at the ninth hour Jesus cried with a loud voice, Eloi, Eloi, lama sabachthani?" (3 pm).

Based on these times, we can approximate the main events presented in the Gospels during the Lord Jesus' trial and crucifixion. All these events took place on the day before the Sabbath of the Passover, which was a Friday.

- The Lord Jesus was captured around 1 am to 2 am (Luke 22:47-53, John 18:1-12).
- He was taken first to Annas' house before 3 am (Luke 22:54, John 18:12-14, 19-23). Then He was taken to Caiaphas (John 18:24).
- He was mocked between 3 am and 4 am (Luke 22:63-65), and during this time, Peter denied Him (Matthew 26:69-75, Luke 22:54-62, John 18:25-27).
- The Lord Jesus was tried by the council of the Jews (the elders, chief priests, and the scribes) before 4 am (Luke 22:66-71). Then they took Him to the Praetorium (John 18:28).
- The council of the Jews brought the Lord Jesus to Pilate and accused Him around 5 am (Matthew 27:1-2, Luke 23:1-2); He was questioned by Pilate (Luke 23:3-6); He was mocked, beaten and scourged, and they twisted a crown of thorns and put it upon His head, and arrayed Him in a purple robe (Matthew 27:27-30, Mark 15:16-19, John 19:2).
- He was taken to Herod before 6 am and was questioned by Herod; the chief priests and the scribes accused Him (Luke 23:7-11); He was taken back to Pilate (Luke 23:12-16).
- The multitude asked Pilate to release Barabbas and crucify the Lord Jesus (Luke 23:17-25, John 18:39-40).
- He was judged by Pilate at the Stone Pavement place around 6 am (John 19:13).
- He was taken to be crucified before 8 am (John 19:16, Luke 23:25); He carried His own cross (John 19:17); also, Simon of Cyrene on the way was given to

carry the Lord Jesus' cross (Luke 23:26, Matthew 27:32, and Mark 15:21); a great multitude follows Him (Luke 23:27-31).

- The Lord Jesus arrived at the place called Golgotha (the Skull) before 9 am (Luke 23:33, Matthew 27:33-38, and Mark 15:22-28).
- The Lord Jesus was crucified at 9 am (See Mark 15:25); the Lord Jesus was on the cross with two criminals on His side (Luke 23:32-33) and He was mocked on the cross by the soldiers and the people (Luke 23:34-43).
- Darkness fell upon the place from noon until 3 pm (Luke 23:44-45, Matthew 27:45-49, and Mark 15:33-37).
- The Lord Jesus gave up His Spirit at 3 pm (Matthew 27:45-49, Luke 23:46).

Humans enjoyed the show of seeing the Son of God being abused and tortured and showed no mercy on Him (Matthew 27:39-44), yet He showed His love and mercy on all humans by taking all the suffering and not calling His angels to destroy them (Matthew 25:53). While being mocked and abused and taken to the place of crucifixion, the place called the Skull, the Lord Jesus shows His great mercy on all humans by saying in Luke 23:34:

Father, forgive them; for they know not what they do. Then dividing His garments, they cast lots.

“And Jesus said, Father, forgive them ...” All believers should notice the loving heart of the beloved Son of God. Even in His most painful time in human form, even as the drops of blood are pouring down from His wounds, in His heart, and in His mind, all the Lord Jesus wants is for the Father to forgive them all because they have crucified all Three at this time. The Trinity of God has been crucified there on that cross.

“Then dividing His garments, they cast lots.” The greed of humans never ends, even for the garments of the dead one they cast lots to share, but as they shared the beloved Son of God's garments, they all have shared the sin against God as well. As the verse says, they have shared His garments among them, and all who have part in this have equal sin as the one that has pierced the nails into His flesh, the unforgivable sin; they have shared part of it as they have cast lots upon His garments. One begotten Son the Father has, and He has been crucified. They follow orders, but when they share the garments, all responsibility for their own actions falls on them. Taking the garment off His

body has exposed the nakedness of His body and brought shame to the dead one, and that is no different from piercing the nails into His flesh. As believers, we know as well that the beloved Son of God has been crucified, but He has never truly died. When they have taken His garments off, it is considered to disgrace Him because the beloved Son of God is always living. If you have disgraced Him in any way, you have done it to the Creator as well.

To understand the meaning of the cross and its significance for humankind, we will comment on a passage of Scripture found in John 10:14-18.

14 *I am the good shepherd; and I know My own, and I am known by Mine.*

The beloved Son of God also has told all humans about one of His characters; He is the good shepherd, and He knows all His sheep, and at the same time, all His sheep recognize Him as well.

“And I am known by Mine.” One can ask how this knowledge can be. Think of yourself in this time as well; you know the beloved Son of God has died for you, and you are saved by His blood. In the same way, all His sheep know Him as all believers know their Savior.

15 *Just as the Father knows Me, I also know the Father; and I lay down My life for the sheep.*

“Just as the Father knows Me ...” The Father knows the beloved Son of God, and the beloved Son of God also knows the Father. Therefore, the Father knows that the beloved Son of God will do all His will. When the beloved Son of God came down on earth, in His human form, there was only one purpose of life He would want to do: to accomplish the work the Father has given to Him.

“I lay down My life for the sheep.” In accordance for the beloved Son of God to accomplish the work that the Father has given to Him, the beloved Son of God is willing to be crucified by the hand of the creatures that He has created because by laying down His life, He will save all the people that belong to Him, and the Father will do according to His (beloved Son) will as well.

16 And other sheep I have, which are not of this courtyard; and those it is necessary for Me to bring, and they will hear My voice; and there will be one flock, one shepherd.

The Lord talks about two sheep courtyards, one spoken in John 10:1 and one in this verse. The first courtyard of the sheep is His people, who we call Jews, but the other courtyard of the sheep is all the Gentiles; the Gentiles with a heart for the Lord will also hear His calling. And they all will become one flock together when they both come at the foot of the cross, and both His people and the Gentiles become His children.

“And those it is necessary for Me to bring, and they will hear My voice.” Whoever is not in the flock yet and has realized that and accepts the Holy Bible as the true living Word of God, all these people the Lord will bring them into His flock as well because they have accepted the true living Word of God: the ear of their soul will be open, and they will obey His teaching, and He will bring them into His flock.

17 Because of this, the Father loves Me, because I lay down My life, that I may take it again.

“Because of this, the Father loves Me ...” This is the testimony of the beloved Son of God that even He came down to do the work for the Father, but to die on the cross also was His own will to do. It was not by force from the Father for Him to be crucified, but He Himself loves humans and wants to save them as well, so He laid down the human life in Him for all humans; God in human form has sacrificed the human form in Him to save all humans of this earth.

“I may take it again.” The beloved Son of God has been resurrected in human form as well because nothing that has been created will disappear. When the earth takes the punishment, no humans will be left again, but already there is One true human in heaven in the beloved Son of God Himself; His human body will be in heaven forever.

Also, the cross is essential for the resurrection; the beloved Son of God in human form must die on the cross because the humans will be the ones that have killed the human God, and also, humans will see that the human God has resurrected and went back to heaven as well. God in human form will not leave the human body on earth, but on judgment day, humans will see His

human body and the damage of that body that happened under the humans' hands. The picture of the Lord Jesus will be in front of their eyes; His broken body will appear on the judgment throne, and every eye will see what He had taken for all humans as punishment. This picture of the Lord Jesus' body is vital to prove the resurrection of His body. If the Lord had merely vanished from the cross, we would not have the Gospel and the resurrection.

18 No one takes it from Me, but I lay it down of Myself. I have authority to lay it down, and I have authority to take it again. This commandment I received from My Father.

“No one takes it from Me, but I lay it down of Myself.” When humans crucified the beloved Son of God, His last breath of life on earth, He was willing to give it away in order to save the humans; the last breath on earth hurt Him more than all the nail piercings on Him. If He did not give away the last breath on the cross at that moment, the humans would further destroy His body. Still, His earthly human body needs to remain to be used on the judgment day so that no soul can argue that God does not know the sufferings of humans when every soul will see His tortured body standing firm and judging them.

“But I lay it down of Myself.” People misunderstood the purpose when the Lord allowed humans to crucify the Lord Jesus on the cross. For the Lord Jesus, in the end, there was only one way, dying on the cross or escaping, but when the beloved Son of God was on the cross, He laid down His human life. For the Father to do the work and complete it, the Son of God must give up His human life to the Father, and when He has taken the last breath on earth, it is with His own will to depart from this earth in order to fulfill the work He has received from the Father. When the verse says, “I lay it down,” that also tells all humans that He allowed them to do to Him according to their will, but it was not His Own will to die, and He didn't take His life by Himself, He gave it to the Father but was the humans' will to see Him perish on the cross. Because the Lord Jesus is one hundred percent human as well, when any human has been put to be crucified, they will all die, so the beloved Son of God would not change the way humans would die. God never dies, but God in human form can die, which is also to prove to all humans that God knows what humans go through; even the death itself, God Himself has tasted it as well. The Lord Jesus spent time alone when God in human form died; He had

gone to the death place where the Father can't go since His glory will kill all the dead, but the beloved Son of God in human form could go to the death place.

"I have authority to lay it down." To let go of His life in human form, it is in the Son of God's own will to do so. He did not choose to change the event that would happen; if He wanted to continue life as a human on earth, the humans would not be able to pierce the nails through His body; even in human form, His power was still there as well with Him. Also, if He freezes time and frees Himself, it will not be a resurrection to save the souls; the resurrection must happen, and it happened with the will of the beloved Son of God to take the torture on Himself from the hand of the humans He has created.

"I have authority to take it again." Now, the beloved Son of God is talking about the resurrection. The resurrection must happen to show humans that the way to be saved is only through the beloved Son of God. God that has tasted death knows full well the pain of death; the beloved Son of God in human form has tasted all humans' sufferings, from birth to death. He has tasted it all for all humans, the birth as a human, growing up from baby until manhood, has received all suffering as humans have it, and died in the hands of humans. The beloved Son of God has done all and all the feelings that He went through, the Father has gone through them as well; the Trinity of God has gone through the pain of death, through the death on the cross of the beloved Son of God in human form, and that is one of the reasons, the Father listens when the beloved Son of God asks forgiveness for any human that sins.

"This commandment I received from My Father." The beloved Son of God has received the commandment to be born as a human and die for humans as well. The Father Himself has a plan to save humans, not only to save them alone but also the Father has the will to forgive them through the love of the beloved Son of God; the Father will do all things for Him as well. The Father has given the commandment to find the way to save humans, and the beloved Son of God has obeyed the commandment and has come down to be a human and die for humans; the Father has commanded His Son Jesus to save the humans, that is the commandment of the Father.

To further understand the meaning of the cross of the Lord Jesus, we will also comment on [John 19:36-37](#).

36 *For these things came to pass, so that the Scripture might be fulfilled, Not one bone of Him will be broken.*

“For these things came to pass, so that the Scripture might be fulfilled.”

Therefore, when the Father has said something, all things must happen. The Father has already told all humans that we all belong to Him and that He will take us to Himself, but in order for us to be able to go to Him, the beloved Son of God must be born as a human and be crucified by humans, and the beloved Son of God must rise from the dead in the human body, in order for humans to be able to go to the Father through the beloved Son of God in human form, and all Scripture must be fulfilled as well, only through Him all can reach to the Father.

“Not one bone of Him will be broken.” This verse in John is linked to Exodus 12:46, Numbers 9:12, and Psalm 34:20. These are correct links because for the Passover Lamb of God, the bones shall not be broken, and the beloved Son of God is the Passover Lamb of God, for sacrifice for all humans; the death on the cross of the beloved Son of God it is a sacrifice to the Holy Father with the Holy Lamb, only through the Holy Lamb that sacrifice can reach the throne of the Father and the time of sacrifice has come to an end because the Holy Lamb of God has been sacrificed on the cross.

Exodus 12:46: In one house shall it be eaten; you shall not carry out any of the flesh outside of the house; neither shall you break a bone thereof.

Numbers 9:12: they shall leave none of it to the morning, nor break a bone thereof, according to all the statute of the Passover they shall keep it.

Psalm 34:20: He keeps all his bones, not one of them is broken.

One could ask what this command means about the Passover lamb not having the bones broken. This is an old law that the Father has given to His children, but the old law has linked to the new law that will fulfill the old law and bring the completion of the old law by the perfect sacrifice of the beloved Son of God; the beloved Son of God who is crucified on the cross, has become the holy lamb for the Father, and this holy lamb is the perfect sacrifice offered for the Father, this lamb is the beloved Son of God which has been crucified on the cross, and none of His bones shall be broken; the lamb offering for the

Passover, has a link to the beloved Son of God which has been crucified, and no bones of this lamb shall be broken as well.

37 *And again another Scripture says, They will look on Him whom they pierced.*

This verse also tells what will happen to the beloved Son of God when they have crucified Him on the cross; even though He has already given up the last breath of life as a human, the human still pierced Him. The last wound they have given to the beloved Son of God also has turned to be the mocking wound for His children; when they have looked upon the beloved Son of God on the cross, they all will remember as well, the last stroke on Him was to make sure that the beloved Son of God is truly dead.

“They will look on Him whom they pierced.” When anyone has looked at that piercing of the beloved Son of God, because of the heart that is doubting, they will always have one conclusion: that He is not who He claims to be because He has allowed Himself to be tortured by the outsiders; regardless of the purpose He has on earth, as the beloved Son of God He should not allow them to pierce His side, He did not show His power in stopping any harm for Himself, this wound has become the mocking issue that the outsiders have made when His people have shown that He is the Son of God; in the eyes of the outsiders if He truly is the Son of God the one that pierced Him should drop dead at His feet as well. Even nowadays, if you look at the cross and in your heart, you have thought that the story regarding the beloved Son of God has died on the cross is just a story, and do not believe the truth that the Holy Bible is the living Word of God that has been given to humans, that person has made that piercing become fresh again, and the suffering of the beloved Son of God, has never ended yet for giving His human life for all humans. Here, we need to make a difference between this comment and the comment in John 19:38. What we have said here is not that the wound becomes fresh, but that the painful feeling when He received the piercing reoccurs in His heart as that piercing has become fresh again, even though His flesh is different now, but the feeling as a human has occurred as He has been pierced over again. Also, in John 19:38 we comment, “He was the perfect sacrifice and the pain of the nails on the cross cannot happen again after His resurrection.”

“They” in this verse refers to those that were involved in piercing Him, not only the ones that pierced but the ones in agreeing that it was the right wound

to give to end the claim of a man that He as a man is a Son of God; the reader must look in both ways, in the eyes of believers and in the eyes of outsiders; their understanding about the cross is different as it goes in parallel, they have no point to join together. But the one that agrees that is the right wound that it also involved straight in the time that the beloved Son of God has been on the cross Himself, that piercing has covered the future mind of humans and the way of life nowadays has made them see and think that they don't need that piercing, but it is enough only that He has been crucified; the piercing is just to make sure that He truly died for the ruler of that time alone; but for people nowadays that piercing is for those in that time, the last wound does not include the sin nowadays anymore. However, because of the sins nowadays that have made that piercing happen, the sin of the past time leading to happen, but the sins of nowadays are also involved in making it happen; you can truly separate them out. So, the "they" in this verse refers to all humans, past and future, for those that believe or not, and all of us are responsible for these wounds, but some will look to the wounds for salvation and some for mocking.

Because of that piercing, in the future, humans will be saved as well because of the blood and the water that have flown from that wound; the past and the future have become tangled together. In the past, people have been saved because they have seen and heard the beloved Son of God's teaching, and they have given their hearts in trusting and believing that truly He is the beloved Son of God; people in the future that have looked upon the cross, without seeing the beloved Son of God on it, if in their hearts have sensed the thought that the beloved Son of God truly has been crucified on the cross and have given the complete trust to the cross of the beloved Son of God as the way to be saved, they will have a chance to join the beloved Son of God in His kingdom.

Also, in [John 19:34](#), we comment, "The wounds from the nails spiritually represent the sins until the time of His death, but the last piercing wound spiritually represents the sins of the future which will be washed away through the beloved Son of God's shed blood and water." This comment applies to the believers, but when the outsiders look at this wound, it becomes the opposite meaning; the outsiders believe they won because the heart of outsiders is full of wickedness and murder in their souls; when they saw the beloved Son of

God died on the cross, they believe it as a trophy for themselves against His children. Therefore, the outsiders and the believers have opposite hearts in looking at the death of the beloved Son of God; if in your heart you have faith, you will see the love and mercy of the Father through the death of the beloved Son of God on the cross.

This verse also links to Revelation 1:7 and Psalm 22:16.

Revelation 1:7: “Behold, He comes with the clouds; and every eye will see Him, and they that pierced Him; and all the tribes of the earth shall mourn over Him. Even so, Amen.” This verse in Revelation talks straight about the second return of the beloved Son of God; every eye that sees Him will also see the wounds of His body from all the torture He has received, and the last wound on His human body will still look fresh as it has just happened. Therefore, all human eyes that look upon the beloved Son of God and see His wounds will realize from the deepest of their soul that that wound is for them, and their sins have been upon the wound of the beloved Son of God's human body, just come to Him and admit your sins, and give thanks and glory to the beloved Son of God for receiving all these wounds for them as a payment to the Father.

Psalm 22:16: “For dogs have surrounded me, a company of evildoers have enclosed me; They pierced my hands and my feet.” “Dogs” here refers to the outsiders and those that consider themselves righteous by blaming the beloved Son of God that He has claimed Himself to be the Son of Man, and also to the people of God who have betrayed the God of their fathers and took side with the outside leaders and the power of humans and believe these have more power than the God of their forefathers.

Learning about the cross of the Lord Jesus, one might ask how to understand the existence of evil in the world and that a Holy God allowed evil to exist. When the Father has created all His angels, He also gives them a free choice: they can stay and be faithful to Him, or they can rebel against Him. We as humans have free choice as well. The Lord Jesus has free choice to do His will on earth, but He chose to do the Father's will always, which is why He is the obedient Son of God. The Bible has said that the beloved Son of God is the obedient Son, and that is why He could save humans (Hebrews 5:8). We all should take His example and obey God the Father by

humbly coming at the foot of the cross and make peace with God in the name of His beloved Son, Jesus Christ.

Below, we highlight all the Gospels' links that we chose for this theme, where you will find more comments and explanations, which we provide in the Bible Commentary Forever (BCF for short) work.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** Matthew 27:33-44 (The Lord Jesus is crucified between two robbers; the soldiers abuse the Lord Jesus, and the people mock deride Him).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** Mark 15:22-32 (The Lord Jesus is crucified between two robbers; the soldiers abuse the Lord Jesus, and the people mock and deride Him).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** Luke 23:26,32-33,35-39 (The Lord Jesus is led away to be crucified; they crucify Him between two criminals at the place called The Skull; the rulers scoff at Him, and one of the criminals rails on Him; the soldiers mock and abuse Him).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** John 19:21-23 (The Lord Jesus is crucified; the soldiers divide His clothes); John 19:25 (The Lord Jesus is on the cross; the disciples and women stand by His cross).

3. Death and Burial

The Bible tells us that the Lord Jesus was abused until His last breath on the cross. The Lord Jesus obeyed the Father's commandment until the end and fulfilled the Scripture in all things. The death of the Lord Jesus on the cross and His burial are fundamental to understanding God's salvation plan and having a solid doctrinal faith in the deity and bodily resurrection of the Son of God, the Lord Jesus. Therefore, in this section, we will study the Gospel passage found in John 19:28-34, where we can follow the torture that the Lord Jesus endured on the cross until He yielded up His Spirit and how He fulfilled the Scripture as the Son of God.

28 After this, Jesus knowing that all things now have been finished, so that the Scripture might be fulfilled, says, I thirst.

“After this, Jesus knowing that all things now have been finished.” The time for His departure has come, and the beloved Son of God has already seen the future regarding Himself. After He has given the duty to His disciple regarding His earthly mother, the beloved Son of God also knows that His duty towards

His earthly family has also been fulfilled. When His disciple has agreed to take care of His earthly mother, the beloved Son of God also comes to the point that He Himself will also depart from the earth. His time to do the Father's work as a human on earth has ended. He has fulfilled all the duties that He has received from the Father according to save all the chosen ones and also has taught the disciples how to worship the Father and to whom they can turn for help. When the beloved Son of God returns to the Father, the Holy Spirit will be the true Teacher for all the disciples' questions; if they need help, they all know that the Holy Spirit will be with them and help them.

"So that the Scripture might be fulfilled, says, I thirst." When the beloved Son of God said, "I thirst," in His heart, He knew they would give Him the sour wine (vinegar) to drink. The sour wine from the grapefruit will be the last earthly thing that the beloved Son of God will take in His body because now He will return to heaven in His human body. The last thing His human body could take and have was the fruit of grape wine juice, which the beloved Son of God has done to fulfill the last duty of His human form by taking the sour wine in His human body with Him. This sour wine was made from grape juice, but it is not pure grape juice as it should be because it was also mixed with gall and spices, which changed the taste of the grape to be not only sour but bitter as well. So this was part of the torture that the beloved Son of God would take for the last thing as human.

29 There was set a vessel full of sour wine; therefore, having filled a sponge with sour wine, having put it on a stock of hyssop, they brought it to the mouth.

Psalm 69:21 says, "They gave me also gall for my food; And in my thirst, they gave me vinegar to drink." Give attention to the word gall; it is not food for humans or any human to eat; this verse tells the suffering of death the person will receive, alive but eat this food, the feeling of suffering will make the person wish they had never been born, it is the high point of suffering to eat this food. The vessel full of this sour wine had a mixture of this gall in it, which is why it was set close to the place to crucify the prisoners (See Comments Matthew 27:48-49, Mark 15:36).

Luke 23:36 says, "And the soldiers also mocked Him, coming near, offering Him sour wine." The offering of this sour wine happened more times while Jesus was on the cross, which is part of the torture. When they crucified the

beloved Son of God, their purpose was to torture Him as much as possible, and this drink was one of the torturing ways; they had offered to seep this drink more often, and the thirst that occurs after drinking this drink will be stronger than normal; the throat would be dry and hurtful, the part of gull and spices that was mixed into it will create the suffering time for those that drink, and they want this to happen with the beloved Son of God as well.

“There was set a vessel full of sour wine.” This sour wine is a grape juice mixture; the drink of this mixture will be for torture but not for helping with the thirsty feeling. No one will drink this mixture, but only the prisoners will take it; this had a name to call “the suffering juice” and was set up when they crucified any prisoner they had.

“Therefore, having filled a sponge with sour wine, having put it on a stock of hyssop, they brought it to the mouth.” This act is one of many times that they offered this drink to the prisoners that were crucified; when bleeding, the thirst would come, and this juice would make the prisoners have no peace to take a rest; the torturing will continue to do, even before the prisoner would die, and the beloved Son of God has received the human way of torture; other humans cannot understand, because this juice was given only to those that were sentenced to death, the rest of humans which were not punished to death would not taste this juice.

30 *When Jesus therefore had received the sour wine, He said, It is finished. And having bowed the head, He yielded up the Spirit.*

“When Jesus therefore had received the sour wine, He said, It is finished.” When the beloved Son of God received the last torture from human hands, this also showed that He had completed the work for the Father; He had come on earth to save humans, but in return, He has received from humans that He came to save the last torture of His human breath on earth. The beloved Son of God has come down to save humans, and through His death on the cross, it is the only true saving way for all humans in every generation. The only way the Father will listen to humans is through the voice of the beloved Son begging for mercy for the soul that has come to accept that the beloved Son of God has been sacrificed for their own sins; the beloved Son of God has fulfilled the

work on earth for keep those that believe in Him from the eternal punishment from the Father.

“And having bowed the head, He yielded up the Spirit.” When the beloved Son of God has bowed His head to accept the death in the human body and has yielded up His Spirit back to the Father, right away at that moment the Father has received the Spirit of Christ into His bosom, the Father also has felt the pain that the beloved Son has endured while on the cross; when the beloved Son of God has yielded up His Spirit to the Father, in that moment the Father’s heart also was broken, the beloved Son of God in human form has died in humans’ hands that He has come to save, it is the most sad thing for heaven.

During the Lord Jesus’ life on earth, He was one hundred percent human; the body, the soul, and the spirit of the Lord Jesus cannot be separated; they are one as a unity because He is human. Now, the Lord Jesus is in heaven in His bodily form, but now, with the power of the Father, the beloved Son’s Spirit can separate and come on earth for work; the Spirit of Christ is on earth according to the Father’s will Himself as well. In the same way, as the Holy Spirit, which is the Spirit of the Father, works on earth, the beloved Son of God’s Spirit works on earth as well, and this shows the true God and human features that the beloved Son of God has. (See also [Comments Luke 23:46](#), [Matthew 27:50](#), [Mark 15:37](#).)

31 The Jews therefore, because it was the day before the Sabbath, so that the bodies would not remain on the cross on the Sabbath (for that day before the Sabbath was ending), asked Pilate that their legs might be broken, and they might be taken away.

This verse tells all readers about the old law the Father gave to His people. But, still, they also have to think as well that when someone has been punished in this way (by hanging on a tree), that person must sin against God, and then that rule must be fulfilled; as the next verse tells, they broke the legs of the prisoners to make sure that in case of not completely dead yet, their body might not be able to get up, for the law of the Father must be fulfilled, the person must be completely dead before the big day of the worship festival; they broke the leg bones to induce further pain, and so that their body would not get up; if it is as in human term would say shocking them; when you break the legs it will create that shock and make the body respond, but if the body

has completely died already will not react to that shock, and that is the reason they have asked to break the legs of prisoners.

Deuteronomy 21:22-23 says, "And if a man has committed a sin worthy of death, and he be put to death, and you hang him on a tree; his body shall not remain all night on the tree, but you shall surely bury him the same day; for he that is hanged is accursed of God; that you defile not your land which Jehovah Thy God gives you for an inheritance."

The majority do understand that this verse relates to this verse, but this verse, in reality, does not apply to the Lord Jesus because the beloved Son of God did not commit the sin worthy of death, which is why this verse does not apply to Him. But His people have applied this old law by breaking the legs of the prisoners. Still, when they came to the beloved Son of God, His face had already shown that He had lost all the blood from the body and had no human life left in Him, so the procedure to deal with the body of the beloved Son of God will be different than others. The internal blood will still be there, but the flowing blood of the body has already flown out.

Galatian 3:13 says, "Christ redeemed us from the curse of the law, having become a curse for us; for it is written, Cursed is every one that is hanged on a tree."

The beloved Son of God has taken all the punishment for humans, and the curse of the Father's law has fallen upon Him as well; for that reason, the beloved Son of God has become the only way for humans to be set free from the punishment of the Father when the beloved Son of God has redeemed that person from the punishment because the beloved Son of God has received the punishment of that curse upon Himself already.

32 The soldiers therefore came, and broke indeed the legs of the first, and of the other who was crucified with Him,

33 and having come to Jesus, when they saw Him having been dead already, they did not break His legs:

When they looked upon the face of the beloved Son of God, His face did not show signs of pain or any reaction of hurt. The face of the beloved Son of God was as of a man falling asleep, but the soldiers also gave attention to the color of the skin, and they saw His face without blood, and also on the ground, they

saw the blood of the beloved Son of God all over around the cross. Therefore, they were confident that the beloved Son of God truly died already; the prisoners on the cross, if not dead, their face would always show no peace but pain. But the beloved Son of God's face had not shown the pain of suffering, so the conclusion has been made that He has died already, and they did not need to break His legs.

34 but one of the soldiers with a spear pierced His side, and immediately came out blood and water.

“But one of the soldiers with a spear pierced His side.” Give attention to what the verse tells; the beloved Son of God, even though they have seen He was already dead, they still pierced Him with the weapon. The heavy sins of the world have come upon the beloved Son of God to carry them with Him; even after He has already given the last breath of life, they still wanted to make sure that He will not be able to survive by any chance if they take Him down from the cross, the shock of the body will not occur on Him. The injury of His body in this time also has told the whole world that by His own crucified body, all the sins of the world will also enter into the last wound humans gave Him. This action of this soldier has occurred to make sure that all spiritual meaning of the wounds that the beloved Son of God has received will pay for all the sins that will occur after His death as well. The wounds from the nails spiritually represent the sins until the time of His death, but the last piercing wound spiritually represents the sins of the future, which will be washed away through the beloved Son of God's shed blood and water. The suffering of the Lord Jesus on the cross paid for all the sins of the world, past, present, and future. However, only the believers coming after the Lord Jesus' death on the cross will be baptized in His shed blood and water from His wounds.

“And immediately came out blood and water.” The pouring of blood and water is the confirmation of the blood to wash the sins away and that the water from the beloved Son of God's body also has covered everyone that comes to take water baptism in the name of the Trinity of God. Still, this baptism must be done in the name of the Father, of the Son Jesus Christ, and of the Holy Spirit; in order to be a complete water baptism, the baptism must also say out loud specifically the Trinity of God. The last blood from inside the beloved Son of God, when has poured out to the earth, has received the sins of the earth for all that have accepted His blood for cleansing, deep from the soul until outside,

and the water from inside the beloved Son of God it will be in all the water baptism of the believers to cleanse the outside as well. The blood of the Lord Jesus will clean within, and the water will clean the outside, so let all readers remember as well that the beloved Son of God received this death from the human hands for our souls so that we can be in front of the Father to receive the Father's mercy. To cleanse within means cleansing of the soul, and to cleanse outside means cleansing of the human flesh.

See also [Comments Mark 16:12-13](#) and [Comments Matthew 26:27-28](#).

After the Lord Jesus died on the cross, He was buried in a new tomb, which was sealed with a large rock and guarded with a guard ([Matthew 27:66](#)). The Gospel of [John 19:38-42](#) presents the details related to the burial of the Lord Jesus' body.

38 Then after these things, Joseph of Arimathea, being a disciple of Jesus, however, hiding for fear of the Jews, asked Pilate that he might take away the body of Jesus; and Pilate gave permission. Therefore, he came and took away His body.

"Therefore, he came and took away His body." Now, we all can notice someone else with a heart of concern regarding leaving the body of the beloved Son of God on the cross for people to see the rotten body of the beloved Son of God because he did not know that the Lord would rise up from the dead. By taking the beloved Son's body away from the cross, Joseph himself has done a good job for all humans because when he put the Lord in the tomb, nobody needed to see what could happen; the Holy Bible also does not give details of how His body has risen up and what had truly happened with the wounds. When the human body has risen up with those wounds, it would need the work of the Father regarding rising up the beloved Son of God and taking Him back to heaven where He belongs (See [Comments Matthew 28:2-7](#)).

The Lord Jesus predicted that He would rise from the dead after three days ([Matthew 12:40](#), [John 2:19-21](#)). The body of the Lord Jesus had to be taken away from the cross and be placed in a tomb because the Lord Jesus must rise in the human body first; if He were to rise from the dead in the human body while nailed to the cross, He would feel pain again and suffer the second time on the cross again, and that cannot happen again, since He already made the full payment for the sins of the world on the cross and suffered and died. He was the perfect sacrifice, and the pain of the nails on the cross cannot happen

again after His resurrection. For this, think as well how the human body can come down from the cross; Jesus' body must remain as the human body; if the beloved Son of God is still on the cross to rise up from the dead, His human body will be transformed, and that cannot happen; because the beloved Son of God must rise up in the human body first and cannot be in the heavenly body to rise up. The heavenly body, when transformed, will create many things that happen. However, if that body were to be nailed on the cross, it would create limitations for that human body even if that body itself is the body of the beloved Son of God in human form because He is in human form, the way to rise up from the dead still has to be in the body that is completely attached, all parts one to another; if the beloved Son of God was still on the cross when He would rise up from the dead His human body will be damaged further and create further pain and that it cannot be as well. To take down the human body of the Lord Jesus from the cross without the proper way could create damage, and tearing the Lord Jesus' body was not an option; the body of the beloved Son of God cannot have more wounds than how He received until this point, there were enough wounds for the body already, His suffering was completed.

There is no such thing as the Father being unable to touch the cross and take His Son out of the cross, but the beloved Son in heavenly form cannot have the nails pierced through; He must be off the cross before rising up. When Joseph took down the body of the beloved Son of God, many people at that time also saw that He was truly a human and died. So also, when Joseph took the body to bury Him, every heart came to the same point that the beloved Son of God was truly dead now on earth; however, when He rose up and came out from the cave after being buried, every heart had a different impact on it.

The Lord Jesus' body must remain as a human body on the cross in order to complete the suffering and carry the sins of the world. People, not just then but now as well, if the beloved Son of God has risen on the cross, everyone will think there was no pain for Him to be crucified on the cross. Still, the truth is that when the nails pierced through His skin, the pain that He endured was more than the criminals beside Him had endured; the criminals carried their own actions, but the beloved Son of God carried the sins of the world on those

wounds. Hence, the torture feeling for Him was greater than a normal human would have.

In conclusion, the Lord Jesus must be taken away from the cross in the human body first, and then that body would rise and be covered by His heavenly body because His human body must be taken to heaven as a human body (See [Comments Mark 16:12-13](#)). Being in the tomb, the Lord Jesus rose in the palm of the Father (See [Comments Matthew 28:2-7](#)). When the Father came, He came in a different dimension; with the Father, nothing can block His hand.

39 And also came Nicodemus, who at first came to Him by night, bringing a mixture of myrrh and aloes, about a hundred litras.

Nicodemus was not the one to be put up front in doing the burial, he came as a helper only.

“Bringing a mixture of myrrh and aloes, about a hundred litras.” He will use this mixture only for wrapping the body outside; before wrapping the body with a linen cloth, the spices will be put against the body, but nothing has been put inside the body. This is a traditional mixture they have used for burial. However, Mary did the true anointing of the Lord Jesus’ body for burial ([John 12:2-3](#)). The beloved Son of God also said that what Mary did was considered preparing His body for burial. But we must see the difference. She did put on Him perfume but not burial spices; this was a perfume of love and respect that the beloved Son of God has received in order to prepare His body for burial, but at Mary’s time, the beloved Son of God was still alive on earth, so this perfume has become the perfume of love and respect towards the beloved Son of God.

40 Then, they took the body of Jesus, and bound it in linen cloths with the spices, as the custom of the Jews is to prepare for burial.

When they took the body of the beloved Son of God down from the cross, they also had things of the way how they should prepare His body; they must wrap around the body with spices, and after that, use linen cloths to hold the spices in place; this was the custom of the people in that time regarding the burial; otherwise, the body will have the smell of body occur. However, these spices will help the odor to be not that strong, but they did not touch the body of the beloved Son of God in another way; His body did not receive any cuts to open

it as normally would be done for a complete procedure; by the custom, they would cut open a body and stuff the spices inside, but with the beloved Son of God, they had not enough time to do that, so they only wrapped around the body as the custom was without stuffing anything inside (See [Comments John 12:2](#)).

Furthermore, in [Matthew 27:59](#), the verse says, “And Joseph took the body, and wrapped it in a clean linen cloth.” Therefore, as the Bible tells us, Joseph just wrapped the body of the Lord Jesus in a cloth, and he did not do any special burial or ceremony. At that time, the body had to be prepared for burial, and it was a long and costly preparation. However, he had no time to do it, so he just wrapped the Lord Jesus’ body and had to place the body in the tomb before the Preparation Day ended (before the Sabbath started). The first day of the Passover feast was Preparation Day; the Jews used this day to prepare a place to host the Passover. When the Passover is finished, the rest is the preparation for cleaning; what belongs to the Passover cannot be further used, and everything must be cleaned. Many traditions apply to this, and if you are not a Jew, you will never understand the traditions. All the things used for the Passover must be put away separately because, according to Jewish tradition, all the things belonging to Passover are not to be used in daily life. (Note that there is a difference between the Passover itself, eaten on Thursday at twilight, and the Passover feast held on the Sabbath).

41 Now in the place where He was crucified there was a garden; and in the garden a new tomb in which was no one yet laid.

This verse clearly tells that in this garden, there was a new tomb that no one had laid there yet because this is truly Joseph’s tomb itself, which he prepared for himself for burial. So, Joseph gave up this new tomb so that the beloved Son of God’s body could rise out of that tomb.

As the verse tells, in the place where the beloved Son of God was crucified, there was a garden, and in this garden, there was a new tomb that the owner had made and left it there without using. So, we can use the term as this is an abandoned new tomb left there without use, but the beloved Son of God has been crucified close by, so they laid His body in this new tomb. However, because another Gospel tells us that this is Joseph’s tomb, which he had prepared, but he was still alive, the tomb has not been used. The beloved Son

of God has been crucified close by, as the Bible has told, so Joseph has given up his new tomb for the Lord, and that is the place where the beloved Son of God's body has been buried.

42 In that place therefore, on account of the day before the Sabbath of the Jews, because the tomb was near, they laid Jesus.

The beloved Son of God, the Holy Lamb of the Lord, has been crucified as an offering to the Father; the Sabbath has come, and the Holy Lamb of God has been crucified as an offering to glorify the Father in heaven, the tomb is close by, and the Holy Lamb of God has been laid to rest in that tomb.

Then, in Matthew 28:1, Mark 16:1-2, and Luke 24:1, we are told that after the Sabbath, some women came to the tomb of the Lord Jesus to anoint His body, following the Jewish tradition. However, the Lord Jesus rose early in the morning before they arrived at the tomb. Moreover, the Father knows all things, and the body of the beloved Son of God was already anointed at Bethany for burial by Mary, the sister of Lazarus (John 12:2). This event is important in itself as the body of the Lord Jesus could not be cut for any type of embalment. Furthermore, the Lord Jesus' body could not be anointed during the Passover festival; the anointing cannot be done during the Passover time. During that time, to prepare the body, they must cut open the body to remove the internals. However, those things cannot be done for the beloved Son of God's body because He will have risen in that body. Therefore, the marks on His body have only the nails pierced and the chest pierced by the soldier's spear; His body has not been opened up for treatment. By tradition, at that time, they stuffed the body with spices, but for the beloved Son of God, His body must be clean, so no one did any tradition (cutting) on His body; they only wrapped it in a linen cloth (Matthew 27:58-60) with spices on the body but not inside the body (John 19:38-42).

Cutting the body for embalment requires more extended time, but the Lord's body was not prepared that way. The spices were put only outside the body; they did not put spices inside the body of the Lord. Therefore, the Lord's body has not been touched that way. The faithful one (Joseph of Arimathea) only wrapped His body in cloth and did not have much time to prepare internally.

Mary, the blessed woman, prepared the beloved Son of God's body by anointing Him with costly perfume. That is the thing the beloved Son of God has the pleasure of receiving from a human's hand, and Mary was the tool the Father used in anointing

the beloved Son of God. Moreover, the anointing she has done is considered a burial preparation for the beloved Son of God ([John 12:7](#)). For the time when the beloved Son of God departs from the earth, the Father has appointed already what it can be done and what not upon the heart of the person that the Father will work with, and the beloved Son of God followed; no preparation has been done. Mary had a loving heart toward the beloved Son of God, and the Father used her to anoint the beloved Son of God's body before His burial. There was no special reason to make the anointing before or later; it is just upon the heart of people, the right time, and the right person with whom the Father chooses to work.

We encourage everyone reading this blog to meditate day and night on the Word of God with the help of the Holy Spirit, stay firm in their faith in the Lord Jesus Christ, and not let the dark put any stain on the Lord Jesus's burial and bodily resurrection.

Below, we highlight all the Gospels' links that relate to this theme, where you will find more comments and explanations, which we provide in the Bible Commentary Forever (BCF for short) work.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** [Matthew 27:57-66](#) (Joseph of Arimathea buries the Lord Jesus in his own new tomb and rolls a great stone at the entrance; the Jews make the tomb secure by sealing the stone and putting a guard of soldiers there); [Matthew 28:11-15](#) (The lie of the betrayers about the body of the Lord Jesus).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** [Mark 15:42-47](#) (Joseph of Arimathea buries the Lord Jesus in his own new tomb and rolls a great stone at the entrance; some women beheld where He was laid).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** [Luke 23:50-56](#) (Joseph of Arimathea buries the Lord Jesus in his own new tomb; some women see the tomb and how His body was laid and go and prepare spices and ointments for Him).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** [John 19:38-42](#) (Joseph of Arimathea and Nicodemus bind the body of the Lord Jesus in linen cloth and spices and place Him in a new tomb).

Conclusions

In this blog, we present the main topic of “teachings about the cross of the Lord Jesus: persecution, betrayal, trial, suffering, crucifixion, death, and burial,” which we divided into three themes. Each theme presents an essential aspect of the main topic.

The events covering this topic are spread throughout the four Gospels and seem difficult for the human mind to understand, as well as to have a clear picture of all that happened at the trial and the cross of the Lord Jesus. However, we, as followers of the Lord Jesus, are responsible for mediating the entire Bible and believe that the Bible, in its original writing, is dictated by the Holy Spirit word by word, and there are no errors in the Bible. We must look to the Bible from the position that the Bible is the true Holy Word of God, and we should not try to find mistakes in the Bible but rather try to understand the Bible and try to make everything fit spiritually by praying to the Lord for understanding. Moreover, passages that seem difficult to understand or seem to have contradictions we must treat with humble hearts and pray for deeper understanding; we must know that the Lord wants us to meditate on His Word and ask His mercy to reveal to us the meaning; but we always need to go to Him in faith and with a humble heart, not with a critical judging heart.

The Bible is from the Father; what the Father has seen has not happened yet; when the Father gives the words to write down in the Bible, it will link from all directions, sometimes the things in the future will be put first, and when talking about the present will refer to both the past and the future. Still, for humans to understand, everyone must read the Bible, meditate, and ask for understanding. The Father will give the Holy Spirit to help and guide the person's heart and receive understanding when that person mediates. Therefore, the Bible cannot be understood by scholarly study and research but by meditation and the Holy Spirit's guidance. For God, there is no time; all things happened already before His eyes, so the order of the events doesn't matter; they all happened already. That is why when the Father gives the Bible to the writers, many events are not placed in their timely order as fitting for the human mind but in the order of His will; the Bible has told us that He does what He pleases.

In addition to presenting general comments related to the persecution, betrayal, trial, suffering, crucifixion, death, and burial of the Lord Jesus, we also provide, based on our understanding, an orderly account of the events related to the trial of the Lord Jesus and the crucifixion of the Lord Jesus by placing them in a human-time manner, so it is easier for the human mind to relate what happened with the Lord Jesus from the moment of His capture until His body was put in the tomb.

We encourage everyone to stay firm on the deity of the Lord Jesus and uphold His death in the human body and His bodily resurrection as presented by the Holy Word of God. The Lord Jesus is the Son of God and the Son of Man, and God of the

Trinity, and He came to earth to fulfill the Father's will for humans, and He will return on the clouds with great power and glory (Matthew 24:30). Our next blog continues with the events surrounding the Lord Jesus' resurrection and general events related to the Lord Jesus' second coming to the earth.

Meditation Tasks:

1. Meditate on the cross of the Lord Jesus and its significance to our salvation.

Teachings about the Bodily Resurrection of the Lord Jesus, End Time, and the Second Coming of the Lord Jesus

Introduction

Continuation from “[The Teachings of the Lord Jesus](#).”

The Lord Jesus, talking to the Jews at the house of Zacchaeus ([Luke 19:10](#)), tells them that “the Son of Man came to seek and to save the lost.” The Lord Jesus, the obedient Son of God, who exists with God the Father and God the Holy Spirit from eternity past, came to be born in the flesh ([John 1:14](#)) and brought salvation to humankind by His work on the cross ([John 3:16](#)). He won the victory over the death on the cross of Calvary when, after His death and burial and ministry to the dark, He rose on the third day, ascended to God the Father, and is seated at the right hand of the Father ([Mark 16:19](#), [Acts 2:34](#)).

The cornerstone of our faith is the risen Lord Jesus ([Acts 4:11](#), Psalm 118:22). Therefore, the bodily resurrection of our Lord Jesus is essential to the true Christian doctrine (1 Corinthians 15:19). The Gospels are particular about the bodily resurrection of the Lord Jesus and present us with many details which emphasize on the bodily resurrection of the Lord Jesus. First of all, the Lord Jesus told His disciples on many occasions that He would rise again after three days ([Matthew 16:21](#), [Matthew 17:22-23](#), [Mark 8:31](#), [Mark 9:31](#), [Luke 9:22](#)); even the Jews heard and were afraid that this prophecy would be true and wanted to make sure that His tomb would be appropriately sealed ([Matthew 27:62-66](#)), not knowing the power of the Lord God Almighty that no man can stop the plan of God. But, as the Lord Jesus told them, He rose on the third day in the palm of the Father ([Matthew 28:2-7](#), [Mark 16:5-7](#), [Luke 24:6-7](#)), as no man can stop His palm; the Lord Jesus rose through the clothes that were wrapped around His body and through the rock of the tomb and the Father clothed Him in marvelous heavenly clothing (See [Comments John 20:7](#)). So, Joseph of Arimathea took the body of the Lord Jesus down from the cross and, with the help of Nicodemus, anointed it with spices, wrapped Him with linen cloths, laid

Him in his own new tomb in a garden close to the cross, rolled a large stone at the entrance, then the Jews asked Pilate to seal the tomb and place a guard, which they did (Matthew 27:58-60, Mark 15:42-46, John 19:38-42). These things all happened on a Friday before the Sabbath day (Mark 15:42, John 19:31). Upon His death on the cross, the Lord Jesus Himself descended into the dark and went there to call His own to Himself and lead them into Abraham's bosom, where He Himself showed so all those old saints who died before the work on the cross longed to see Him would see Him (See Comments Matthew 16:4). Therefore, at the cross the Lord Jesus ministered to all the souls from the first soul on earth, Adam, to the last soul to be born on this earth until His return. So, salvation for all humans is found only by faith in the Son of God, the Lord Jesus, by repentance of sins through His work on the cross, baptism in water, and faith in the bodily resurrection of the Lord Jesus.

Then, the Sunday morning before dawn, on the third day after His death on the cross, by the power of God Almighty, that tomb, which was made secure by human hands, was emptied; the Lord Jesus rose in the body, and that risen earthly body joined His heavenly body to be forever the Son of God and the Son of Man (John 21:1-18). God the Father took His beloved Son's body into His palm and made the dead body of His beloved Son alive forevermore since the Lord Jesus is God of the Trinity, He is One with the Father, and God cannot die; the Lord Jesus is the living God who gives eternal life to those that believe in Him; He is the King of kings and the Lord of lords and His kingdom is forevermore. The Father Himself exalted His Son, the Lord Jesus, above all powers and authorities and gave Him a kingdom on the new earth where His kingdom, the kingdom of the faithful, will be, which will last forevermore where the beloved Son of God, the Lord Jesus Christ is King and Lord forevermore. The Lord Jesus is the only one who will have the body of this earth with Him in this new kingdom; all the others will have their resurrected heavenly bodies as given to them by the Lord.

The Lord Jesus, after His resurrection in the body, appeared to His disciples on many occasions and made sure that they believed that He rose in that body that was put on the cross; specifically, He showed them His pierced hands and side and ate with them (Luke 24:36-43). However, some still doubted (Matthew 28:17), but the Lord Jesus says to them that blessed are those who have not seen and believe in His bodily resurrection (John 20:24-29). Therefore, we all must pray and believe deeply inside our hearts that the Lord Jesus rose in the body and ascended to the Father, taking with Him His earthly body who joined the heavenly body, and now He is seated as the Son of God and the Son of Man at the right hand of the Father (Luke 24:50-53).

While on earth, the Lord Jesus tells all not to let our hearts be troubled but to believe that He is coming back as He has promised in John 14:3: “I am coming again, and will receive you to Myself; that where I am, you may be also.” This promise is from the beloved Son of God Himself; He is going back to heaven to prepare the place, and when all is ready, He will return the second time to earth; in that time, the whole earth will see Him return in great glory on clouds of heaven (Revelation 1:7). As followers of the Lord Jesus, we must always be ready for His return because no one knows the day and the hour, only the Father (Matthew 24:36). Therefore, we must be diligent as faithful servants and do the work on earth as He has appointed us to do.

The Lord Jesus understood the earthly expectations of His people while He was with them on earth, and before His triumphal entry into Jerusalem, He spoke to them regarding His return and their duty as servants of the Lord by giving them the parable of the minas. In this section, we will comment on some of the significant verses in the parable of the minas given in Luke 19:11-27.

11 And as they heard these things, He proceeded and spoke a parable, because He was near to Jerusalem, and because they supposed that the kingdom of God was immediately to appear.

Many people have followed and listened to the beloved Son of God, and they all have seen miracle works, making them all believe that He is the prophet of the Lord who will come and announce the heaven time. That is why all have believed that the kingdom of God would suddenly appear in front of Him, and they all would be witnesses of it. The prophet, in this place, they considered as being the messenger of the Lord God Most High, but they did not believe and thought that He was the beloved Son of God; besides, they could not understand the Trinity of God; they were all just looking for the kingdom of God to appear on earth.

12 He said therefore, A certain nobleman went into a far country, to receive for himself a kingdom, and to return.

“A certain nobleman” refers to the beloved Son of God Himself.

“Went into a far country.” The beloved Son of God has come down from heaven and came to the earth as a different country far from His own home in

heaven. This portion of the verse here really means that the Lord Jesus went from earth back to His far country in heaven.

“To receive for himself a kingdom.” When the beloved Son of God is resurrected, the Father Himself will give Him a new earth which will have only people that have faith and believe in the beloved Son of God because there will be the kingdom of the beloved Son of God Himself where everything and everyone belongs to Him and Him alone.

“And to return.” In this portion itself, when the Lord Jesus Himself has resurrected to receive all those that belong to Him to Himself, that is the time of His return, and then He will depart to His kingdom. At the resurrection (this is still resurrection time), the Lord Jesus receives those who belong to Him, but when He departs to His kingdom, He also will take all those who belong to Him with Him for eternity. The new earth is waiting for Him, but He Himself is seated at the right hand of the Father, together but also in different dimensions. The Lord Jesus has His earthly resurrected body with Him, and only He has a human body; no one else there on the new earth has an earthly body. As the Bible has told also, at this time, when He takes all those that belong to Him and go with Him, everybody will see Him.

13 And he called ten servants of his, and gave them ten minas, and said to them, Do business until I come back.

“And he called ten servants of his.” Most people would believe this means calling the apostles, but He has called ten believers, deep in their hearts, to do the work in preparing; nothing of this has been recorded in the Holy Book, but we still can find support as well. Some have made doctrines of this, ten servants as ten legions, but the Lord called true believers, and He has given them specific duties. As His apostles would go out to work, they would meet them since everything had been planned ahead before the work of spreading the Gospel began. “Ten” is not a number specifically meaning ten believers; this “ten” means ten directions the Lord sent out and refers to the believers in these directions that the Lord calls to help the apostles.

“And gave them ten minas.” Minas here is not money, but the knowledge and ability in connecting with the Spirit of Christ in giving directions, but not the Holy Spirit. When they meet the apostles, the Spirit of Christ will stir their hearts to go in the right directions and find the apostles. As the Bible has

mentioned in places, the apostles contact people who meet them; those are the ones that are mentioned here.

The Holy Spirit is the Spirit of the Father Himself, which will convict right and wrong in the soul of humans, but most humans will reject this Spirit of God because they all will find reasons to do things in their way; the world has corrupted their mind, and the Holy Spirit cannot do the work within them when the human soul rejects His warning. The Spirit of Christ is a gentle Spirit; His role is to link the heart with the mind in order to have peace and do according to His will, but He will also never force anyone to follow; it is the responsibility of the person to listen what the heart is telling them, and not let the ear hearing what people speak and convince what people talk; right or wrong has already been told to the person, but the listening ear will make confusion. The right or wrong has been told to the heart of the person by the Holy Spirit, and the Spirit of Christ, in His gentle way, will come to help the person find peace and do according to the will of the Holy Spirit.

“Do business until I come back”. The person who has received the Spirit of Christ will have a duty in their area to make people think what they have (the way they behave) to be different from others, and when the time of work with apostles comes, the people around will notice why this person does differently for the apostles.

14 But his citizens hated him, and sent a delegation after him, saying, We are not willing that this man reigns over us.

“But his citizens hated him.” When the beloved Son of God came on earth, “his citizens” here were the Jews themselves; they were His people, but none of them wanted to be under Him. They all disliked Him and thought that He was not a good King for them; that is why the verse says that they “hated him.”

“And sent a delegation after him.” As the Bible has told, the chief priests have gone to the outsiders and made false reports regarding Him; they kept following Him wherever He went to gather information to be able to report to

the outsiders what the beloved Son of God was doing and created doubt to all the people, the Bible has also talked clearly about this.

“We are not willing that this man reigns over us.” This saying is what they told the outsiders, the Romans. Everyone can clearly see that His own people do not want Him to reign over them; they would rather have an outsider rule over them; in this way, we can all say that His citizens have betrayed Him to the outsiders.

15 And it came to pass, when he was come back again, having taken the kingdom, that he commanded these servants, to whom he had given the money, to be called to him, that he might know what they had gained by trading.

“He was come back again” refers to the Spirit of Christ coming back on earth to do the work through His servants.

“And it came to pass, when he was come back again, having taken the kingdom.” When the beloved Son of God is resurrected, He has received the kingdom from the Father, and now He will reign over all His kingdom according to the plan of the Father. The Lord Jesus is with the Father from the beginning; the Lord Jesus was born on earth, He was crucified, He rose again (resurrected), He went back to heaven and is seated at the right hand of the Father; He will return again to receive His elect ones, then He will take them on the new earth where He will reign for eternity.

“That he commanded these servants ...” All His servants that received the knowledge and duty at this time, He will talk to them according to the gift He has given them and what they have done with it. Did they talk with people whom He guided them to meet and make them understand that He loves them all, to repent and come back to Him? That is all He wants them to know, but His servants must do their duty in order for all these people to understand and come back to the Lord their God. The Spirit of Christ always works with His servants; between the Spirit of Christ and His servants there is a bond; they will hear Him, and do His will, but the Holy Spirit Himself will look over all

those servants and make sure that they all listen to the Spirit of Christ and make the work complete.

“He commanded these servants, ..., to be called to him.” This happened after the Lord Jesus’ resurrection, and it is still continuing now until the Lord Jesus’ second coming on earth.

Reading further the parable of the minas, we learn that the Lord Jesus rewards the faithful servants when He returns, and also He will judge the unfaithful servants. Therefore, let us be faithful servants until the end of our lives on this earth and go out and testify about the glorious resurrection of the Lord Jesus and His coming return in glory to judge the world (Revelation 1:7). Testifying our Lord and Savior, the Lord Jesus, to the world should be our deep love for Him which is also the love of the Father who sent His beloved Son into the world to save the world.

While on earth, the Lord Jesus chose twelve apostles to testify to His miracle work on earth and to His bodily resurrection ([Acts 1:22](#)). However, not only the apostles had the duty to testify to the work of the Lord Jesus, His resurrection and His second coming, but all believers in the Lord Jesus have this blessed mission as long as they live in the world ([John 20:29](#), [Matthew 28:19-29](#), [Mark 16:16](#)).

To understand all the Gospels’ teachings about the resurrection of the Lord Jesus, the end time, and the second coming of the Lord Jesus, we organize all the Gospels’ teachings that fall into this category into two themes, as given below.

1. The bodily resurrection of the Lord Jesus.
2. End time, and the second coming of the Lord Jesus.

The Presentation of the Teaching Themes

This section describes all the teaching themes by highlighting their essential features. Furthermore, we present a complete list with links to Bible passages in the Gospels that relate to each theme, with a short description of each passage. These links point to our Bible Commentary Forever work, where you will find more helpful comments to understand better the Word of God.

1. The Bodily Resurrection of the Lord Jesus

The events of the miraculous resurrection of the beloved Son of God, the Lord Jesus Christ, are given in all the Gospels, and we as believers must meditate on these events in faith and believe that the Son of God has come in the flesh to the earth and has remained in the flesh through His bodily resurrection. The Gospels present many

specific details that clearly prove the bodily resurrection of the Lord Jesus, which is fundamental to the faithful followers of the Lord Jesus.

However, we all must be aware of false teachings and prophets who deny the coming of the Lord Jesus in the flesh and of His remaining in the flesh after His bodily resurrection, as the Holy Spirit warns us through the apostle John in 1 John 4:1-3, saying, “Beloved, believe not every spirit, but prove the spirits, whether they are of God; because many false prophets have gone out into the world. By this you know the Spirit of God: every spirit that confesses Jesus Christ having come in the flesh is of God; and every spirit that confesses not Jesus is not of God; and this is of the antichrist, which you have heard that it is coming; and now it is in the world already.”

The Lord Jesus has risen in the human body, and the Father’s hand has led the Lord through the rock to be out of the tomb because that was not the place for Him to be. The Lord rose in the palm of the Father and was led out through the rock; He was in the palm of the Father; nothing can block that hand. The Father’s hand from heaven had come there to take the Son out of the tomb, and nothing could stop this. The angel came after the Lord rose, which was for the women who came (Matthew 28:1-7). The Father had already taken the Lord away before the women who came to the tomb the day after the Sabbath arrived. The guards did not see when the Father took the Lord; humans couldn’t see the Father’s hand. When the disciples have seen the Lord Jesus by the Father’s side, it is in the Bible that the Father has taken the Lord Jesus to His side. That is where the Lord Jesus should be, beside the Father; He has finished the work the Father has given Him (Acts 7:54-55).

Reading the accounts of the resurrection of the Lord Jesus in the Gospels chapters, Matthew 28, Mark 16, Luke 24, and John 20, we will realize that to understand the events given to us by the Holy Spirit, we need the guidance of the Holy Spirit. In this section, we comment on the resurrection account as presented in the Gospel of John 19:1-20 and give our comments and the understanding of the timeline events related to the resurrection of the Lord Jesus.

1 Now on the first day of the week comes Mary Magdalene early, still being dark, to the tomb, and sees the stone removed from the tomb.

John 20:1 happens at the same time as the events described in Luke 24:1-7, Matthew 28:1-7, and Mark 16:1-7 meaning that Mary Magdalene went

to the tomb with other women very early, still being dark, but the sun was risen (See [Mark 16:2](#)).

Q: Why are we given various terms in the Gospels to describe the time of the coming of these women to the tomb, with John saying still being dark and Mark saying when the sun has risen [On the first day of the week “still being dark” ([John 20:1](#)); “when the sun was risen” ([Mark 16:2](#)); “as it began to dawn toward the first day of the week” ([Matthew 28:1](#)); “on the first day of the week, at early dawn” ([Luke 24:1](#)). Dawn means the period in the day when the light from the sun begins to appear.]]? A: Think this way as well, the earth is here, and the sun is here, and the sun shines up; the people in this part did not see the sun, but if they look at the sky, they notice the light but the sun itself does not shine yet to the earth, just on the sky only, that is why the verse has told it is being dark.

2 She runs therefore, and comes to Simon Peter, and to the other disciple whom Jesus loved, and says to them, They have taken away the Lord out of the tomb, and we do not know where they have laid Him.

“And we know not where they have laid Him.” This verse shows that Mary Magdalene also went to the tomb with the other women, and they discussed where Jesus could be (See [Luke 24:1-7](#), [Matthew 28:1-7](#), [Mark 16:1-7](#)). So the women that have seen the empty tomb, in their hearts, have only one thing, that someone has taken the beloved Son of God away from the tomb, and they did not know where those people have put Him.

See also [Comments Mark 16:9-11](#) and [Comparison Analysis Mark 16:1-8](#).

Complete summary of events that happened on the first day of the week when the Lord Jesus rose from the dead:

1. Mary Magdalene, and Joanna, and Mary the mother of James, and the other women went to the tomb early in the morning on the first day of the week, still being somewhat dark, but the sun had risen. Their purpose was to prepare the body of the Lord Jesus with spices. Within their hearts, they wanted to prepare the body of the beloved Son of God according to the custom of the people of God would do for the dead body. (See [Luke 24:1](#), [John 20:1](#), [Matthew 28:1](#), and [Mark 16:1-2](#)).

2. These women witnessed the earthquake, the angel at the tomb, and the angels inside the tomb as described in the Gospels. However, we do not know how many of them went inside the tomb or who, by name, had seen the angels. (See Luke 24:2-5a, Matthew 28:2-4, Mark 16:3-6a).
3. The angels told them that the Lord Jesus is risen and told them to announce this to His disciples. (Luke 24:5b-8, Matthew 28:6-7, Mark 16:6b-7).
4. The women left frightened and didn't talk to anyone on the way, but went and reported first to the Lord Jesus' apostles. Mary and all the women were involved in telling the apostles, but Mary was the outspoken one and spoke for all of them, as shown in John 20:2 ("... and we know not where they have laid Him"). (Luke 24:9-11, Matthew 28:8, Mark 16:8, John 20:2, Luke 24:22-24).
5. Then Peter and John went out and ran together to the tomb to see what had happened. Peter and John witnessed the empty tomb as well. (John 20:3-9, Luke 24:12).
6. After seeing the empty tomb, Peter and John returned to their place. (John 20:10).
7. After talking to the apostles, we can understand that Mary Magdalene and the other women followed Peter and John as they ran to the tomb. We are told that Mary Magdalene reached the tomb and lingered at the tomb. However, we are not told where the other women were at this time. (John 20:11a).
8. Mary Magdalene again stooped inside the tomb (John 20:11b) and saw two angels (John 20:12) who talked to her (John 20:13).
9. The Lord Jesus appeared to Mary Magdalene, standing outside the tomb behind her, but she didn't recognize Him (John 20:14). This was the first appearance of the Lord Jesus to someone after His resurrection (Mark 16:9).
10. Mary spoke to the resurrected Lord Jesus. (John 20:15-17).
11. Next, the Lord Jesus met the other women, and they worshiped Him, and Jesus talked to them (Matthew 28:9-10). Note that there is a time gap between Matthew 28:8 and Matthew 28:9. The next moment after Mary met the Lord Jesus, He met the other women, who were in a different area than Mary; this event could have taken place sometime before 9 am. In Matthew 28:11, we are told about these women going away after meeting the Lord, but we are not told in any Gospel about them reporting that they saw the resurrected Lord Jesus.

12. Mary Magdalene, however, went and told the apostles that she had seen the resurrected Lord Jesus, but they disbelieved. (John 20:18, Mark 16:10-11); this could have taken place sometime before 9 am.
13. The Lord Jesus appeared to two of His disciples that same day as they were traveling on the road to Emmaus village. The Lord Jesus drew near them as they were walking, and He joined them and talked to them, but they did not recognize Him. However, He interpreted to them the Scriptures concerning Himself. He dined with them as it was toward evening, and the day was now far spent (Luke 24:13-31a, Mark 16:12-13). Therefore, we can assume here that this event happened before 6 pm. **Q:** From their discussion with the Lord Jesus on the road, it appears that these disciples were not yet aware of the Lord Jesus' appearance to Mary or the other women, even though the Lord had appeared to them sometimes earlier that same day. **A:** We can assume that these men were not in the inner circle of the Lord's disciples. Most of the time, they stayed away from the rest of the people; all they knew was that the tomb was empty at that time. They did not know what Mary had seen, but later, after meeting with the others, they learned all about it.
14. The two men returned from the Emmaus village to Jerusalem to meet the apostles and tell them they had seen the Lord (Luke 24:32-33). There, they find out that the Lord Jesus appeared to Simon Peter as well (Luke 24:34, 1 Corinthians 15:5). Combining these events so far, specifically, the Lord Jesus walked with these men and dined with them sometimes towards the evening, and by the time these men came and met the apostles, the Lord already had appeared to Simon Peter as well, we can understand that the Lord appeared to Simon Peter sometimes before the Lord Jesus met these two on the road and after the Lord appeared to the women. (Luke 24:34, 1 Corinthians 15:5).
15. The Lord Jesus appeared to His disciples in the evening of the first day of the week, while these two men reported to the apostles "how He was known of them in the breaking of the bread" during their meal together in the village. (John 20:19-23, Luke 24:35-48, Mark 16:14-18). The appearance of the Lord Jesus to these two men is a vital part of the Lord's resurrection because both have witnessed to the disciples that they also have met with the Lord. Now, it was not only the inner circle that had witnessed the resurrection of the Lord Jesus, but other disciples as well.
16. The Lord Jesus revealed Himself again to the disciples for the second time, with Thomas present (John 20:26-29).

17. The Lord Jesus revealed Himself to the disciples the third time at the Sea of Tiberias. (John 21:1-25).
18. As written in Acts 1:3, the Lord Jesus appeared to the disciples for a period of 40 days and spoke with them about the kingdom of God. After the events described in John chapters 20 and 21, we can understand that the Lord appeared to the disciples at other times and in various places, which are not all recorded.
19. The saying of the Lord Jesus in Luke 24:49 happened during a different appearance of the Lord Jesus to the disciples, while in Jerusalem, sometimes shortly before His ascension, when He instructs them to remain in the city (Jerusalem) to be “clothed with power from on high.” More specifically, this saying in Luke 24:49 took place at the same time as the saying in Acts 1:4 when the Lord “was staying with them” in Jerusalem at a place where all were gathered together. From this place in Jerusalem, while the Lord stayed with them, He led them up to Bethany on the Mount of Olives, from where He ascended into heaven (See Luke 24:50-53 and Acts 1:4-11).

3 Then Peter went out, and the other disciple, and were coming to the tomb.

4 and the two were running together, and the other disciple ran ahead faster than Peter, and came first to the tomb;

5 and having stooped down, he sees the linen cloths lying; however, he did not enter in.

6 Then Simon Peter also comes, following him, and entered into the tomb; and he sees the linen cloths lying,

“Then Simon Peter also comes, following him, and entered into the tomb.”

This tomb was a big room, enough for the beloved Son of God to be left there alone. Also, even though He did not stay long in this tomb, this tomb has been dedicated to His body and has become the beloved Son of God’s tomb on earth.

“And he sees the linen cloths lying.” When the beloved Son of God left the tomb, the linen cloths that were on the Lord’s body, He did not need to use them at all; they were left there as they have been removed from the whole body of the beloved Son of God. However, the beloved Son of God rose in human form by the Father Himself. It was the Father who removed the linen cloths because it was not for the beloved Son of God to be wrapped in linen

cloths for burial; the Father Himself came and took the beloved Son into His hand; we can also think as the body has been lifted out from the linen cloths without tearing them as the Father Himself has put His hand to take the body of His Son out from those linen cloths.

The beloved Son of God's resurrected body will no longer use the old earthly clothes. He will use the heavenly clothes covering His body; no human hand or eyes have ever touched or seen the heavenly clothes, but only the beloved Son of God in human form alone has seen and touched them. The disciples did not see the heavenly clothes the Father put on His body but saw another cloth He used. Each time He appeared to the disciples, they would have seen only that cloth, but no human eye could see the heavenly clothes. There is a difference between those clothes; when the Father gives the beloved Son the heavenly clothes, these are the clothes that also the heavenly hosts can notice; however, only the beloved Son of God can wear them; they are a special type of clothes which will tell the difference of position so even the heaven itself can notice the difference as well. Another cloth is from the Father as well but does not have the radiance of the heavenly host on it, which is why it looks different. The explanation would be that the Lord Jesus has heavenly clothes and an earthly cloth, the heavenly clothes the disciples didn't see or touch; human eyes cannot see or touch the heavenly clothes; therefore, the Lord Jesus appeared to them in the earthly cloth.

The resurrected Lord Jesus can eat earthly food, but it will never go for digestion; when the food enters His resurrected body, it will be put somewhere else but not in the body itself because He does not need earthly food anymore for the body. The heavenly body doesn't need this food, either.

7 and the face cloth, that was upon His head, not lying with the linen cloths, but folded up in one place by itself.

"And the face cloth, that was upon His head, not lying with the linen cloths." When the Father's hand came to take the beloved Son of God, His body was lifted up and wearing the new heavenly clothes on Him; the linen cloths that were wrapped upon His body had fallen off on the place; the face cloth that had covered the face of the beloved Son of God also was left in its own place as it was put on the face. The Father has taken the body of the Lord Jesus out of those linen cloths altogether; the beloved Son of God no longer needs the

old earthly clothes upon His body; the Father Himself has prepared the heavenly clothes for Him to wear. His appearance in front of the Father will be in the heavenly clothes to magnify His glory in achieving the hard work the beloved Son of God has fulfilled, the job the Father has given Him. His human body was resurrected out of the linen cloths of the earth when the Father's hand was wrapped around His body, and He lifted up His body from the earthly linen cloths and clothed Him with the heavenly clothes at the same moment. Those earthly clothes just fell off to the ground in the place. The human tradition of cutting the body will take time, but when they did bury the beloved Son of God, they did not have that time to do that tradition, so they only wrapped the body with spices and laid Him down on the floor without even a coffin to keep the body.

“But folded up in one place by itself.” The body was wrapped around with the linen cloths up to the shoulders, and His head had the face cover. When the Father lifted His Son's body, that face cloth still folded up felt down in its place as the Father had lifted up the beloved Son's body out of the clothes in His palm; therefore, the way they folded the cloth upon His face remained as it was; when the body was lifted up, all the body clothes have not been thrown off but fell off the body and stayed where they were.

The reason we are given the information about the face cloth and the linen cloths is to understand the miracle of the body resurrection done by the Father Himself; it is not that someone or an angel went and unwrapped the clothes of the Lord first or that the Lord rose in those clothes and then He unwrapped Himself or something like that; the Father took the body of the Lord Jesus out of those clothes, through the clothes without touching those clothes. So therefore, the body of the Lord Jesus was lifted through those clothes by the Father Himself, and this is the miracle of the bodily resurrection of the Lord Jesus.

8 Then, therefore, entered in the other disciple also, who came first to the tomb, and he saw, and believed.

9 For they did not understand yet the Scripture, that He must rise out from the dead.

10 Therefore, the disciples went away again to their own place.

11 But Mary stood outside at the tomb weeping; then, as she wept, she stooped down into the tomb;

12 and she beholds two angels in bright sitting, one at the head, and one at the feet, where the body of Jesus had lain.

The Lord has looked upon Mary's tears and had mercy; the two angels have been in the tomb and let Mary see them out of the mercy that the beloved Son of God has towards her. These two angels are the angels that have come to worship the beloved Son of God when He has risen and received an order to wait until they meet with Mary and have a conversation with her. These two angels were the same ones that were present in Luke 24:4-7 and Mark 16:5-7 when the women went first to the tomb, but the angel from Matthew 28:1-7 that descended from heaven was a different angel than these two.

Both of these angels are angels but have different duties. When the Father's hand has come to take the body of the beloved Son of God, these two angels also have received duty, one which stayed at the head portion and another stayed at the foot portion; the head portion will be the angel that also will have a duty in helping the thought of anyone that has looked upon the cross and thinks of Him that died for them on the cross; the angel at the feet will be the one that is waiting and helps everyone that has been helped from another angel to walk following the teaching of the beloved Son of God and worship the Father. So the two angels have different duties, but their duties will be tangled to one another as one duty because it is only one begotten Son of God (See Matthew 4:11b, Hebrew 1:14). The Holy Spirit is the Spirit of the Father, and He controls all the angels of heaven because the Holy Spirit receives straight direction from the Father; whatever orders the Holy Spirit gives to the angels, they all will obey as if they were from the Father Himself.

13 And one says to her, Woman, why do you weep? She says to them, Because they have taken away my Lord, and I do not know where they have laid Him.

14 When she had thus said, she turned back behind, and beholds Jesus standing, and did not know that it is Jesus.

"When she had thus said, she turned back behind, and beholds Jesus standing." As Mary was talking with the angels, she saw the beloved Son of God with her own eyes when she turned her face back. Still, her heart that was in sorrow had covered her eyes, and the radiance of the body of the beloved

Son of God had blurred her eyes, making her unable to recognize the beloved Son of God.

“And did not know that it is Jesus.” Mary is a commoner and has seen the beloved Son of God in human form only; therefore, when her eyes have seen the beloved Son of God, the radiance that the beloved Son of God showed off has blocked all her mind and the understanding in her heart has turned blanked of all questions, and she could not recognize that it was the beloved Son of God Himself.

15 Jesus says to her, Woman, why do you weep? Whom do you seek? She, thinking that He is the gardener, says to Him, Sir, if you have carried Him away, tell me where you have laid Him, and I will take Him away.

16 Jesus says to her, Mary. Having turned around, she says to Him in Aramaic, Rabboni; which is to say, Teacher.

“Jesus says to her, Mary.” Here, the beloved Son of God has called her by her own name Mary; to be recognized by the Lord by your earthly name also tells the people that if you truly worship Him from your heart, He will recognize you by your own name as well, even later on you will have a different name, but now she has an earthly name.

“Having turned around, she says to Him in Aramaic, Rabboni; which is to say, Teacher.” Everybody should take notice of this verse: Mary has accepted the beloved Son of God as her Holy Teacher; she called Him Rabboni, which means Teacher. The Holy Teacher will teach you all knowledge.

17 Jesus says to her, Touch Me not; for I have not yet ascended to the Father; but go to My brethren, and say to them, I am ascending to My Father and your Father, and My God and your God.

“Jesus says to her, Touch Me not.” The beloved Son of God was resurrected recently from the dead, and His earthly body that Mary has been looking at is now also covered with the heavenly body; therefore, the cleaning of the body is the part that the beloved Son of God has to maintain until going up to heaven. When a human touches His body, the human’s physical body will also make His heavenly body partially unclean, and at this point, the beloved Son of God has not gone to see the Father yet, so He must keep His body pure; therefore, to take His earthly body to meet with the Father, He has stopped her

before touching Him. Immediately after the resurrection, the human body of the beloved Son of God is pure and clean, which the beloved Son of God wants to offer to the Father, which was the main reason for not touching Him yet. Therefore, the reason Mary was not to touch the Lord was not that the Lord Jesus did not ascend to the Father, which took place forty days later, but the reason was that the Lord Jesus did not meet with the Father yet after His resurrection to receive new commandments as the resurrected Lord. Hence, Jesus needed to keep His human body clean. The Bible does not tell where and when this meeting between the Lord Jesus and the Father occurred, but we can understand that the Lord Jesus met the Father right after His appearance to Mary and before meeting the group of the other women.

“For I have not yet ascended to the Father.” The Lord Jesus would see the disciples before He ascended to heaven (be carried up to heaven). Even though God is One together, the beloved Son of God in human form still has to meet with the Father; so, in the prospect of meeting with the Father in human form, the beloved Son of God has told, at this moment, that He has not yet gone back to heaven. This part is the reason to go to tell the disciples.

“But go to My brethren, and say to them, I am ascending to My Father and your Father.” So, in this part of the verse, the beloved Son of God has told His disciples that He is going to see the Father and also makes the disciples aware that the Father of the beloved Son of God is also their Father; this also tells the disciples that the love from the Father has been extended to them as well because from now on they are not just only the disciples of the beloved Son of God but they have become children of the Father as well.

“And My God and your God.” At this saying, the Lord Jesus also has told all humans that He is the beloved Son of God, but the Father is also His God, and if the Father is the God of the beloved Son of God, then the Father will be God of all that believe in the Lord Jesus. God the Father has the Trinity in Himself; the Father has the Trinity of God in Himself; the beloved Son of God and the Holy Spirit are also One in the Father.

The Lord Jesus didn’t go back and forth to heaven; He remained on earth for a while after His resurrection and met with His disciples. The ascension (or carried up) of the Lord Jesus is given in Luke 24:50-53 and Acts 1:6-11 and happened at the time given in these verses.

18 Mary Magdalene comes reporting to the disciples, that she has seen the Lord, and He had said these to her.

19 It being, therefore, evening, on that day, the first after Sabbath, and the doors having been shut where the disciples were because of fear of the Jews, Jesus came and stood in the midst, and says to them, Peace to you.

“It being, therefore, evening, on that day, ... because of fear of the Jews.” The life of the disciples at that time was not easy for all of them because of the good news they had spreading regarding the beloved Son of God, which was against the majority of people’s belief. The disciples believed that the beloved Son of God in human form was also truly the Son of God even though He is a human; God has become a Man and dwelled with humans; therefore, He is the Son of Man.

“Jesus came and stood in the midst, and says to them, Peace to you.” The beloved Son of God was concerned about the disciples because what they would face was not easy for any human. So, when He appeared to them the term, He said to them, “Peace to you,” will give them peace in their hearts; by doing this, their faith also has grown; they have seen and heard the word of the beloved Son of God, and this will also give them the positive feeling and their strength with grow.

“And the doors having been shut ... Jesus came and stood in the midst.” The Lord Jesus resurrected in the body, which here is important in how He appeared to them. The beloved Son of God is a hundred percent human and a hundred percent God simultaneously. The resurrected Lord has concurred all; He concurred the living and the death; nothing can block Him anymore; even being in human form, He can go through all things; nothing can block His way anymore. After the beloved Son of God was resurrected from death, His human form and the heavenly form were joined, not just covered any longer; the human form of the beloved Son of God now has the same power as the heavenly form because He has concurred all. We should not think that Jesus’ human body was transformed at the resurrection, but instead, we must think that His resurrected human body has joined His heavenly body; if the human body is transformed, then it will change, but when they are joined, the two will cover over each other, the two become one and the beloved Son of God has both forms, the human form, and the heavenly form. Furthermore, we cannot

think that the human body of the Lord Jesus is being preserved through the heavenly body; however, we must believe that His human body came to life and is alive as a human body, which has joined with the heavenly body. The heavenly form has given life to the human form; in the human form, the beloved Son of God now has blood and water from the heavenly form to replace all that He has lost on the cross. When humans have crucified the beloved Son of God on the cross, the heavenly form has given all the life back to the human body; now the beloved Son of God has complete human life and body in Him, and He has joined with the heavenly form; the beloved Son of God has become one hundred percent of both forms in One. All the food and every nutrition for this human body are received through His own heavenly form; He does not need human food, but all the food that His human body needs, the heavenly form has given for Him.

Only the beloved Son of God will have human form in the new world; He will be the only true human left.

20 And having said this, He showed both His hands and His side to them. The disciples then rejoiced, having seen the Lord.

“And having said this, He showed both His hands and His side to them.” Then, to make sure that the disciples realized what they were doing in their hearts, the beloved Son of God showed them all the injuries that He had received at the hands of humans; therefore, the disciples will always remember that their own Master had been killed by them as well, not only by the hands of the outsiders that have harmed the beloved Son of God. When their eyes have seen His wounds, the pain has grieved their hearts. The scars on His body also have talked to their hearts about why it happened, and then the guilt will also come to them; they all have fled away from their Master and have let their Master suffer alone; they will feel in their hearts as their own action has surrendered their Master to be crucified and that is the guilt they will have.

“The disciples then rejoiced, having seen the Lord.” So when the beloved Son of God appeared in front of them, their eyes saw the resurrected Lord of life, and their hearts were rejoicing because their Master was living again. So now their faith has been strengthened, the peace has come to their hearts that the Master of their life truly has returned to them again; the loss they have felt in

their hearts has been eliminated when they have seen the resurrected Lord again.

Therefore, all true followers of the Lord Jesus must rejoice that He rose in the body and is alive in His heavenly body and human body forevermore. We will all see Him as our Lord and King when He comes to take His bride, the faithful true church.

Below, we highlight all the Gospels' links that relate to this theme, where you will find more comments and explanations, which we provide in the Bible Commentary Forever (BCF for short) work.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** [Matthew 28:1-10](#) (The miraculous resurrection of the Lord Jesus: the great earthquake at the tomb; the angels and the women; the empty tomb; the resurrected Lord Jesus meets the women); [Matthew 28:16-17](#) (The resurrected Lord Jesus appears to the eleven disciples on the mountain).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** [Mark 16:9-11](#) (The resurrected Lord Jesus appears to Mary Magdalene); [Mark 16:14-18](#) (The resurrected Lord Jesus appears to the eleven disciples and gives them the great commission to go into the whole world to preach the Gospel to all nations); [Mark 16:19-20](#) (The resurrected Lord Jesus ascends into heaven; the Spirit of the Lord Jesus goes with the disciples and works miracles through them).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** [Luke 24:4-9](#) (The angels testified to those who came to the tomb on the first day of the week that the Lord Jesus rose, saying to them, "He is not here, but He is risen!"); [Luke 24:13-21](#) (The Lord Jesus appears to two of His disciples as they go on the road to Emmaus); [Luke 24:25-32](#) (The resurrected Lord Jesus explains the Scripture to the two disciples as they go to Emmaus; the Lord Jesus reclines with them at the table, breaks and blesses the bread, and the two recognize Him, but then He vanishes out of their sight); [Luke 24:36-43](#) (The Lord Jesus appeared to the eleven disciples in Jerusalem; He stood in the midst of them and said to them, "Peace to you." He showed them His hands and feet and ate food with them, proving to all who saw and read that He rose in the body); [Luke 24:50-53](#) (The resurrected Lord Jesus leads His disciples to the Mount of Olives, where He blesses them; then He

ascends into heaven in front of them; now, His heavenly body is joined with His human body, and He is seated at the right hand of the Father in heaven).

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** John 2:18-22 (The Lord Jesus teaches about the resurrection of His earthly body); John 20:11-16,18 (Mary is weeping outside the tomb of the Lord Jesus; she witnesses the empty tomb, and the resurrected Lord Jesus appears to her and talks to her; He makes Himself known to her); John 20:19-21 (On the first day after Sabbath, the resurrected Lord Jesus comes and stands in the midst of the disciples, who are gathered inside closed doors; He shows them His hand and His side and greets them: “Peace to you.”); John 20:24-28 (The resurrected Lord Jesus and Thomas: the Lord Jesus proves that He rose in the body, and everyone reading this testimony should believe and be blessed); John 21:7 (John recognizes the resurrected Lord Jesus standing on the shore as they are fishing); John 21:12-14 (The resurrected Lord Jesus has breakfast with the disciples on the shore; this is the third time He appeared to them).

2. End Time, and the Second Coming of the Lord Jesus

The Book of Revelation depicts a glorious return of our Lord Jesus Christ to the earth, which we refer to as the second coming of the Lord Jesus to earth (read also our article: The Second Coming of the Lord Jesus Christ). The Lord Jesus Christ is the only begotten Son of God who is One with God the Father and God the Holy Spirit from eternity. He came down from heaven as God and Human to give the bread of life to the world, as the Lord Jesus Himself says in John 6:33, “Indeed the bread of God is the One coming down from heaven and giving life to the world.” The Lord Jesus was crucified and died for the sins of the world, rose again on the third day, ascended to heaven, and now is seated at the Father’s right hand.

The Lord Jesus promises in His word that He is coming back to take His faithful followers to Himself (John 14:3); however, no one knows the time and the hour of His return and the time of the judgment (Matthew 24:36). Even though the Lord Jesus Himself clearly tells us in His Word that no one knows the day and the hour of His return, only the Father knows it, yet, many, while living on earth, try to put some dates to the time of the Lord Jesus’ return to earth, and they predict this for various reasons. In this blog, we will not put any dates related to the coming of the Lord Jesus to earth; however, we present general timeline events as we understand them from many of the Lord Jesus’ teachings to His disciples. Also, we will not develop

any further knowledge related to the Book of Revelation; instead, we will focus only on the teachings of the Lord Jesus found in the Gospels.

The Bible tells us that the Lord Jesus has life in Himself and Has the power and authority to execute judgment on the world (John 5:26-29). Therefore, all should come to the foot of the cross and make peace with the Father in the name of the Lord Jesus while they are alive on this earth; do not let time go by you; you can escape the judgment of the punishment of your soul to the hell of fire by believing in the Son of God and His work on the cross and His resurrection from the dead.

26 *For as the Father has life in Himself, even in this manner gave He to the Son also to have life in Himself,*

God of Three but One; what it is for One will also be for another. As the verse has told, the Father can give life, and also, the beloved Son of God can give life as well because both have life in themselves.

“As the Father has life in Himself.” The Father has life in Himself, and because of that, He can give that life further; all life belongs to the Father, including the life of the beloved Son of God; His life also belongs to the Father. The Lord Jesus’ deity cannot be lower than the Father’s deity because the Father Himself also is in the beloved Son of God, and in the same way, the beloved Son Himself is in the Father as well; the Trinity of God cannot be separated. When the beloved Son of God used the term to call Himself the Son of Man, the beloved Son of God has lowered Himself to be human; that is why the Father has given life to the beloved Son to have life in Himself.

“Even in this manner gave He to the Son also to have life in Himself.” This portion of the verse refers to the Son of God as the Son of Man; here, they become One, the beloved Son of God, and the Son of Man; what the verse has told in this portion refers to when the beloved Son of God takes the form of human (from His conception in the womb).

27 *and gave Him authority to execute judgment because He is the Son of Man.*

The beloved Son of God has taken the form of a human, and all authority for judging humans will belong to His pleasure. Even though the Father created humans, but because He has given humans free choice, and the beloved Son of God in human form has known the real human way of life, His judgment will be fair for all humans; in this way, humans can’t say it is not fair for God to

judge them if God does not taste what humans go through the suffering of life; but now the judgment is complete here. As we have commented before, in the Father, the beloved Son, and the Holy Spirit also exist; when we say the Father created the humans, that also has told the Trinity of God had created all things.

28 *Marvel not at this that the hour is coming, in which all in the tombs will hear His voice,*

Do not be surprised when the time is here because the beloved Son of God Himself in human form has passed through death; that is why the verse has told the hour is coming; do not be surprised. There is a level of judgment; first, to bring the dead to judgment before the beloved Son of God that was crucified, they all must hear Him first, and then the judgment takes place. As the Bible has told, He went there, to the death realm, to tell them the good news; in that period of time, the dead that died before He was born on earth will have a chance to hear the good news, and then, when the resurrection comes to receive judgment, it will be fair for them as well. Whatever their soul in that time will contain will be used for judgment. Those who did not have faith at all because they never heard about God will also have a chance as well; they did not know about the beloved Son of God, but deep in them, where they were alive, they all could notice the creation and could see that everything comes from someone and that someone is the God Almighty; they all have already knowledge about the God of Three (through the creation around them) but did not have a chance to know the Savior, and that is why the beloved Son of God goes there to tell them, to eliminate the unfair in the dark world itself.

After the Lord Jesus' resurrection and the sending of the Holy Spirit on earth, through the ministering of the Holy Spirit, everyone has the same chance to know about God Almighty, and the judgment will be fair for all.

29 *and will come forth; those that have done good, to resurrection of life; and those that have done evil, to resurrection of judgment.*

As the verse says, all humans, living and dead, will hear the judgment from the God of Three; there is no place where they can hide. Some have thought God is God of the living (has power only while they are alive on this earth), and when they die, God can't touch them anymore, but they all have forgotten that the beloved Son of God in human form has died as well, and went to the death

realm to tell about Himself, so even the dead can't escape the judgment. As the verse has said, at the judgment time, all that have done good and have faith in the Son of God will come to the resurrection of life, but all that did evil will come back to receive the judgment of punishment as well.

The Lord Jesus teaches about His second coming to earth in various parables; specifically, two parables are significant on this topic: the parable of “the king who made a wedding feast for his son” (Matthew 22:1-14) and the parable of “the ten virgins” (Matthew 25:1-13). Furthermore, the Lord Jesus teaches about the resurrection of the dead in His debate with the Sadducees who say there is no resurrection (Matthew 22:23-33, Mark 12:18-27); then, before His crucifixion, the Lord Jesus, answering the disciples' questions about the temple buildings and the signs of His coming and the end of the age, He teaches many things about the end time.

In Matthew 13:24-30, the Lord Jesus, speaking about the kingdom of heaven, gives the parable of “a man who sowed good seed in his field,” where He talks about the church on earth being mingled until the end time: wheat and tares. Below, we comment on the last verse of this parable, in which the Lord talks about the time when He will judge His house (See 1 Peter 4:17).

30 *Let both grow together until the harvest; and in the time of the harvest, I will say to the reapers, Gather up first the tares, and bind them in bundles to burn them; and gather together the wheat into my barn.*

Until the end times, the church will continue to mingle as it is described here (wheat and tares). But the clean-up will start first in the church of God. There are two eras before the end time judgment. The first one is the “grow together” era, which is the church era and is the period of time from the first coming of the Lord Jesus on earth until His second coming. The second era is the “harvest time” era, also known as the millennium time (See Revelation 20:4-6). Each era is a long time for humans. Many of us will live our lives, and the church era will not end. The human time and the angel time are not the same length. As it is written, a day of the Lord is like a thousand years of human time (See 2 Peter 3:8). The time of the Lord and humans is not alike. During the “harvest time” era, there will be a falling away for those who do not watch themselves and do not use the Word in their daily lives. It will be the last fight of the evil against those who are not watchful. There will be those who will be using the name of the Lord for their personal gain. The Lord

will clean up His church during this time in a visible way on earth and in the spiritual world (many events described in the Bible during the millennium time happen in parallel between these two worlds). The Lord will judge them from the inside, not from their outside appearance. Those that look righteous outside but have nothing right inside will be bundled together and thrown out. During the millennium time, as shown in Revelation 20:4, the Lord will establish the millennium kingdom, and He will judge the people left on earth after the tribulation time. In those times, the sinful nature of humans will make the believers sin even with Satan being bound in chains.

“Gather up first the tares, and bind them in bundles to burn them; and gather together the wheat into my barn.” During the “harvest time” era, the Lord would clean up the church in a visible way; one day, people would wake up and just see only dead around.

Based on the understanding from this parable and other teachings in the Gospels and the book of Revelation, we can learn that there are two eras before the end time judgment and three main stages that mark the coming of the Lord Jesus to earth. The subsection below presents some brief notes about these eras and stages.

Brief Notes on the Second Coming of the Lord

There are two eras before the end time judgment. First is “the church era,” which started with the Lord Jesus’ first coming to earth (His birth on earth) and will end with the second coming of the Lord Jesus to earth; the second era is “the harvest time era” or “the millennium time era” which will start with the second coming of the Lord Jesus to earth and will end with the final destruction of this earth. At “harvest time era,” the Lord will gather the wheat in His barn, and the end time judgment will start.

Now, “prior to the harvest era,” before the second coming of the Lord Jesus to earth, there will be the tribulation period. This tribulation period is a time of judgment coming from the Lord upon this earth before the Lord Jesus returns.

The second coming of the Lord Jesus to earth will happen in three stages.

1. The first stage is when the Lord Jesus is still in heaven, and this stage is marked by the beginning of the tribulation period on earth.
2. The second stage is when the Lord Jesus comes into the air, and this stage is marked by the rapture of the church. The rapture of the believers takes place

during this second stage of the Lord Jesus coming into the air and will take place sometimes in the middle of the tribulation period itself.

3. The third stage will be when the Lord Jesus Himself will touch the earth. The Lord Jesus will touch the earth sometime after the tribulation period. At this time, “the millennium time era” on earth will start.

Before the second coming of the Lord Jesus to earth, the earth itself will look much different; the Lord will spare only a small portion of the earth for the left-over people, but the rest of the earth will not be livable (See Isaiah 13:6-13).

At the end of “the millennium time era,” this earth will be transformed by the fire from God, and the parallel earth will come. The parallel earth will swallow the melted earth because the new things will be formed on this parallel earth, and all believers will get the heavenly bodies and dwell there (the parallel earth is not the heaven itself, but it is part of the heaven; the parallel earth looks like this earth but not the same). We can now think of the parallel earth as a spiritual earth, but for that world where this parallel earth exists, it is a heavenly material earth. In [John 14:3](#), the Lord Jesus refers to the parallel earth that we are talking about here when He says: “And if I go and prepare a place for you, I am coming again, and will receive you to Myself; that where I am, you may be also.” The word has told us that the earth is transformed and does not disappear; as the Lord has been transformed, but His flesh body contains the earth because the Bible tells us that nothing that the Lord has created will disappear completely. Therefore, as the Lord has been transformed at His resurrection when His earthly body has merged with His heavenly body, in the same way, this earth we are on now will be transformed after the millennium era and merged (melted) within the parallel earth. The parallel earth is like a heavenly earth for this earth, and the parallel earth, when it appears, will cover (swallow up) this earth we are on now.

Within our [Bible Commentary Forever](#) (BCF) work, many comments talk about the second coming of our Lord Jesus and the end time. We highlight all the BCF comments in our article: [The Second Coming of the Lord Jesus Christ](#).

Below, we highlight all the Gospels’ links that relate to this theme, where you will find more comments and explanations, which we provide in the Bible Commentary Forever (BCF for short) work.

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Matthew:** [Matthew 22:11-14](#) (The parable of the king who made a wedding feast for his son: to enter into the kingdom of heaven,

we must have the right wedding garments, washed in the blood of the Lord Jesus); Matthew 22:23-33 (The Lord Jesus teaches about the resurrection of the body in the kingdom of heaven); Matthew 24:3-14 (The Lord Jesus teaches His disciples about the end time signs: false christs will come; beginning of birth pains and tribulations on earth; persecution of the believers; the gospel of the kingdom shall be preached in the whole world for a testimony, and then shall the end come); Matthew 24:15-24 (The Lord Jesus teaches about the end time signs: the coming of the abomination of desolation into the world as a sign of end times; disasters and tribulations will follow; false christs will appear); Matthew 24:28-31 (The Lord Jesus teaches about the end time signs: great tribulations will come followed by the sign of the Son of Man in heaven; the Son of Man will come on the clouds of heaven with power and great glory); Matthew 24:36-44 (The Lord Jesus teaches about end time signs: be always ready; no one knows the day and the hour of the Son of God's return to earth; only the Father knows that day); Matthew 25:1-13 (The Lord teaches about the end time through the parable of the ten virgins: marriage feast, rapture, and tribulation).

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Mark:** Mark 12:18-27 (The Lord Jesus teaches about the resurrection of the body in the kingdom of heaven); Mark 13:3-13 (The Lord Jesus teaches His disciples about the end time signs: false christs will come; beginning of birth pains and tribulations on earth; persecution of the believers; the gospel must be proclaimed to all the nations); Mark 13:14-23 (The Lord Jesus teaches about the end time signs: the coming of the abomination of desolation into the world; disasters and tribulations will follow; false christs); Mark 13:24-27 (The Lord Jesus teaches about the end time signs: great signs will come in heaven before the Son of Man will come on the clouds of heaven with power and great glory; the elect will be gathered by the angels of the Lord; Mark 13:32-37 (The Lord Jesus tells all that no one knows the day or the hour of the end-time judgment; only God the Father knows it. The Lord Jesus sends His servants to warn people that the time is coming; all must watch, do good, and be saved).
- **BCF Links in the Gospel of Luke:** Luke 12:35-40 (Be ready for the Lord's Jesus return; "because at the hour that you expect not the Son of Man comes."); Luke 17:22-24 (The coming of the Son of Man will be like the lightning flashing from one end of the sky to the other); Luke 17:25-33 (The Lord Jesus tells about the tribulations coming upon the earth before His return; the Lord Jesus' return to earth will be unexpected as it was with the days of

Noah and the days of Lot); [Luke 17:34-37](#) (The Lord Jesus teaches about the rapture of the faithful at His coming); [Luke 19:27](#) (The parable of the minas: the Lord Jesus teaches about the judgment of the believers in name); [Luke 20:27-38](#) (The Lord Jesus teaches about the resurrection of the body in the kingdom of heaven); [Luke 21:7-11](#) (The Lord Jesus teaches about the end time signs: the coming of false christs, great wars, major natural disasters and terrors on earth, and great signs from heaven); [Luke 21:20-28](#) (The Lord Jesus teaches about the signs before He comes in the cloud with power and great glory: Jerusalem surrounded by armies, Jerusalem trodden down by the Gentiles, signs in the sun and moon and stars, great distress on the earth and the seas); [Luke 21:29-33](#) (The parable of the fig tree and all the trees: the Lord Jesus teaches that before His return His people, the Jews, will gain back the power and rule over the left over humans on earth); [Luke 22:28-30](#) (The Lord Jesus appoints all true believers who keep faith until the end to be with Him in His kingdom, which the Father appoints Him).

- **BCF Links in the Gospel of John:** [John 5:28-29](#) (The Lord Jesus teaches about the judgment of the living and dead; those that have done good will rise to life with Him; those that have done evil will rise to the resurrection of judgment).

Conclusions

In this blog, we present the topic of “teachings about the bodily resurrection of the Lord Jesus, end time, and the second coming of the Lord Jesus.” In [John 11:25](#), the Lord Jesus, talking to Martha about the death of her brother Lazarus, says, “I am the resurrection, and the life; the one believing in Me, even if he may die, will live.” By saying, “I am the resurrection,” the beloved Son of God tells all humans that He is alive and never dies, and all who are in Him will also be alive. Life for the soul is only found in the Lord Jesus, the Son of God, who has the power and authority to give life to all who call upon His name and believe in Him. Also, everyone can trust that if you completely believe in the beloved Son of God, even if you die from this earth, you are still alive with Him and have eternal life together with the beloved Son of God Himself. Because He is the Lord of resurrection, all who believe in Him will live with Him forevermore.

And because He is alive and He is the Lord of the resurrection, He will come again to take His own to Himself. Therefore, if you are reading this blog, put your complete trust in the beloved Son of God, the Lord Jesus, and believe that He came to earth to do the work that the Father entrusted Him to do, and He completed all the

salvation work for the world: He was conceived by the Holy Spirit in the egg of the Virgin Mary, He was born in a manger in Bethlehem, He is the light of the world and came to bring good news for the world, He was crucified and died on the cross for the sins of the world, He died and went to minister to the lost souls in the dark, He was buried in a sealed and guarded tomb, He rose in the body in the palm of the Father, He ascended into the heaven in His heavenly and earthly bodies as One and is seated at the right hand of the Father, He is coming back to the earth, on the clouds of the heaven with great glory to take His bride, the church, when He comes all the dead will rise to imperishable heavenly bodies, and now He is preparing a new place for all that believe in Him on His new earth where He will be King and Lord forevermore over all risen saints who will have new imperishable bodies of the new earth substance. The new immortal and indestructible earth where the Lord Jesus reigns will appear after the millennium era and will swallow up this old earth of dust and sin.

With this blog, we conclude our blog series entitled: “The Teachings of the Lord Jesus.” Within this blog series, we cover all the teachings found in the Gospels: the Gospel of Matthew, the Gospel of Mark, the Gospel of Luke, and the Gospel of John. We group all the Gospels’ teachings into six spiritual categories and then divide each category into various themes. The Gospels are full of life and spiritual food for the human soul, and we encourage everyone to read and meditate on every word of the Lord, the New Testament, and the Old Testament. By studying the Gospels one can find that God the Father loves His Son, the Lord Jesus Christ, and wants all humans to lift Him up as God of the Trinity of God (God the Father, God the Son Jesus Christ, and God the Holy Spirit) and do not diminish His deity in any way. The Lord Jesus deserves all the glory and the honor; therefore, let us give Him that glory and honor, be true to His Name, abstain from idols of any kind, and abstain from holding any images of any kind trying to depict the Lord Jesus in some earthly form. The Lord Jesus Himself tells us that the Father is in Him and He is in the Father ([John 14:11](#)); therefore, the Lord Jesus is God of the Trinity, and He is One with the Father and the Holy Spirit.

Meditation Tasks:

1. Meditate on the significance of the bodily resurrection of the Lord Jesus.
2. Meditate on the resurrection of the dead and on the end time events as presented in this blog.

SECTION 2: Discipleship Teachings from the Book of Acts: A Chapter Selection

In this section of the manual, we present the commentary from our Bible Commentary Forever for the following chapters of the Book of Acts: Acts 1, Acts 2, Acts 9, Acts 10, Acts 13, Acts 27, and Acts 28. These chapters are utilized in our discipleship training course to teach about the role of the Holy Spirit in a believer's life and in mission work.

Acts 1

Summary. The Book of Acts continues the ministry of the Lord Jesus after His resurrection under the leadership of the Holy Spirit. The first chapter of the Book of Acts continues the events presented in the Gospel of Luke, chapter 24. **Acts 1:1-8**. Wait for the promise of the Father, the Holy Spirit. The resurrected Lord Jesus tells His disciples to go out and tell people about the Lord's work and His purpose for all. Also, the Lord Jesus commands them to wait for the blessing from the Father, the baptism with the Holy Spirit. **Acts 1:9-11**. God the Father receives the beloved Son Jesus. Not one person but many have witnessed the departure of the Lord Jesus. Humans' eyes have seen the Lord Jesus being taken up to heaven. **Acts 1:12-26**. Matthias is chosen to replace the betrayer. The Lord knows whom He has in the plan, and He has a plan for the work to be finished. The betrayer has been replaced with a worthy one, the one who knows the teaching and has a heart worthy of being part of the apostleship. Human eyes and the Lord's eyes look at a person differently. Humans propose names, but the Lord chooses the heart.

1 Indeed, the first account I made, O Theophilus, which Jesus began both to do and to teach,

Comments Acts 1:1 “The first account I made.” The first account relates to the Gospel of Luke.

“O Theophilus.” See Comments Luke 1:3.

“Which Jesus began both to do and to teach.” The beloved Son of God has come to point the way for all humans to be saved, and also, the Holy Spirit will link the hearts of humans to glorify the God of Truth.

2 until the day He was received up, having given command through the Holy Spirit to the apostles whom He had chosen,

Comments Acts 1:2 “Until the day He was received up.” See Comments Luke 24:51 and Mark 16:19-20.

“Having given command through the Holy Spirit to the apostles whom He had chosen.” The Lord Jesus has told them to go out and tell people about the Lord's work and what His purpose is for all.

3 to whom He also appeared Himself alive after His suffering with many proofs, appearing to them during forty days, and speaking concerning the kingdom of God.

Comments Acts 1:3 See Comments Luke 24:34-51.

4 And, being assembled, He commanded them not to depart from Jerusalem, but to wait for the promise of the Father: which you heard of Me;

Comments Acts 1:4 “And, being assembled.” The beloved Son also has given them a command that they should remain together and be patient (See Luke 24:33).

“He commanded them not to depart from Jerusalem ...” See Comments Luke 24:49.

5 for John indeed baptized with water; however, you will be baptized with the Holy Spirit, not many days after these.

Comments Acts 1:5 Now, in this place, the Lord has told His disciples what will happen to them. The blessing from the Father will come upon them when they have followed the commandment; the patience of believers will reward those who obey.

Q: What is the difference between being baptized with the Holy Spirit or in the Holy Spirit? **A:** There is a difference between the two. When baptized “with” the Holy Spirit, it covers the outer and inner; baptized “in” the Holy Spirit, it works in the heart and lets the person know what they should do. However, only when baptized with the Holy Spirit will there be the sign of speaking in tongues to give as a witness to others (See Acts 2:4-8). When baptized in the Holy Spirit, they will speak in tongues as a sign for themselves.

6 Those indeed, therefore, having come together, asked Him, saying, Lord, are Thou at this time restoring the kingdom to Israel?

Comments Acts 1:6 Humans need to know details before time, but the Lord's coming or what the Lord is doing is not to tell in detail.

7 He said to them, It is not for you to know times or seasons, which the Father has set with His own authority.

Comments Acts 1:7 As the verse says, humans do not understand the power of God; the power of the Father is above all, and everything is according to His will only.

8 But you will receive power, the Holy Spirit having come upon you, and you will be My witnesses, both in Jerusalem, and in all Judea and Samaria, and to the uttermost part of the earth.

Comments Acts 1:8 “But you will receive power, the Holy Spirit having come upon you.” This verse tells us the promise the Lord has made: all who believe will receive the Holy Spirit.

“And you will be My witnesses, ... and to the uttermost part of the earth.” Here is the place that tells the duty of those who receive the Holy Spirit: to witness the work of the Lord throughout the whole world.

9 And having said these things, as they were beholding, He was taken up; and a cloud hid Him from their sight.

Comments Acts 1:9 Humans have witnessed the work of the Father: the Father has received the Son up to be with Him, and humans have been witnesses to it.

10 And while they were looking steadfastly into the heaven as He was going, and behold, two men stood by them in white apparel;

Comments Acts 1:10 “And while they were looking steadfastly into the heaven as He was going.” In this time, not one human but more be a witness to the departure of the Lord Jesus. Humans' eyes have seen the Lord Jesus being taken up to heaven.

“Behold, two men stood by them in white apparel.” Here is the proof of the Father's mercy: the angels have come down and appeared to the human eyes.

11 who also said, Men of Galilee, why do you stand looking into heaven? This Jesus, who was taken up from you into heaven, thus will come in that manner you beheld Him going into heaven.

Comments Acts 1:11 “Men of Galilee, why do you stand looking into heaven?” This question is a general question that the angels have asked, but the purpose of asking is not general. These disciples have seen the Lord Jesus being taken up into heaven; this question will stir their hearts to think of where their Lord has been taken to.

“This Jesus, who was taken up ...” In this place, everyone who reads should pay attention. The Bible clearly states that the Lord has been taken up to heaven, and the human witnesses have been there to prove it. When the Lord Jesus will return, all eyes will see Him as well; not the eyes of certain people, not the eyes of those who believe, but every eye will see Him. All eyes will see together at the same time through a vision (see [Comments Matthew 25:6](#)).

12 Then they returned to Jerusalem from the mount called Olivet, which is near Jerusalem, a Sabbath day's holding journey.

Comments Acts 1:12 “Then they returned to Jerusalem from the mount called Olivet.” This verse tells us that the Lord works in people's hearts; they went where the Lord Jesus appointed them to be.

“Which is near Jerusalem, a Sabbath day's holding journey.” Let all readers also notice that the Lord Jesus always follows the rule of the Father; the travel distance was according to the law given; the Sabbath distance was calculated by God for them to travel. By tradition itself, they shortened the distance of the Sabbath's travel, but the Lord's distance is longer than the tradition itself. All these people also learned from tradition, and their internal feelings won't let them do things differently.

13 And when they had entered, they went up into the upper chamber, where they were abiding; both Peter and John, and James and Andrew, Philip and Thomas, Bartholomew and Matthew, James of Alphaeus, and Simon the Zealot, and Judas of James.

Comments Acts 1:13 They stayed together as they felt comfortable. The room was large, so they chose a spot where they stayed in pairs together, but they all gathered in an upper room as a group.

14 These all were with one accord continued steadfastly in prayer, with the women, and Mary the mother of Jesus, and with His brothers.

Comments Acts 1:14 “These all were with one accord continued steadfastly in prayer.” When the believers join together to be one heart to glorify the Lord, that is the time the Lord is there, and He is joyful.

“With the women, and Mary the mother of Jesus, and with His brothers.” In this place, the Bible also has mentioned women; the women whose hearts glorify the Lord, the Lord also has counted them in to tell about them in the Bible. His earthly family was there as well.

15 And in these days, Peter stood up in the midst of the brothers, and said (and there was a multitude of names together, about a hundred and twenty),

Comments Acts 1:15 In this place, let everyone notice the disciple work; the one the Lord has chosen, He has given duty. When the Lord has placed the disciple among believers, that person will also be the center of attention.

16 Men, brothers, it was necessary for the Scripture to have been fulfilled, which the Holy Spirit spoke before by the mouth of David concerning Judas, the one having become guide to those that took Jesus.

Comments Acts 1:16 “Men, brothers, it was necessary for the Scripture to have been fulfilled, which the Holy Spirit spoke before ...” As the verse tells us, the Holy Spirit will reveal men's secrets, even the deepest things men think, the most secret things in men's hearts the Holy Spirit can see through. The betrayer has already been revealed.

“The one having become guide to those that took Jesus.” It is the beginning of suffering the beloved Son has taken from the one who claimed to believe in Him and who has betrayed the Lord of Life with the most sinful deed.

17 For he was numbered among us, and received a portion in this ministry.

18 (Indeed, this man, then acquired a field with the reward of iniquity, and having fallen headlong, he burst asunder in the middle, and all his bowels gushed out.

Comments Acts 1:18 “Indeed, this man, then acquired a field with the reward of iniquity.” When this person received a reward for his evil deed, the first thing he did was acquire things to show off.

“And having fallen headlong ...” Let the reader pay attention: this was not an unmerited punishment from the Lord; this is the result of the person's evil deed. The punishment came upon the person when the person had committed the greatest sin, and that sin itself destroyed that person.

Q: Matthew 27:5-8 says that Judas threw the silver into the temple, and the chief priest took the pieces of silver and purchased the potter's field, while Acts 1:18 says that Judas himself acquired a field. **A:** What is the correct understanding of these two passages? The account in Matthew is a correct render of the events, and the account in Acts is incomplete.

19 And it became known to all those dwelling in Jerusalem; so that in their own language that field was called Akeldama, that is, Field of blood.)

20 For it has been written in the book of Psalms: Let his dwelling become desolate,
And let there be no one dwell in it:
and,
His office let another take.

Comments Acts 1:20 Cited from Psalm 69:25 and Psalm 109:8.

21 It behooves, therefore, of the men having accompanied us, during all the time that the Lord Jesus went in and went out among us,

22 having begun from the baptism of John, until the day in which He was taken up from us, one of these to become a witness with us of His resurrection.

Comments Acts 1:21-22 These verses tell all humans that the Lord knows whom He has in plan. As the verse says, until the beloved Son of God is taken up into heaven, He still has a plan for the work to be finished. The betrayer has been replaced with a worthy one, the one who knows the teaching and has a heart worthy to be counted in.

23 And they put forward two, Joseph called Barsabbas, who was called Justus, and Matthias.

Comments Acts 1:23 Human eyes and the Lord's eyes look at a person differently. Humans propose names, but the Lord chooses the heart. This verse is an example of the difference between humans and the Lord's ways of doing things.

24 And having prayed, they said, Thou, Lord, knower of the hearts of all, show which one of these two Thou has chosen,

25 to take the place in this ministry and apostleship, from which Judas turned aside to go to his own place.

Comments Acts 1:24-25 Let the readers pay attention to the fact that the apostles prayed. When anyone has questions or problems, come in prayer to the Lord. The Lord has all the answers for everyone, and if the person comes with true faith and is willing to obey, the answer will be given.

26 And they gave lots for them; and the lot fell on Matthias; and he was numbered with the eleven apostles.

Comments Acts 1:6 “And they gave lots for them.” For humans to avoid conflict at that time, they used a lot casting.

“And the lot fell on Matthias ...” The lot has been given from the guidance of the Lord, and the Lord has chosen the person out of it.

Q: Is the lot method still useful today when making similar decisions? **A:** If people have faith and use the lot method honestly with prayer, they can still use it.

Q: How did Joseph feel after not being chosen? **A:** When you read, be aware as well that these two persons had faith, and the hearts of both of them were willing to follow the Lord’s decision. People who trust the Lord will accept the result and will not have bad feelings for it.

Life and Faith Applications. 1) The blessing of the Father, the baptism in the Holy Spirit, comes on those who believe and follow the commandments; the patience of believers will reward those who obey. 2) When the believers join together, they must have one heart in glorifying the Lord, and the Lord will join them. 3) We must be willing to follow the call of the Lord from our hearts. 4) Believers can still use the lot method when necessary, but they must have faith and use it honestly and in prayer.

Acts 2

Summary. In this chapter, at the Pentecost, as the disciples were waiting in prayer, as instructed by the Lord Jesus, we witness the miracle of the promise of the Father: the gift of the Holy Spirit is poured on the Lord Jesus' disciples. **Acts 2:1-13**. The coming of the Holy Spirit. Here, we see that the Lord Jesus kept His promise to send “the promise of My Father upon you,” as stated in **Luke 24:49**. The mighty works of God have been manifested in this place. The Holy Spirit came upon the disciples, as they were gathered together in one place praying, in a powerful way by miraculous audible and visible signs and baptized all those gathered in that place, so they all started to speak in tongues and prophesy about the mighty works of God Almighty. People from all over the ancient world have witnessed the miraculous work of God. The power of God has no time or space limit, and the baptism in the Holy Spirit has been given to all, then and now, who seek and believe in the Lord Jesus Christ as being the Savior of the world. **Acts 2:14-36**. The sermon of Peter at Pentecost. Peter, an ordinary fisherman by occupation, was anointed by the power of the Holy Spirit and delivered a powerful message to all those gathered in Jerusalem. Peter testifies that the Lord Jesus, who was crucified and put to death by lawless men, was raised up in the body by God the Father, and He is the One who received from the Father the promise of the Holy Spirit, which He poured out on them as seen by all. The Lord Jesus, who was crucified, is Lord and Christ, seated at the right hand of God the Father, and has the power to save all those who believe in Him. **Acts 2:37-41**. Many believers are baptized and added to their number. The mighty power of God works in the hearts of people. When people repent and baptize in the water, then they will receive the promise of the Father if they seek it and are ready. Distance and time have no limit for the Lord; the gift of the Holy Spirit is available to all humans and all generations, past and future. **Acts 2:42-47**. The believers live in unity. The work of God is powerful throughout every generation of humans, and all people should be in awe at the mighty works of God. When believers join together and praise God Almighty together, the work of glorifying God Almighty begins among other people as well.

1 And in the day of Pentecost being fulfilled, they were all together in one place.

2 And suddenly came from heaven a sound as of the rushing of a mighty wind, and it filled all the house where they were sitting.

Comments Acts 2:1-2 “... they were all together in one place.” When believers join together in faith, the mighty work will happen.

“And suddenly came from heaven a sound as of the rushing of a mighty wind.” The Lord has created everything; as it is written, no one knows where the wind comes from and where it will go, and here in this place, the Lord comes with the mighty wind. See [Comments John 3:8](#).

“And it filled all the house where they were sitting.” When the wind filled up the place, all those who were in it were covered with the wind; the Lord would use everyone to do the work.

3 And there appeared to them tongues parting asunder, as of fire, and it sat upon each one of them.

Comments Acts 2:3 “And there appeared to them tongues parting asunder, as of fire.” Let all readers pay attention to what the mighty work the Lord performed here. When the fire comes upon a person, that person has received a gift. A special gift from the Father has been revealed here.

“And it sat upon each one of them.” The blessing from the Lord is unlimited; as many people gather, the blessing is enough for all.

Note: The human eye could see the shape of fire leaping above each person; this miracle strengthened the person who received this gift.

4 And they were all filled with the Holy Spirit, and began to speak in other tongues, as the Spirit was giving them utterance.

Comments Acts 2:4 “And they were all filled with the Holy Spirit.” Give attention to what the word says: all, not part, but all were filled with the gift from the Father.

“And began to speak in other tongues.” Here, it confirms the sign of the gift: when you are baptized with the Holy Spirit, the gift of other tongues also will be there. And this also shows humans that the will of the Lord has been spoken out for all to know.

Q: What type of tongues were given here as the sign of the baptism with the Holy Spirit? **A:** Human language does not need interpretation, but the angelic

language must be accompanied by interpretation. Here, the disciples spoke both angelic and human languages.

“As the Spirit was giving them utterance.” When the will of the Lord has been proclaimed, understanding will also come. When the word says, “giving them utterance,” that means they spoke in angelic languages and then translated into various human languages as the Spirit gave them utterance.

Here, utterance means a spoken word about the work of God.

5 Now there were dwelling in Jerusalem Jews, devout men, from every nation under heaven.

Comments Acts 2:5 In this verse it tells to all humans as well that the Lord has performed a miracle and everyone will notice the power of God.

“Jews, devout men.” These are a group of males who devoted themselves to searching for the truth about God.

“From every nation under heaven.” This generally means that all nations from under heaven were there and had seen the miracle.

6 Now this sound having happened, the multitude came together, and were confounded, because each one heard them speaking in his own language.

Comments Acts 2:6 “Now this sound having happened, the multitude came together, and were confounded.” In this place, when humans hear a mighty sound by ear, it has worked and stirred their minds to think, and their reaction of the heart from what they hear with their ear has stirred their hearts to think what truly happened. Now, their hearts are opened with eagerness to know the truth.

“Because each one heard them speaking in his own language.” Now, the wonder in their hearts has come to their heads: how these people can know their language; each person's heart has been touched by it.

Summary of what happened from verse 1 to verse 6:

The disciples were gathered together in one place, praying and waiting for the promise from the Father.

“Suddenly came from heaven a sound as of the rushing of a mighty wind.” The disciples and others heard this mighty sound, which drew attention to

itself, and people started to look where the sound came from. When the sound came, people looked to see where the loud sound came from.

“And there appeared to them tongues parting asunder.” These tongues of fire appeared only in the place where the disciples were praying. At this time, the disciples received the promised gift from the Father and were baptized with the Holy Spirit. They started to speak in angelic tongues and prophecy inside the place.

Then, the Holy Spirit stirred the disciples (all those gathered in the place praying) to go out and prophesy to people about the work of God. When they came out, they testified to people whom they met in those people's birth language, which amazed people and created confusion among them.

Confounded meaning: confused, perplexed.

7 Then they were all amazed and marvelled, saying, Behold, are not all these who speak Galileans?

8 And how do we hear everyone in our own language, in which we were born?

Comments Acts 2:7-8 This verse tells all humans that when each person hears their own birth language, the Word has worked in their hearts, and each head realizes that God is here.

9 Parthians, and Medes, and Elamites, and the dwellers in Mesopotamia, in Judaea and Cappadocia, in Pontus and Asia,

10 in Phrygia and Pamphylia, in Egypt and the parts of Libya about Cyrene, and those visiting from Rome, both Jews and converts,

11 Cretans and Arabs, we hear them speaking in our tongues the mighty works of God!

Comments Acts 2:9-11 As the verses tell all readers, the mighty works of God have been performed here. The people have experienced a miracle, and the Word of God has opened their hearts to think, and all who were there have come to one conclusion: God is there among people. What happened here has already been told in itself: this is the result of the disciples being baptized with the Holy Spirit.

Q: The baptism in the Holy Spirit is a completion of the salvation seal, which means that the human spirit has joined the salvation seal of the believer. And,

speaking in tongues is the sign for the believer that they received the baptism in the Holy Spirit (see [Comments Matthew 16:18](#), and [Comments John 1:33](#)). Why is it essential for a believer to have the baptism in the Holy Spirit and have their spirit join the salvation seal? **A:** The Lord God has a plan for that person when their spirit joins the salvation seal; the work from the will of the Father will be performed through that joining. See the examples in this chapter of Acts 2.

Q: What happens inside of us when a person repents and invites the Lord Jesus to live in their hearts? **A:** At this time, that person has much work to do before being able to get to the next level. Here, the Spirit of the Lord Jesus and the Holy Spirit are just checking and going through the person's soul.

Q: What happens inside of us when a person goes and baptizes in water? **A:** The person has started to walk in the step of completing and receiving both baptisms: in the water (the baptism of repentance) and in the Holy Spirit (the baptism of fulfillment).

Q: What happens inside of us when a person seeks and receives the baptism in the Holy Spirit? **A:** The spirit of the person joins the salvation seal.

For these questions, see also [Comments Matthew 16:18](#), and [Comments John 1:33](#). However, the baptism in the Holy Spirit can happen before the baptism in the water when the heart of that person is ready to seek and receive (See Acts 10).

12 Then they were all amazed, and were perplexed, saying one to another, What does this wish to be?

Comments Acts 2:12 In this place, people have seen miracles with themselves happening, and then the conflict between the head and the heart has been shown. A miracle cannot be understood by logic or the head; it can only be understood by faith.

13 But others mocking said, They are full with new wine.

14 However, Peter, standing up with the eleven, lifted up his voice, and spoke forth to them: Men of Judaea, and all those dwelling at Jerusalem, let this be known to you, and give ear to my words.

Comments Acts 2:14 “However, Peter, standing up with the eleven ...” After the apostles came back together, Peter stood up and spoke by the will of the Lord.

“Men of Judaea, and ... give ear to my words.” Peter has called out all's attention to listen to what the Lord's message is. At this point, the Lord is working among people who listen as well; when their ears hear, the work will begin in their hearts as well. It is important to pay attention to hearing the message.

15 For these are not drunken, as you suppose; for it is the third hour of the day;

Comments Acts 2:15 When people see a miracle that they cannot explain, they all try to find a way to justify the miracle. The only thing they can make themselves be pleased with is that these people speak out from the power of alcohol: the ability to speak comes out of the spirit of alcohol.

16 but this is that which has been spoken through the prophet Joel:

Comments Acts 2:16 Cited from Joel 2:28-32.

17 And it shall be in the last days, says God,
I will pour out of My Spirit upon all flesh:
And your sons and your daughters shall prophesy,
And your young men shall see visions,
And your elders shall dream dreams:

Comments Acts 2:17 “And it shall be in the last days, says God.” These are the last days before they turn to believe in God, when their hearts start to realize that God is real. Specifically, we mean that these last days refer to these days here in this place when the Holy Spirit was given to all humans.

“I will pour out of my Spirit upon all flesh.” The time will come when the Father will pour down the Holy Spirit to all true believers when the beloved Son has returned to heaven.

“And your sons and your daughters shall prophesy ... shall dream dreams.” This is part of the gifts the Father will give; no matter who you are or what

you are, if your heart is true to the Lord and your faith is firm, the gift will be poured down on you.

18 and even upon my male servants and upon my handmaidens
in those days I will pour out of My Spirit, and they shall prophesy.

Comments Acts 2:18 Let all readers link this verse to the verse before it, for the Lord does not look for the appearance or treasure of this earth; regardless of who you are, if your heart is true, come: the Lord receives you all.

Q: What does this gift of prophecy mean here? **A:** The select ones will receive a special gift: some by hearing, some by seeing, and some by heart telling; all these will bring the person to speak out about the mighty work of God.

19 And I will show wonders in the heaven above,
And signs on the earth below;
Blood, and fire, and vapor of smoke.

Comments Acts 2:19 Let all readers notice that this is a sign. The God of heaven will declare the sign that all humans will not understand. If the great sign is shown to humans when you read the Holy Word, why do humans not think and be afraid of what the real thing will be?

“Blood, and fire, and vapor of smoke.” First, think, who's blood is talking about in this place? Blood represents great death upon the earth. Fire, think, why will fire come? And how big will this fire be? The Bible also describes smoke coming out of God's nostrils; the breath of God Most High contains smoke and fire; the time will come when the earth must be cleaned, and God Most High will cleanse His earth with these.

20 The sun shall be turned into darkness,
And the moon into blood,
Before the day of the Lord comes,
That great and glorious.

Comments Acts 2:20 “The sun shall be turned into darkness ... That great and glorious.” When the beloved Son of God comes back to judge humans, all these signs will happen; His glory will shatter everything.

21 And it shall be, everyone, whoever shall call upon the name of the Lord will be saved.

Comments Acts 2:21 Disaster comes upon, but those who glorify the Living God will be saved; His glory will cover all true believers to protect them.

Note: Verses 17, 18, and 21 apply starting with the time when the Lord Jesus returned to heaven and sent the Holy Spirit on earth. Verses 19 to 21 apply to an unspecified length of time prior to the Lord's second return to earth.

22 Men of Israel, hear these words: Jesus of Nazareth, a Man approved by God to you by mighty works and wonders and signs, which God did by Him in the midst of you, even as you yourselves know;

Comments Acts 2:22 Hear all people! This verse tells you all about a Man, Jesus of Nazareth, who has been given by God the Father. He has shown many miracles and good works to the eyes of humans. Come to listen and think of Him before it is too late.

23 Him, being delivered up by the determinate plan and foreknowledge of God, having crucified, you put to death by lawless hands;

Comments Acts 2:23 The Son of God has been accused by His own people; the people of God themselves have chosen to disrespect their God.

“Being delivered up by the determinate plan and foreknowledge of God.” It was not in the plan of God for His people to do this, but the Lord allowed the dark mind to act in their way, which He foreknew.

“... having crucified, you put to death by lawless hands.” The leaders whose hearts had no law in them were the ones who decided whom to make decisions to crucify the Lord Jesus, meaning that the lawless leaders took the Lord Jesus to the lawless hands of Pilate.

24 whom God raised up, having loosed the agony of death, inasmuch as it was not possible for Him to be held by it.

Comments Acts 2:24 “Whom God raised up.” Take heart, all humans, here the Bible tells all: the Father has come to join with His Son, the great miracle has happened right now; the Father, the Creator of all, has raised up the beloved Son to life in the human body again. The Lord Jesus is now in the same human body with the Father.

“Having loosed the agony of death.” The beloved Son has tasted the pain of death in the human body. God of life has tasted death for all humans; right now, in His risen human body, when the moment of death, the pain of it, cannot hang on the Lord of Life: He defeated death for all.

“Inasmuch as it was not possible for Him to be held by it.” The beloved Son is the God of Life; the death cannot have hands to hold on Him.

25 For David says concerning Him,
I foresaw the Lord always before me,
Because He is on my right hand, that I should not be moved.

Comments Acts 2:25 “... I foresaw the Lord always before me.” This place also clearly tells all humans that the one who has faith in the Lord will always feel the Lord close by.

“Because He is on my right hand, that I should not be moved.” For the one who trusts in the Lord's mercy will always feel confident.

26 Because of this my heart was glad, and my tongue rejoiced;
And now my flesh also will dwell in hope,

Comments Acts 2:26 When you trust in the Lord your God, your heart will always rejoice, and no fear will come upon you; the heart that trusts in the Lord will feel joyful, as this verse has told. When you don't have fear, it means you have hope.

27 Because Thou will not leave my soul into Hades,
Nor will Thou allow Thy Holy One to see decay.

Comments Acts 2:27 “Because Thou will not leave my soul into Hades.” For the one truly faithful to the Lord God Almighty will experience the lifting up of the soul.

“Nor will Thou allow Thy Holy One to see decay.” “Thy Holy One” is the beloved Son of God who is the only “Thy Holy One.” The verse also tells the reader clearly that the flesh of the beloved One of God will never face decay.

28 Thou have made known to me the ways of life;
Thou will fill me with gladness with Thy presence.

Comments Acts 2:28 “Thou have made known to me the ways of life.” The Lord is the One who sets the path for a person, and here is the place that tells that the Lord sets the path for a person.

“Thou shall fill me with gladness with Thy presence.” When the Lord makes Himself known to someone, that person will have joy to feel that the Lord is near them.

29 Men, brothers! It is permitted to speak to you freely about the patriarch David, that he both died and was buried, and his tomb is among us unto this day.

Comments Acts 2:29 As the verse tells us, the Lord freely gives the opportunity and the words for a person to speak; when the person has faith in the guidance of the Lord, they will receive the knowledge as well.

30 Being therefore a prophet, and knowing that God swore with an oath to him, that out of the fruit of his loins to set upon His throne;

Comments Acts 2:30 As the verse tells us, God Almighty has a plan, and His plan will succeed. It also tells us that the beloved Son will come to be human; all the prophets had prophesied about this, and it will be fulfilled. God Almighty declared long ago about the coming of the beloved Son of God on earth.

“To set upon His throne.” His throne talks about the Lord's throne Himself.

31 having foreseen, he spoke concerning the resurrection of the Christ, that neither was He left into Hades, nor did His flesh see decay.

Comments Acts 2:31 “Having foreseen, he spoke concerning the resurrection of the Christ.” When the verse says foreseen, it is clear on its own as well. The Lord has told details regarding the Son.

“That neither was He left into Hades.” When the Lord was crucified as a human, He did not stay in Hades; the Hades have no power to hold Him there.

“Nor did His flesh see decay.” The beloved Son of God never died; His flesh is still human flesh and is with Him in heaven, where He belongs.

32 This Jesus God has raised up, whereof we all are witnesses;

Comments Acts 2:32 As the verse tells us, human witnesses have also stood firm that the beloved Son of God has been raised and is still with them.

33 therefore, having been exalted to the right hand of God, and having received from the Father the promise of the Holy Spirit, He has poured out this, which you also are seeing and hearing.

Comments Acts 2:33 “Therefore, having been exalted to the right hand of God.” Let all readers pay attention to what the verse says: the beloved Son belongs to the right hand of the Father; the God Most High and the Son are always together.

“And having received from the Father the promise of the Holy Spirit.” In this place, we see that what the Father has promised always will be fulfilled; now, the beloved Son of God has received the Spirit of the Father to go with Him wherever He will be. When we have given ourselves to the Son, He sees us, and His will is on us. When on earth the Holy Spirit was upon the beloved Son of God, and now, after the resurrection of the Lord Jesus, the Holy Spirit proceeds from the Father and through the Son and then comes to the earth.

“He has poured out this, which you also are seeing and hearing.” The love from the beloved Son is beyond measure; what He has received, He gives freely; for all who truly believe and are willing to follow, they will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit from the Son as well.

34 For David did not ascend into the heavens; however, he says himself:
The Lord said to my Lord,
Sit at my right hand,

Comments Acts 2:34 “For David did not ascend into the heavens.” The verse clearly states that David has not entered heaven yet; David’s soul is still in a resting place, at Abraham’s bosom. In this place, entering heaven means being in front of the throne of God the Father.

“However, he says himself: The Lord said to my Lord.” In this place, people give many meanings, but two kinds of Lords are mentioned here. The first “Lord” refers to the Father, and the second “Lord” to the Lord Jesus.

“Sit at my right hand.” In this place, the Father has given authority to the Son to sit by His right hand.

Q: How can we understand the concept of the Son Jesus Christ sitting at the right hand of the Father? **A:** When the word says “sit at My right hand,” it does not mean sitting in a human way as sitting on a chair, but it means that the authority power on the judgment day has been given to the Son as well; the Lord Jesus is on the right hand of the Father with equal power to judge, but under the authority of the Father as well, the judgment, when announced, the Father also approves it.

35 Until I place Thine enemies the footstool of Thy feet.

Comments Acts 2:35 “Until I place Thine enemies.” “I place” means to put all the enemies of the beloved Son of God in a place designated for them by the Father. “Until”: Before reaching this point, all of these enemies have already been in a torture chamber.

“The footstool of Thy feet.” All those who did not come to glorify the beloved Son of God will be considered enemies; all their souls will be placed down at the footstool of the beloved Son, which is not a resting place but a place of suffering and waiting to be punished.

36 Let all the house of Israel therefore know assuredly, that God has made Him both Lord and Christ, this Jesus whom you crucified.

Comments Acts 2:36 “... this Jesus whom you crucified.” All readers pay attention: as the verse says, the beloved Son has been crucified. So, all should have a firm belief that the beloved Son of God has given up His human life for all humans; come and receive the gift from Him; don't let your dark mind hold you away from the Light.

“God has made Him both Lord and Christ.” Because of the sacrifice the beloved Son has taken, the Father surrenders Himself to the love His Son has shown for humans. And now, the Father has put the Son on His right-hand side to be the Christ for all humans.

37 Now having heard, they were pierced to the heart, and they said to Peter and the remaining apostles, Men, brothers, what shall we do?

Comments Acts 2:37 “Now having heard, they were pierced to the heart.” As the verse says, the truth will set you free, and this is the place of proof for it; when people hear the truth about God, their hearts are stirred by the Holy Spirit, and the work of God will be magnified among people.

“And they said to Peter ... what shall we do?” When the work of God begins in the hearts of humans, the question will come of how to make it right with God, and their hearts will want to know the right way and the right thing to do to make amendments with God.

38 And Peter to them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you, in the name of Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of your sins, and you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit.

Comments Acts 2:38 “And Peter to them, Repent ... your sins.” The verse tells us who can give you forgiveness, the Lord Jesus Christ. Open your heart and open your mouth to glorify the Lord, and make yourself ready.

“And you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit.” The gift of God, the most powerful, the gift of the Holy Spirit will be given to you, be ready. You repent and receive the baptism of repentance in the water first, and then the Holy Spirit will come to baptize you if you seek it and are ready.

39 For to you is the promise, and to your children, and to all those afar off, as many as the Lord our God shall call to Him.

Comments Acts 2:39 “For to you is the promise, and to your children, and to all those afar off.” Give heart to what the verse says: the Father always fulfills His promise; the promise of the Mighty Power, the Holy Spirit, will be given to all that search and glorify the beloved Son of God with all their hearts.

“And to all those afar off.” Those “afar off” in this place mean not only those within the distance around the earth itself; the God Almighty's presence is everywhere, not just this earth but the universe as well; time and distance have no limit for Him.

“As many as the Lord our God shall call to Him.” The distance, north, east, south, west, has no end; The Lord will call all who truly believe and give their hearts to Him.

Q: Is the baptism in the Holy Spirit limited by time, meaning it was given only to the apostle era? **A:** There is no time limit for the gift of the Holy Spirit to come. The verse also says that the promise is for “those afar off,” so distance and time are no limit for the gift.

Q: Some say that the baptism in the Holy Spirit with prophesies and tongues had seized with the completion of the Bible canon. Is this view correct? **A:** This thinking of humans has limited the power of God. God Almighty, who created all things has no limit of power.

Q: What is the benefit for a believer to have the baptism in the Holy Spirit these days? **A:** For the believer nowadays to see or experience the baptism in the Holy Spirit will help the true believer to understand and feel closer to the God all Maker; the dwelling of the Holy Spirit in the heart of the believer who received the baptism in the Holy Spirit will remain active even if the person's heart becomes cold toward Him, He still resides there and is waiting. (See also Comments John 1:33).

40 And many other words he affirmed, and was exhorting them, saying, Be saved from this crooked generation.

Comments Acts 2:40 “And many other words he affirmed, and was exhorting them.” The Word of God has been revealed to people, and the Word has worked in the people's hearts. The hearts of people have come to realize that God has never left them.

“Be saved from this crooked generation.” As the verse reveals, the crooked generation makes the people's hearts worry and feel bad. Peter advises all hearts to return to the Word of God and seek advice.

41 Therefore, those, indeed, having received his word were baptized, and there were added in that day, about three thousand souls.

Comments Acts 2:41 “... having received his word were baptized.” In this place, it clearly shows that when people's hearts are opened to receive the word, the soft hearts will also receive the blessing. They received the water baptism at this point, but more blessings in the Spirit will also come.

“... about three thousand souls.” Give attention to the amount of souls that came; the amount and the time are no limits for the work of God.

42 And they were steadfastly continuing in the apostles' teaching and fellowship, in the breaking of the bread and the prayers.

Comments Acts 2:42 As the verse says, all people have one heart in faith with God and continue receiving the Communion of the Lord with joy together.

43 Then fear came upon every soul, and many wonders and signs were done through the apostles.

Comments Acts 2:43 Not only should the people in that time be in awe, but the ones who read right now should feel that as well; the work of God is powerful throughout every generation of humans.

44 And all who believed were together the same and having all things in common;

Comments Acts 2:44 Let all readers notice that when the Lord works among people, the hearts will be in unity together, and selfishness has no room to be among true believers for the human mind to give their possession to the group of people as giving it for work in worship share to all.

45 and they sold their possessions and goods, and distributed them to all, according as anyone had need.

Comments Acts 2:45 This verse tells us what all believers should do to one another; everything belongs to the Lord, so share with those in need as the Lord puts in your heart.

Q: Should believers today practice this way of living in common? **A:** The will of the Lord is for everyone to live like this, but the world cannot accept this way.

46 And every day steadfastly continuing with one accord in the temple, and breaking bread at every house, they partook food with gladness and sincerity of heart,

Comments Acts 2:46 “And every day steadfastly continuing with one accord in the temple.” The Lord always works in people's hearts to come and worship the Lord together.

“And breaking bread at every house.” The Lord always wants the believers to share the Holy Bread of Life together; here, it is a sharing custom, and people take turns hosting it.

“They partook food with gladness and sincerity of heart, ...” Take notice of the last part of the verse itself; the heart is the place to look for; when believers join together, the heart is the part that will be counted.

47 praising God, and having favor with all the people. And the Lord added to them every day those that were saved.

Comments Acts 2:47 “... praising God, and having favor with all the people.” When believers join together and praise God Almighty together, the work of glorifying God Almighty begins among other people as well.

“And the Lord added ...” When believers glorify God together, the power of prayer works and people around can also feel; that is why the people should come to join together, not because of having fun but having joy in worshiping the Lord, and as the verse tells their number multiplied daily.

Life and Faith Applications. 1) Pray with other believers and seek the baptism in the Holy Spirit; it is the will of the Father that the sign of the baptism in the Holy Spirit is by speaking in other tongues, which can be angelic tongues. 2) We must believe in the testimony of the Bible about the Lord Jesus: He is Lord and Christ, and He was crucified for our transgressions and has risen in the body and is seated at the Father’s right hand. 3) Testify about the works of God as the Lord brings opportunity; when a person has faith, the Lord freely gives the words and knowledge. 4) We must continue steadfastly in the Bible teachings, the fellowship of the believers, and the Communion of the Lord and the prayers.

Acts 9

Summary. In this chapter, the Lord calls to faith His chosen apostle to the Gentiles, calls His worker to pray for His chosen apostle, and the Lord starts to magnify His power in the church throughout all of Judea, Galilee, and Samaria, so the Lord sent Peter to strengthen the believers in these churches and teach them how to worship the Lord God Almighty. **Acts 9:1-9.** Saul meets the Lord Jesus on the road to Damascus. The dark forces started to interrupt the work of the Lord God Almighty by using Saul to commit evil deeds. On the road to Damascus, the blessed man experienced a miracle from the Father Himself; the light from the Lord shone upon the worker, and the Lord Jesus called Saul for work. **Acts 9:10-19.** Ananias prays for Saul to be filled with the Holy Spirit. The Lord Jesus appears in a vision to Ananias and gives him specific orders to go and pray for Saul to be healed and filled with the Holy Spirit. From great mercy, the Lord God Almighty has chosen Saul to be His apostle and spread the Word of God to the Gentiles. **Acts 9:20-25.** Saul proclaims the Lord Jesus in Damascus. Saul's body strength returned, which made his heart have positive faith in the Lord God Almighty; he acted according to the faith he received and had no fear left in his heart to proclaim the good news about the Lord Jesus Christ to people; however, the Jews plotted to kill him, but the Lord God Almighty was with him and helped him to escape their plot. **Acts 9:26-30.** Saul proclaims the Lord Jesus in Jerusalem. The Lord guided Saul to go and join His disciples in Jerusalem. Saul began to proclaim the Lord Jesus Christ as Savior to all the people he met; the Lord God Almighty had chosen this new disciple for a great work among all believers. Here, the Hellenists sought to kill Saul; however, the brothers took him away to safety. **Acts 9:31-32.** Peter ministers to the church throughout Judea, Galilee, and Samaria. By the Lord's guidance, the apostle of the Lord God Almighty came to these chosen areas, where he taught; thereby, the Lord used him to grow the church in faith. **Acts 9:33-35.** In Lydda, the Lord heals Aeneas. The beloved Son of God showed His power to the humans at this time through the apostle. Simple order with the mercy of the heart, in the name of the Lord Jesus, and the man who had been lying sick on a bed for a long time was healed. **Acts 9:36-43.** In Joppa, the Lord raises Dorcas from the dead. In Joppa, Peter prayed to the Lord by the body of a kind-hearted woman, Dorcas, and then, with the word of authority, commanded the body to wake up. The Lord God Almighty was in the apostle's mouth to perform the

miracle in the eyes of those present, and the dead person woke up again. With miracles, people's hearts come and worship the Lord God Almighty.

1 But Saul, still breathing threatening and slaughter toward the disciples of the Lord, having gone to the high priest,

Comments Acts 9:1 The dark started the work to interrupt the work of the Lord God Almighty by using this man to do evil deeds, but the dark didn't know the Lord wanted to use this man to spread the Word of God.

2 asked from him letters to Damascus to the synagogues, so that if he found any being of the Way, both men and women, he might bring them bound to Jerusalem.

Comments Acts 9:2 “Asked from him letters to Damascus ...” The purpose of the dark is to fight against the Lord God Almighty by using humans. The dark has a certain mindset that the Lord God Almighty loves humans and will not harm them. If the dark uses humans to fight, they believe they will win because the Lord God Almighty's love cannot be changed.

“So that if he found any being of the Way ...” This part of the verse tells us clearly that the dark targets only the children of the Lord God Almighty; whoever has shown faith in the Lord God Almighty will be the target of the dark for torture.

3 And in the going, it came to pass, he drew near to Damascus, and suddenly shined around him a light out of heaven;

Comments Acts 9:3 “And in the going ...” This is a specific place and time for the Lord God Almighty to perform the miracle in guiding His worker.

“And suddenly shined around him ...” The blessed man had experienced the miracle from the Father Himself; the light from the Lord God Almighty shone upon the worker; this light was also significant in pointing out the work this person would do. This light is the light from the Father, the God of Three in One; this light includes the beloved Son of God and the Holy Spirit as well; the magnificent light from the Father has appeared to this human.

4 and having fallen on the ground, he heard a voice saying to him, Saul, Saul, why do you persecute Me?

Comments Acts 9:4 “And having fallen on the ground.” Take notice of the power which is so mighty: when the Lord God Almighty has shined His light

upon this human, the heart has made the person have no power and energy to stand up but fall down to the ground. In front of the power coming from the Lord God Almighty, humans who come from the ground cannot stand up but must be at the same level as the ground.

“He heard a voice saying to him ...” This question is not condemning the person but reminding the person to think about what he is doing; now, the mind of this man starts to think about what he has done, and the reason of the heart will also come out with this question.

5 Then he said, Who are You, Lord? Now, I am Jesus whom you persecute,

Comments Acts 9:5 The beloved Son of God, Jesus Christ, has pronounced Himself to the person that He chose to be His servant. By letting this person know who He is, it also declares what duty this servant will be.

6 but rise up, and enter into the city, and it will be told you what it behooves you to do.

Comments Acts 9:6 “But rise up, and enter into the city.” The beloved Son of God had given straight directions and commandments where the servant should go.

“And it will be told you ...” The duty of this servant will be announced at the right time of a meeting.

7 And the men traveling with him stood speechless, hearing indeed the voice, but seeing no one.

Comments Acts 9:7 “And the men traveling with him stood speechless.” The miracle to be noticed happened in front of more humans, and these humans could not even speak out; the voice to express fear or amazement couldn't come out of their throats because of the miracle they had experienced.

“Hearing indeed the voice, but seeing no one.” When humans hear a voice but see no one speak, that makes the heart shudder; when human hearts are in shock, it also makes the mind stop thinking.

8 Then, Saul arose from the ground, and his eyes having been opened, he saw nothing; then, leading him by hand, they brought him to Damascus.

Comments Acts 9:8 “Then, Saul arose from the ground.” The person the Lord chose to do the work got up from the ground at this time.

“And his eyes having been opened ...” The eyes had been closed by the power of the Lord God Almighty; this blindness was not a punishment, but the leading for work would accompany this hardship. When a person has experienced the hardship of physical suffering, they will rely on the Lord God Almighty more than on their own knowledge.

“Then, leading him by hand ...” When the eyes could not see, he would be led by someone else to the place where the Lord God Almighty had appointed him to be.

9 And he was three days without sight, and neither did he eat nor drink.

Comments Acts 9:9 This hardship made the man to be humble; this hardship did not damage the body. The Lord God Almighty has a way to tame the man to be humble.

10 Now there was a certain disciple in Damascus, named Ananias; and the Lord said to him in a vision, Ananias. And he said, Behold, I am here, Lord.

Comments Acts 9:10 The Lord God Almighty used His disciple who believed and had faith to do the important work as well; He commanded this disciple to travel to another place for work; if the person did not trust in the order, he would not do the job until the end.

11 And the Lord said to him, Having risen up, go to the street called Straight, and inquire in the house of Judas of one named Saul, of Tarsus; for behold, he is praying;

Comments Acts 9:11 “And the Lord said to him ...” The work needs to succeed, so the Lord God Almighty gives details to the point where the disciple should go to succeed in the work.

“And inquire in the house of Judas ...” The verse clearly tells whom to find and what the person is doing; the man praying to the Lord God Almighty, with an honest heart, makes the work come to him easy and fast. The Lord God Almighty chose the man because of his heart, not his ability.

12 and he saw a man named Ananias, having come and having laid the hands on him, so that he might receive sight.

Comments Acts 9:12 “And he saw a man named Ananias ...” The worker of the Lord God Almighty also received the gift of vision as well; with human eyes, he could see what would come to him. The Lord God Almighty has shown to His worker the man, the name, and the action that will come, and he will receive the healing; but also, he must realize that not the man is the one who heals him, but the Lord God Almighty is the One who is healing him.

“So that he might receive sight.” The Lord God Almighty will provide this healing for him; it will be instantaneous, restoring him to his former state.

13 But Ananias answered, Lord, I have heard from many about this man, how much evils he did to Thy saints in Jerusalem;

Comments Acts 9:13 “But Ananias answered ...” The Lord God Almighty had been a point of attack from many people at that time; here, as it has been told, people heard what this man did and said; the blasphemous things he has said about the Lord God Almighty have been witnessed.

“How much evils he did ...” The verse clearly states that the person committed many evil acts; the children of the Lord God Almighty have faced difficulties, both physical and mental, and the family has also suffered hardship due to this person's deeds.

14 and here he has authority from the chief priests to bind all who call on Thy Name.

Comments Acts 9:14 “And here he has authority from the chief priests.” These persons, the chief priests, who were supposed to be the Lord God Almighty's servants, have given bad orders. But the people who receive orders need to think as well: right and wrong order is also in the mind of the person who will commit to doing the work; therefore, if you receive orders to do evil deeds and those orders have made your heart not at peace, then you also need to pray and seek advice from the Lord God Almighty before acting out.

“To bind all who call on Thy Name.” The people who believe in the Lord God Almighty, because they have acted according to the teachings of the Lord God Almighty, the action against them is not only directed at them alone; this order goes against the Lord God Almighty Himself, as the people whom they want to arrest are the people who worship Him.

15 However, the Lord said to him, Go, for he is a chosen vessel to Me, to bear My Name before the Gentiles, and also kings, and the sons of Israel;

Comments Acts 9:15 “However, the Lord said to him, Go.” The Lord God Almighty pointed out the time and place to work, and success will come; when the Lord God Almighty told him to go, also, that means do not delay to make the time not fit in.

“For he is a chosen vessel to Me.” In the eyes of the Lord God Almighty, He has seen His chosen already where he is; the time to work for His servant has come; now, in the right moment of time and situation, the chosen will work properly.

“To bear My Name before ...” The chosen one has a difficult work to come ahead, to tell the outside about the work of the Lord God Almighty, but the work for His own children will be harder to do than the work with the outsiders.

16 for I will show him how many things he must suffer for My Name.

Comments Acts 9:16 From great mercy, the Lord God Almighty has chosen him to be His apostle, and in this, he will do the work greater for the Lord than against; the Lord God Almighty saw his heart that is faithful; the work in spreading the gospel among people will achieve more towards all.

17 And Ananias went away, and entered into the house; and having laid the hands on him said, Brother Saul, the Lord, Jesus, the One having appeared to you on the road by which you came, has sent me, that you may receive sight, and be filled with the Holy Spirit.

Comments Acts 9:17 “And Ananias went away ...” The Lord God Almighty leads him to the house which He (the Lord) has to work upon; the mighty work will begin with this task at hand.

“And having laid the hands on him ...” The beloved Son of God, Jesus Christ, confirms to this apostle that He is the one calling him for work.

“That you may receive sight, and be filled with the Holy Spirit.” By laying hands on him, the Holy Spirit came and baptized him; the healing began in the man, and he became the apostle of the Lord, who had received the gift and would go to spread the good news to people.

Q: In Romans 11:13, Paul writes that he is an apostle to the Gentile; the Lord Jesus had only twelve apostles; what is the difference between Paul's position and the twelve apostles' position? **A:** Paul was not part of the twelve apostles, but he was called to do miracle work. The twelve apostles have a duty to proclaim the gospel throughout the human race, but the apostles, other than these, have a duty to serve from the direct order of the beloved Son of God, Jesus Christ, to do the work among the outsiders.

18 And straightway fell from his eyes as it were scales, and he received his sight; and having risen up, he was baptized;

Comments Acts 9:18 The beloved Son of God performed miracle work for His chosen one; when the man's eyes were freed, and he could see, his work also began with the sight of his eyes. The next step for the true believer was to spread the good news.

19 and having taken food, he was strengthened. Now he was some days with the disciples in Damascus.

Comments Acts 9:19 “And having taken food, he was strengthened.” The body is weak when you fast, but that weak body makes your heart stay firm in the teaching of God Almighty; the fasting shows humbleness towards the Lord God Almighty, and that also will bring blessings for your own soul.

“Now he was some days ...” The chosen one spent time among believers, which also created love in knowing about the power of the Lord God Almighty. Spending time together among believers, the ear will hear more good news about the Lord, and that good news will produce fruit in life.

20 And straightway in the synagogues he proclaimed Jesus, that He is the Son of God.

Comments Acts 9:20 “And straightway in the synagogues.” In the old times, the synagogue was the place for telling about the Lord God Almighty; the Lord God Almighty stirred the heart of the chosen one to proclaim the Lord God Almighty in these places as well.

“He proclaimed Jesus, that He is the Son of God.” When the heart is honest and receives the teaching, the disciple proclaims the beloved Son of God,

Jesus Christ, to be God for all humans, and now the chosen one with a firm heart proclaims the beloved Son of God in public.

21 Then all who heard him were amazed, and said, Is not this the one having ravaged in Jerusalem those calling on this Name? And he had come here for this, that he might bring them bound to the chief priests.

Comments Acts 9:21 “Then all who heard him ...” The Lord God Almighty's disciple had behaved in many ways against the Lord but did not have hatred toward people whom he had harmed; in his heart, he wanted to be the best in his position, even by doing things that he himself did not fully agree, but when the heart let the power of this world influence it the reason for right and wrong had disappeared.

“And he had come here for this ...” The chief priests had authority among humans, and at that time, the chosen one was serving human leaders and did his best to get the earthly benefits; even though deep in his heart he had no hatred, but his actions went against the heart, and the Lord God Almighty sees his actions and also his heart at the same time as well.

22 But Saul increased all the more in strength, and confounded the Jews who dwelt in Damascus, proving that this is the Christ.

Comments Acts 9:22 “But Saul increased all the more in strength.” The human body is a miracle of recovery; after rest and proper food, the body regains its strength; this is the way the Lord God Almighty created the human body to fight against fatigue. Without body strength, spiritual strength won't come that easy.

“And confounded the Jews ...” The body's strength returned, which made the heart of the chosen one have positive faith in the Lord God Almighty; when body and heart received the strength back, the chosen one acted according to the faith he received and had no fear left in his heart to proclaim the good news about the Lord Jesus Christ to people.

23 And when many days had passed, the Jews plotted together to kill him;

Comments Acts 9:23 The dark worked among his people to make a plan to kill the chosen one; the chosen one would work for the Lord God Almighty, which made the enemy of light angry toward him.

24 but their plot became known to Saul. And they also watched the gates both day and night that they might kill him;

Comments Acts 9:24 The chosen one learned of the enemy's plan against him, which made him stay put and wait for the right time to escape. The Lord God Almighty would guide the chosen one to escape their hands.

25 however, his disciples having taken him by night, they let him down through the wall, lowering him in a basket.

Comments Acts 9:25 The Lord God Almighty has stirred people's hearts to help the disciple to escape even if the way was not natural, but the danger in the way of the escape also would stir the heart of the disciple; the position hanging from the wall in the basket, made the disciple put more trust in the Lord God Almighty.

26 Then, having come in Jerusalem, he attempted to join the disciples; and all were afraid of him, not believing that he is a disciple.

Comments Acts 9:26 "Then, having come in Jerusalem ..." The Lord God Almighty guided his heart to go and join with His disciples; in his heart, the fear also happened at this time that he would not be welcomed because of his deeds in the past.

"And all were afraid of him ..." Everybody had knowledge of this new disciple's deeds in the past, and nobody trusted that he was a true disciple and had truly given his heart to the Lord God Almighty, becoming a good disciple for everyone.

27 However, Barnabas having taken him, brought him to the apostles, and he declared to them how he had seen the Lord on the road, and that He had spoken to him, and how in Damascus he had spoken boldly in the name of Jesus.

Comments Acts 9:27 "However, Barnabas having taken him ..." The Lord God Almighty stirred up the man of faith (Barnabas) to bring the new disciples (Saul) to His disciples.

"And he declared to them ..." The new disciple had been a witness of the risen Lord by telling His disciples that the Lord God Almighty's beloved Son had spoken to him in a simple place. The place is not the limit for the Lord to speak, but the heart is the limit; the Lord God Almighty will come to meet all

of you in your heart regardless of where you are because the heart is the best place to meet and worship the Lord.

“And how in Damascus he had spoken ...” The Lord God Almighty had ignited the fire in this new disciple; as it is written, he spoke boldly, telling all that listen how merciful the Lord God Almighty is for the sinner.

28 And he was with them coming in and going out in Jerusalem, speaking boldly in the name of the Lord;

Comments Acts 9:28 “And he was with them coming in ...” The new disciple had joined the disciples of the Lord and started to feel welcome among them; the Lord God Almighty had brought His disciples together for work.

“Speaking boldly in the name of the Lord.” The new disciple, with a whole heart full of faith, proclaimed the Lord Jesus Christ as Savior to all people that he met; the Lord God Almighty had chosen this new disciple for a great work among all believers.

29 also, he spoke and disputed against the Hellenists; but they were seeking to kill him.

Comments Acts 9:29 The new disciple of the Lord God Almighty spoke wholeheartedly from his belief against those who believe differently, and this made the dark minds angry, and they wanted to kill him.

30 However, the brothers having known it, brought him down to Caesarea, and sent him away to Tarsus.

Comments Acts 9:30 The believers in the Lord God Almighty had one heart and mind together and wanted to help the new disciple escape; one heart, one mind, had taken the new disciple away to safety.

31 Then, indeed, the church throughout all of Judea and Galilee and Samaria had peace, being edified, and, going on in the fear of the Lord and in the comfort of the Holy Spirit, was multiplied.

Comments Acts 9:31 “Then, indeed, the church throughout ...” The Lord God Almighty has chosen the places to magnify His power; humans will start and learn to worship the Lord God Almighty at this time.

“And, going on in the fear of the Lord ...” When the hearts were opened to receive the Lord God Almighty that had made the Holy Spirit dwell and show His power in leading people to worship the Lord God Almighty and the people were blessed with faith in the Lord God Almighty; the knowledge of the Lord God Almighty would be spread out among people more, the people with true hearts had been touched, and the faith multiplied among people.

32 And it came to pass that Peter passing through all, he came down also to the saints living in Lydda.

Comments Acts 9:32 “And it came to pass that Peter passing through all.” The apostle of the Lord God Almighty also came to these areas by the Lord's guidance; he went throughout teaching, which made more disciples grow in faith. The Lord God Almighty planned to multiply the disciples in this area, starting with the apostle coming to help the people.

“He came down also ...” When the apostle stayed among the people, it would make them see what the true way of worshiping the Lord God Almighty should be. The Lord God Almighty helped the disciple to perform miracles among the people.

33 And there he found a certain man named Aeneas, who had been lying sick on a bed for eight years, who was paralyzed.

Comments Acts 9:33 “And there he found a certain man named Aeneas.” The apostle found the person who needed help, and the Lord God Almighty wanted to show him the miracle of healing.

“Who had been lying sick on a bed ...” As the verse tells us, the person was in bad condition for a long time, but the Lord God Almighty saw him and wanted to heal him.

34 And Peter said to him, Aeneas, Jesus Christ heals you: rise up and make your bed. And straightway he arose.

Comments Acts 9:34 “And Peter said to him ...” The beloved Son of God showed His power to the humans at this time through the apostle. Simple order with the mercy of the heart and the man was healed; there was no need for anyone to help, just the order alone, and the body recovered, and the man was healed.

“And straightway he arose.” Give attention as well to the condition and the time the body has not been used, but with the command from the Lord God Almighty, the human body recovered instantly.

35 And all those living in Lydda and Sharon saw him, who turned to the Lord.

Comments Acts 9:35 The testimony and the miracle work had been performed in this area; people who witnessed it had turned their hearts to have faith in the Lord God Almighty.

36 Now there was in Joppa a certain disciple named Tabitha, which translated is called Dorcas; she was full of good works and alms which she did.

Comments Acts 9:36 In the area, one woman stood out among all, not because of her good deeds but because her heart, full of faith, had made her behave differently than them. Her name has been mentioned because of the good heart she had. All readers should think and take this as an example for themselves: the Lord God Almighty sees the true heart and will lift you up above all.

37 However, it came to pass in those days, that she fell sick, and died; and having washed her, they laid her in an upper chamber.

Comments Acts 9:37 The kind-hearted woman fell sick and died; people mourning this loss have prepared her body according to tradition and left it at rest, waiting in an upper room.

38 And as Lydda was near to Joppa, the disciples, having heard that Peter was in it, sent two men to him, beseeching, Delay not coming to us.

Comments Acts 9:38 “And as Lydda was near to Joppa ...” The disciples of the Lord heard that the apostle was close by and had sent chosen men to inquire about the apostle to come.

“Delay not coming to us.” The men were also rushing the apostle to come quickly without delay because the dead body would not stay but would decompose rapidly; they were urging the apostle to come without delay.

39 And Peter, having risen up, went with them, who having come, brought him into the upper chamber; and all the widows stood by him weeping, and showing the tunics and garments which Dorcas made, while she was with them.

Comments Acts 9:39 “And Peter, having risen up ...” With hope to seek help at this moment, the people coming to the apostle had faith in the Lord God Almighty.

“And all the widows stood by him weeping ...” The poor women, without husbands, had worked hard with the faithful women in doing good things for people; weeping with sadness of heart, they showed the apostle all the good deeds the good woman had done while staying with them.

40 Then Peter, having put them all outside and having bowed the knees, he prayed; and having turned to the body, he said, Tabitha, arise! And she opened her eyes; and having seen Peter, she sat up.

Comments Acts 9:40 “Then Peter, having put them all outside ...” The first thing the apostle did was humble himself, go down to the ground, and beg mercy from the Lord God Almighty in prayer.

“And having turned to the body ...” The apostle, with the word of authority, commanded the body to wake up; the Lord God Almighty was in the apostle's mouth to perform the miracle in people's eyes; the dead woke up again.

“And she opened her eyes ...” The living woke up and saw the apostle; her heart had received the power from the Lord God Almighty and helped her body to be able to do things as normal again.

41 Then having given her his hand, he raised her up; and calling the saints and the widows, he presented her living.

Comments Acts 9:41 “Then having given her his hand ...” When the apostle gave out the hand to the poor woman, the Lord God Almighty also went with that hand.

“And calling the saints ...” The apostle called out to all the people who were there to be witnesses in the miracle of the Lord God Almighty: to raise the dead it is only by the miracle hand of the Lord God Almighty; for all humans, when the life ends, only by the will of the Lord God Almighty one can be alive again.

42 And it became known throughout all Joppa; and many believed on the Lord.

Comments Acts 9:42 “And it became known throughout all Joppa.” Now, at this place, the Lord God Almighty has shown a miracle to bring the people's hearts back to Him again; the news of this miracle will be proclaimed further than this area itself.

“And many believed on the Lord.” With miracles, people's hearts come and worship the Lord God Almighty. This miracle worked in people's hearts, and it will also work on their children and future generations.

43 And it came to pass, he abode many days in Joppa with a certain one Simon, a tanner.

Comments Acts 9:43 The Lord God Almighty picked a simple man to host the apostle; with simple hearts and simple minds, the work of the Lord God Almighty will succeed and spread out more in this town.

Life and faith Applications. 1) We should all examine our faith and pray to see if we are on some road to Damascus ourselves, persecuting the Lord Jesus in some way. 2) When the Holy Spirit calls us for some work, we should obey immediately without delay. 3) We should be bold in our faith and proclaim the Lord Jesus, as guided by the Holy Spirit, to those that the Lord brings in our path. 4) Believe in the miracle work that the Lord performed through the apostles' hands in the name of the Lord Jesus; also, believe that through the gifts of the Holy Spirit, miracles are still happening these days.

Acts 10

Summary. In this chapter, we see miracles from the Lord God Almighty happening: visions are given to Cornelius, an outsider, and Peter, the apostle, and the miracle of the Holy Spirit baptism with speaking in tongues is given to the Gentiles. **Acts 10:1-8**. Cornelius' vision. Cornelius, a faithful man, was chosen by the Lord God Almighty to receive the good news about the Lord Jesus Christ through Peter the apostle. So, an angel of God came to him in a vision and directed him to call Peter to his house. **Acts 10:9-16**. Peter's vision. The Lord God Almighty prepares Peter for the miracle work that is ahead of him; the Lord God Almighty gives him a vision of a vessel full of creatures coming down from heaven to show him that He is no respecter of persons and He loves all and wants His Son Jesus Christ to be proclaimed to all for the salvation of their souls. **Acts 10:17-23**. Peter meets the men sent by Cornelius. The Holy Spirit gives orders to Peter about the men sent by Cornelius, and the peace comes to his heart and his mind. Peter talks to the men, and he now understands the vision: the Lord God Almighty wants him to proclaim the Lord Jesus Christ to the Gentiles. **Acts 10:24-33**. Peter meets Cornelius. Cornelius, a faithful man, gathers all his own family and friends to hear the good news from the apostle. At the house of Cornelius, the Lord teaches Peter that He loves all humans He has created, and the purpose of joining with foreigners counts to the Lord, not the fact that they are foreigners. **Acts 10:34-43**. Peter proclaims the Lord Jesus Christ to those at the house of Cornelius. Peter, as a witness to the work of the Lord Jesus on earth, of His death on the cross, of His burial, of His resurrection from the dead on the third day, and of His sending of the Holy Spirit, testifies to the house of Cornelius that God the Father has ordained the Lord Jesus as Judge of the living and the dead. **Acts 10:44-46**. The Holy Spirit falls on those listening to Peter. The Gentiles received the Holy Spirit, which was a miraculous event for them. The Holy Spirit is a miracle from God Almighty, and all believers in the Lord Jesus will receive the blessings if their hearts are open. When the Holy Spirit falls upon someone, that person will also receive the gift of speaking in tongues; this miracle will strengthen their faith. **Acts 10:47-48**. Those being baptized in the Holy Spirit are being baptized in the water. To fulfill the salvation of their souls, these people were baptized in the water in the name of the Trinity of God.

1 Now a certain man in Caesarea, named Cornelius, was a centurion of the band that is called the Italian,

2 devout and fearing God with all his household, doing many alms to the people, and praying to God always.

Comments Acts 10:2 “Devout and fearing God with all his household.” The proper man who can guide his own family to glorify the Lord God Almighty, all readers should take this as an example.

“Doing many alms to the people ...” This part of the verse tells the character of a faithful man who searches for guidance from the Lord God Almighty, giving alms and praying; that is the way a man of a house should do; when a man behaves and leads the family this way, the blessing also will be there for the household.

3 He saw in a vision clearly, as if about the ninth hour of the day, an angel of God coming to him, and saying to him, Cornelius!

Comments Acts 10:3 The Lord God Almighty had a purpose to use this person for work, and He showed Himself to him in order to give the command; the good deeds and good heart of this person have been seen from above.

4 And he, having looked intently on him, and having become afraid, said, What is it, Lord? Then he said to him, Your prayers and your alms have ascended as a memorial before God.

Comments Acts 10:4 When human eyes have seen the heavenly host, the heart becomes frightened, but the person also feels the joy of the soul; with fear in heart, his mouth still asks about the purpose of this visit and also wants to know what he himself can serve; the heart of servant has been shown out in this place as his heart is humbled toward the Lord.

5 And now send men to Joppa, and summon one Simon, who is called Peter;

Comments Acts 10:5a The Lord God Almighty gives a clear command of whom and from where the Lord wants to call for work.

Comments Acts 10:5b As the verse tells all readers, with whom and where the disciple stayed has been known by above.

6 he lodges with one Simon, a tanner, whose house is by the sea.

7 And when the angel who spoke to him had departed, he called two servants, and a devout soldier, of those waiting on him continually;

Comments Acts 10:7 When calling those who wait upon him to do the work, the opportune time came at this place; the mind of the person calculated the counterattack that could be at work at this time.

8 and having related all things to them, he sent them to Joppa.

Comments Acts 10:8 The details of how to fight had begun in the human heart, and now the actions started when he sent those people to the place to do the work; the job of spiritual fighting began here now.

9 Now on the following day, as these were on their journey, and drew near to the city, Peter went up on the housetop to pray, about the sixth hour;

Comments Acts 10:9 In this verse, we should give attention to the two things happening at the same time: one group is traveling to the house, and at the same time at the house, the apostle goes up for prayer to glorify the Lord God Almighty, and the Lord God Almighty goes over the apostle for a special gift to come.

10 and he became hungry, and desired to eat; however, as they made ready, a trance fell upon him;

Comments Acts 10:10 The one that had the duty to prepare the food was doing the work, and as the apostle waited, the Lord God Almighty shone His glory upon him. This miracle happened while the apostle was awake, not in sleep; the miracles from the Lord God Almighty do not have to be in dreams but in reality as well.

Q: What was this trance upon Peter? **A:** Most humans understand this as a daydream, but this is a vision from the Lord God Almighty: the picture of what is happening unfolds before the eyes as the person looks at the situation itself.

11 and he beholds the heaven opened, and a certain vessel descending, as a great sheet, being let down by four corners upon the earth,

Comments Acts 10:11 “And he beholds the heaven opened ...” The blessed eyes of the apostle saw the great miracle from the Lord God Almighty; the Lord God Almighty gave him a vision of a vessel being let down from heaven.

“Being let down by four corners upon the earth.” The vessel was big and heavy, being held by four corners to come down on earth. This vision also tells all humans that all things the Lord God Almighty created for humans: use them, but with pleasure and care, not to destroy them, but all things use them to give praise to the Lord God Almighty; the blessing and help from the Lord God Almighty is in this vessel for all humans.

12 in which were all the four-footed and creeping things of the earth, and birds of the heaven.

Comments Acts 10:12 Humans, when reading this verse, also have questions: why has the Lord God Almighty brought down creeping things in this vessel? Everything is useful, even though humans may not know it yet, but humans can benefit from all things, knowing and not knowing.

13 And there came a voice to him: Rise, Peter; kill and eat!

Comments Acts 10:13 The vision from the Lord God Almighty also came with images and voice; here, the apostle received the straight command to do, and he must follow.

14 But Peter said, Not so, Lord; for I have never eaten anything that is common and unclean.

Comments Acts 10:14 The apostle has answered from the heart, not the mind; all his life, he has been taught what he can and what he cannot eat; now he has received an order to kill and eat. The apostle tells the Lord God Almighty from his own life what he can and cannot eat; however, when the Lord God Almighty tells you to do something, He also has a reason why you should do it, and the apostle will learn this command at this time.

Q: How was Peter supposed to act in this situation? **A:** He should listen and obey!

15 And a voice came to him again for the second time, What God has cleansed, you do not call common.

Comments Acts 10:15 The Lord God Almighty declared to the apostle that whatever He has cleansed, the apostle must believe that it is completely clean and ready for being used and worked on; all things have been created for a purpose, and now it is a purpose, and the Lord God Almighty used this in order to strengthen the apostle faith in work at this time.

16 And this happened for three times, and straightway the vessel was received up into heaven

Comments Acts 10:16 “And this happened for three times.” The Lord God Almighty has shown the disciple the same vision three times, which also means it cannot be changed anymore. All that the Lord God Almighty showed remains until the end of the age itself; things around may change, but the rule that has been set will not change.

“And straightway the vessel ...” When the Lord God Almighty finished the message with the apostle the vessel has been received back up into heaven.

Q: What rule has been set through this vision for all humans? **A:** All things that have been shown to the disciple at this time for all of them to use and benefit, but all things have to be used to glorify the Lord God Almighty first, and then all of them can be used for regular life living.

17 Then, while Peter was perplexed in himself what the vision that he had seen might be, behold, the men having been sent from Cornelius, having made inquiry for Simon's house, stood at the gate,

Comments Acts 10:17 “Then, while Peter was perplexed ...” The human mind tries to understand the vision from the Lord God Almighty. The Lord God Almighty will open up the apostle's heart to understand the calling. After certain things happen, he will inquire in his heart and understand what the Lord God Almighty wants him to do at this time.

“Behold, the men having been sent from Cornelius ...” The Lord God Almighty was guiding the outsiders to come to the place where His apostle stayed because the time for work for the Lord God Almighty's apostle was approaching.

18 and having called out, they asked if Simon, called Peter, is lodged here.

Comments Acts 10:18 The Lord God Almighty gave details of the name and family name of the apostle for these outsiders to find him, and now the Lord God Almighty guided the outsiders to the place to meet with His apostle.

19 And Peter thinking about the vision, the Spirit said, Behold, three men are seeking you.

Comments Acts 10:19 “And Peter thinking about the vision.” The chosen apostle, in his mind, wonders what this means, what he is seeing. In his mind, the curious coming on him, what the Lord God Almighty was showing him, would mean.

“The Spirit said to him ...” The Lord God Almighty tells His apostle clearly that someone is searching for him, and also the apostle knows in his heart that these people looking for him are from the Lord God Almighty; the peace comes to his heart, and in his mind, he is willing to obey.

20 But having risen, go down, and depart with them, nothing doubting, because I have sent them.

Comments Acts 10:20 The Lord God Almighty gives straight orders for the apostle to follow without delay; this order makes the disciple's heart have peace that all will be good; the safety of his life will be in the Lord's hand. The disciple's heart comes to the point of faith itself to trust in the Lord God Almighty's order, which is the only way to be safe.

21 Then, Peter, having gone down to the men, he said, Behold, I am whom you seek; what is the cause for which you came?

Comments Acts 10:21 After receiving an order to meet these outsiders, the apostle does not doubt in his heart and whatever will come, he will follow. For him, the Lord God Almighty is whom he wants to follow, even if he does not know how it will end, but his heart of servant is obeying.

22 And they said, Cornelius a centurion, a righteous man and fearing God, also well reported of by all the nation of the Jews, was warned of God by a holy angel to send for you into his house, and to hear words from you.

Comments Acts 10:22 “And they said, Cornelius a centurion ...” Their words confirmed to the apostle that the outsider has a heart full of fear of God and

worships the Lord God Almighty; being an outsider, yet having faith, was all that the disciple wanted to know; this also brought peace to his heart.

“Was warned of God by a holy angel ...” At this saying, the apostle understood what his duty toward this outsider would be: the Lord God Almighty had given him an important job to spread the Word of God to the outsiders. This outsider was from a different nation but had the heart of worshipping the Lord God Almighty; for the apostle, this outsider became a brother in faith.

23 So having called them in, he lodged them. And on the next day, having risen up, he went forth with them, and certain of the brothers, those from Joppa, accompanied him.

Comments Acts 10:23 “So having called them in, he lodged them.” The apostle, having called them in, the Lord God Almighty also has given His disciple assurance for his safety to stay between the outsiders; even His apostle's eyes saw that he is among outsiders, but his heart stayed firm in faith; and also, the Lord God Almighty gave him peace in his heart that all will be well.

“And on the next day having risen up ...” He called in some of his friends, who were believers; they all stayed together waiting for departure, but the Lord God Almighty gave them peace, and they all will glorify the Lord together.

24 Now on the next day they entered into Caesarea. And Cornelius was expecting them, having called together his relatives and close friends.

Comments Acts 10:24 “Now on the next day they entered into Caesarea.” The next place of travel is not far yet, and they are under the supervision of a soldier; the fear has come in their hearts, but the trust they have in the Lord God Almighty also stays firm with them; the treatment they have received from the outsiders was not harsh or violent and that made their hearts have peace in them as well.

“And Cornelius was expecting them ...” Give attention to what the verse tells: the outsider has not called more soldiers but civilian families of him to listen to the disciple and the people that came; the outsider did not take them as prisoners but as guests. The purpose was to listen to the good news from the apostle, and the outsider also wanted his own family and friends to hear the good news. The faith in the Lord God Almighty in the heart of the outsider

was firm, and that is why he wanted to hear more and build up more faith in his household.

25 Then, as it came to pass Peter entering, Cornelius, having met him, having fallen at the feet, worshipped.

Comments Acts 10:25 The eyes of the outsider had taken the apostle as God's representative. The action of the outsider also shows what his heart truly is; the respect and fear in glorifying the Lord God Almighty are in his heart, for going down to the floor in his position has shown respect toward God; even his eyes see the apostle as a human, but the Lord God Almighty also has shown him to see the light in His apostle's appearance.

26 But Peter raised him up, saying, Rise up; I myself also am a man.

Comments Acts 10:26 Give attention to the answer the apostle has given to the outsider, even in the outsider's position of glorifying him; the apostle did not lift himself up to be a God for the outsider and has told the outsider clearly that he is only a human.

27 And talking with him, he entered in, and he finds many come together;

Comments Acts 10:27 The Lord God Almighty wanted to teach the apostle that trusting and obeying the Lord is the only solution for his life; regardless of what his eyes see, the Lord God Almighty has a purpose for work waiting to be done.

28 then he said to them, You know how it is unlawful for a man, a Jew, to join himself or approach a foreigner; however, to me, God has shown to call no man common or unclean;

Comments Acts 10:28 "Then he said to them ..." As the verse tells to all readers, the Lord God Almighty has put the rule for His children not to join the foreigners; but people have taken it as not talking or doing things with the foreigners, but the Lord God Almighty wants to remind His children to know the purpose of joining is the thing to think about: if that joining together means staying far from worshiping the Lord God Almighty, then you should not join that activity.

"However, to me, God has shown ..." The real meaning is here in this verse itself: in the eyes of the Lord God Almighty, all are equal as living beings, but

the action of their hearts regarding glorifying the Lord God Almighty is the point that counts for the Lord.

29 therefore, also I came without contradiction, having been sent for. I ask therefore, for what reason did you send for me?

Comments Acts 10:29 “Therefore, also I came without contradiction ...” The apostle felt in his heart that the work had come for him; the feeling he received from the Lord God Almighty to do work was strong, and he had followed that call for work.

“I ask therefore for what reason did you send for me?” The apostle knew the reason, but the human mind still wanted to know whether the answers these people would give him would match what he had received from the Lord God Almighty or not.

30 And Cornelius said, Four days ago, until this hour, I was at the ninth hour praying in my house; and behold, a man stood before me in bright apparel,

Comments Acts 10:30 “And Cornelius said, Four days ago ...” Let all readers pay attention to the answer regarding the outsider's activity in glorifying the Lord God Almighty: the outsider had a specific time and place for worship; this action demonstrates the outsider's faith toward the Lord God Almighty.

“And behold, a man stood before me in bright apparel.” The outsider has been blessed by the Lord God Almighty. The human eye saw the angel appearing in human form; the only difference to make it known to all is the shining apparel of the angel. This appearance to the outsider has confirmed the chosen path for the outsider to follow.

31 and said, Cornelius, your prayer was heard, and your alms had been remembered before God.

Comments Acts 10:31 Let all readers understand as well that your good deeds, your heart that you do to people, the Lord God Almighty sees them all, and all of those will be remembered in front of the Lord God Almighty.

32 Send therefore to Joppa, and call for Simon, who is called Peter; he lodges in the house of Simon, a tanner, by the sea.

Comments Acts 10:32 “Send therefore to Joppa ...” The mercy from the Lord God Almighty is shown here by sending the outsider to His apostle, from

which he will benefit for his own soul; the place and the name of the apostle have been declared to the outsider.

“He lodges in the house of Simon ...” Let all readers pay attention to the verse itself: when you do good to someone, the Lord God Almighty recognizes you as well; common man, common work, have been recognized by name in this place because Simon, a tanner, has hosted the Lord God Almighty's disciple in his place.

33 Therefore, immediately, I sent for you, and you did well having come. Now, therefore, we are all present before God to hear all the things having been commanded you by the Lord.

Comments Acts 10:33 “Therefore, immediately, I sent for you.” When the person received guidance from the Lord God Almighty, he acted immediately, without delay; all readers should pay attention to his actions.

“And you did well having come.” With the Lord God Almighty's guidance, as soon as the invitation came, the apostle moved right away.

“Now, therefore, we are all present before God ...” When the Lord God Almighty stirred up the heart of His disciple to go and do work, the apostle of the Lord God Almighty obeyed the guidance and worked mightily in spreading the good news to the listeners; the mighty works of the Lord God Almighty have been proclaimed in this place to the outsiders.

34 Then Peter, having opened his mouth, said, Of a truth, I perceive that God is no respecter of persons,

Comments Acts 10:34 “Then Peter, having opened his mouth, said.” At the right time to the right listeners, the Lord God Almighty opened up His apostle's mouth to speak; the Lord God Almighty has chosen this time and used the apostle to proclaim the good news.

“Of a truth, I perceive that God ...” As the verse tells to all, the Lord God Almighty knows the hearts of the listeners and has chosen the right worker to spread the good news; the heart that opens also makes the ear give attention to the Word of God. The words of the apostle, telling about the Lord God Almighty, will stay in all listeners' hearts at this time.

35 but in every nation, the one fearing Him, and working righteousness, is acceptable to Him.

Comments Acts 10:35 Let every believer pay attention to this verse itself: if you are a true believer, the beloved Son of God is your King and Lord; listen and obey Him with all your might.

36 The word which He sent to the sons of Israel, preaching the gospel of peace by Jesus Christ--He is Lord of all.

Comments Acts 10:36 "The word which He sent to the sons of Israel." The Lord God Almighty sent His message to His people to listen to the good news and act according to it.

"Preaching the gospel of peace by Jesus Christ--He is Lord of all." The teaching from the Father about His beloved Son, Jesus Christ, has been told to His people, and they must listen to the Son's teachings with all of their hearts; they have been chosen to be His people by this gospel, and they must teach their children to obey this gospel.

37 You yourselves know the word, having come through all Judea, beginning from Galilee, after the baptism which John preached:

Comments Acts 10:37 The apostle of the Lord God Almighty declared to the outsiders the truth regarding the coming of the beloved Son of God, which the Lord God Almighty has mercy on all humans by sending the Savior to all people; now is the time to come and be saved.

38 Jesus of Nazareth, how God anointed Him with the Holy Spirit and with power, Who went about doing good and healing all those being oppressed by the devil because God was with Him.

Comments Acts 10:38 "Jesus of Nazareth." The beloved Son of God, Jesus Christ, has been called by humans for the birthplace that they believe He is from.

"How God anointed Him with the Holy Spirit ..." God the Father has anointed the beloved Son with all the glory and power because He is not only the beloved Son, but He is One with the Father. The beloved Son of God, He is God as well; the Father and the beloved Son, Jesus Christ, are One together, and now the beloved Son has come to do the work on earth for the Father.

“Who went about doing good ...” The beloved Son of God has gone out, has performed miracles, and has brought people to be saved because the Father is with Him. The Holy Spirit works with the Son on earth; the Son has proclaimed the way to be saved for humans; with the mighty work from the Father's will, all work is accomplished.

39 And we witnessed of all things which He did both in the region of the Jews, and Jerusalem; Whom also they put to death, having hanged on a tree.

Comments Acts 10:39 “And we witnessed of all things ...” The beloved Son of God performed many miracles, and many witnesses have seen all the good deeds that He has done for humans. Some have seen all the miracles with their eyes, but their hearts still remained darkened and could not accept what their eyes had seen. However, some also accepted themselves as witnesses to the miracles without expecting payment in this world.

“Whom also they put to death, having hanged on a tree.” The dark thoughts that by killing the beloved Son of God this way, they have won, but the dark and humans did not understand the beloved Son of God also He is God who cannot die. Crucified on the cross was a torturing death that humans did to Him, but they never think about what is more torturing, being crucified here in this life or going down to be punished for eternity, which one is more suffering.

40 Him God raised up the third day, and gave Him to become manifest,

Comments Acts 10:40 “Him God raised up on the third day.” The greatest miracle happened at this time: the Father lifted the Son above all by raising Him up from the dead; He also declared to all humans that the beloved Son of God Himself had won because death could not hold Him.

“And gave Him to become manifest.” The Father has put the beloved Son above all glory of heavenly hosts; the beloved Son of God will not judge only humans, but the heavenly hosts will be judged under Him.

41 not to all the people, but to witnesses who had been chosen before by God, to us, who ate and drank with Him after He rose out from the dead.

Comments Acts 10:41 “Not to all the people, but to witnesses ...” The Lord God Almighty has chosen specific people to be witnesses to the resurrection of the Lord of Life.

“To us, who ate and drank ...” The human witnesses saw the human actions of eating and drinking by the resurrected Lord Jesus; the resurrected, beloved Son of God in the human body can eat and drink; this is the proof of the resurrection in the body, not the spirit.

42 And He charged us to proclaim to the people, and to testify that He is the One ordained by God as Judge of the living and the dead.

Comments Acts 10:42 “And He charged us to proclaim to the people.” The Lord God Almighty gave a specific duty to the disciples to go out and proclaim the good news.

“And to testify that He is the One ordained by God.” The human witnesses go out to proclaim that the beloved Son of God has been set up above all, full with power and authority in judging the dead and the living.

“As Judge of the living and the dead.” God the Father gives authority to the beloved Son because He, as a human, died; the death realm has the Judge above them who has gone through death and is alive; the beloved Son of God has power and authority to judge the dead because He Himself has experienced the death.

43 To Him bear witness all the prophets, that through His Name everyone that believes in Him receives forgiveness of sins.

Comments Acts 10:43 “To Him bear witness all the prophets.” The Lord God Almighty declared the beloved Son of God as Lord of all and King above all kings; the judgment belongs to Him, His word is all true, and it will be done.

“That through His Name everyone ...” There is only One name that has the power to forgive the sins, and all who truly believe in His Name will receive the forgiveness of sins. The beloved Son of God, Jesus Christ, has the authority to bring all who believe in Him to be with Him in Paradise.

44 Still, Peter speaking these words, the Holy Spirit fell upon all those hearing the word.

Comments Acts 10:44 “Still, Peter speaking these words.” The apostle proclaimed the name of the beloved Son of God, Jesus Christ, to all who have the ears open to listen.

“The Holy Spirit fell upon all those ...” All believers give attention: the name of the beloved Son of God has the power to draw the Holy Spirit to all who truly believe and listen to His word; when the ears hear the word, the open heart will receive the true blessing from the Lord God Almighty.

45 And those from circumcision believers were amazed, as many as came with Peter, because even on the Gentiles the gift of the Holy Spirit has been poured out.

Comments Acts 10:45 “And those from circumcision believers were amazed ...” When the Lord God Almighty performed miracles through His apostle, it made the people amazed, but this feeling is the first feeling of the heart; they need to learn more; the apostle will have the duty to explain to them, and they must explain from the beginning until now, starting from the creation until performing miracles in front of them. [The Lord Jesus was with God the Father from the beginning; He came to be born in human flesh; He was crucified for the sins of the world; He rose from the dead on the third day; He ascended to the Father and is seated at the right hand of the Father; He sends the promise of the Father to His disciples, the Holy Spirit baptism.]

“Because even on the Gentiles the gift of the Holy Spirit ...” The Gentiles had received the Holy Spirit, and this is a miracle for them, and the apostle must explain to them what it is that came upon them. The Holy Spirit is a miracle from God Almighty; all gentiles will receive the blessings if their hearts are open.

46 For they heard them speaking in tongues and magnifying God. Then answered Peter,

Comments Acts 10:46 When the Gentiles magnified and glorified the Lord God Almighty, that made the apostle be amazed as well; now, at this time, the Lord God Almighty called the Gentiles to receive the blessing; when the Holy Spirit falls on someone, that person will also receive the gift of speaking in tongues; this miracle will strengthen the Gentiles' faith.

47 Can any one forbid the water, that these should not be baptized, who have received the Holy Spirit just as also we?

Comments Acts 10:47 “Can any one forbid the water ...” All things come from the Lord God Almighty: the earth is His, and the water also is His. When anyone has received the Lord God Almighty, the first thing to show to all the

people that they have committed themselves to be believers is that they must be baptized in the water; the water belongs to the Lord God Almighty, and He uses it as He pleases.

“Who have received the Holy Spirit ...” Regardless of who these people are, if they have received the Holy Spirit, they must also be baptized in the water, just as the apostles and even the beloved Son of God were baptized in water, as an example.

48 And he commanded them to be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ. Then they asked him to remain some days.

Comments Acts 10:48 “And he commanded them to be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ.” Humans with disobedient hearts always use the Scripture as they see fit. Even if the verse says in the name of Jesus Christ, remember as well that the beloved Son of God Himself is in the Trinity of God; therefore, to be proper and complete, all must be baptized in the names of the Trinity of God: Father, Son Jesus Christ, and the Holy Spirit.

“Then they asked him to remain some days.” When the new believers experienced the miracle of the Holy Spirit baptism, in their hearts, the wish to know more about the Lord God Almighty overpowered them, and they asked the apostle to stay and explain more to them for the sake of their own faith.

Life and faith applications. 1) A Christian man should be the spiritual leader of his family. 2) The Lord can guide His servants through the gifts of the Holy Spirit, such as visions or verses from the Bible. 3) All things shown to the apostle Peter in his vision can be used for regular living, but all things have to be used to glorify the Lord God Almighty first. 4) Regardless of traditions, when the Lord guides us to do work for Him, we must follow. 5) The Lord Jesus came to save the whole world, so the Lord God Almighty is no respecter of persons; therefore, we must proclaim the Lord Jesus to all people regardless of their social condition, race, or language. 6) The Holy Spirit baptism can occur before water baptism; however, all believers must be baptized in water by immersion in the name of the Trinity of God. 7) The Holy Spirit baptism is a miracle from the Lord God Almighty and must have speaking in tongues.

Acts 13

Summary. In this chapter, the Lord sends His servants, the apostles Paul and Barnabas, to begin their mission work of spreading the good news to both Jews and Gentiles. **Acts 13:1-5.** Apostle Paul and Barnabas are sent out for work. The Lord God Almighty had specific places and persons for work. The church in Antioch acted in faith and humbleness toward the Lord. They prayed and fasted, laid their hands on the apostle Paul and Barnabas, and sent them out for ministry work by the guidance of the Holy Spirit. **Acts 13:6-12.** Apostle Paul and Barnabas minister on the island to the proconsul and the people. The Lord God Almighty sent His apostle to go into the dark place to show them the true light of the Lord. By the miracle work of the Holy Spirit, the apostle Paul confronted a magician controlled by the dark who had a great influence on the people and the proconsul of the area. By the mercy of the Lord, this place saw the light shining into darkness, and the people and the proconsul believed in the teaching of the Lord. **Acts 13:13-43.** Apostle Paul and those with him minister to those in Antioch of Pisidia. The workers of the Lord, guided by the Holy Spirit, reach Antioch of Pisidia, where they spread the good news in the synagogue. Guided by the Holy Spirit, Apostle Paul presents a brief history of God's plan in choosing them as His children, from which the Lord Jesus would be born as a Man and bring salvation to them and the world. In his discourse, Paul outlined three main points: 1) The Lord God Almighty chose their forefathers to be His people, making them His children as well. Out of mercy for His children, God gave them the land as an inheritance for them to dwell in. 2) God's plan to save the entire world will be fulfilled according to His promise to His faithful servant, King David. The beloved Son of God would come into the world through this lineage; the Savior of the world, the Son of God, has been born to fulfill the Father's promise. 3) The children of God, whose hearts were darkened by jealousy, condemned the beloved Son of God to death on the cross, aided by outsiders. However, the Son of God cannot die, and the miracle of resurrection took place. Death has no power over Him because He is God Almighty, and death cannot hold Him. The One whom the Lord God Almighty raised, the Lord Jesus, is the only One who will never experience corruption. Forgiveness of sins and justification from all wrongdoing can be obtained only through the Lord Jesus; the law of Moses cannot achieve what faith in the Lord Jesus can. **Acts 13:44-52.** Apostle Paul and the other disciples minister to the Gentiles, but

the Jews stir up persecution against them. The children of the Lord, filled with jealousy, began to contradict the message spoken by the apostle Paul. The Lord guided His servants to proclaim the good news to the Gentiles, but the Jews stirred up a persecution against them. However, the plan of the Lord in saving humans does not stop at one place.

1 Now there were in Antioch, being there, in the church, prophets and teachers, also, Barnabas, and Symeon who was called Niger, and Lucius of Cyrene, and Manaen, brought up with Herod the tetrarch, and Saul.

Comments Acts 13:1 “Now there were in Antioch, being there ...” The Lord God Almighty always sets up places for worship in many, many regions. Also, here, He has set up the place of worship.

“Also, Barnabas, and Symeon ...” In this place, the Lord God Almighty also brought His workers who would bring benefit to people in this area. The Lord God Almighty knows the hearts of people and brings the right workers who will help and guide the people. In this place, the guidance He provided was not only for the heart to believe but also for the way of life as well.

2 And as they ministered to the Lord, and fasted, the Holy Spirit said, Set apart to Me Barnabas and Saul for the work to which I have called them.

Comments Acts 13:2 “And as they ministered to the Lord ...” The disciples acted out of faith, showing humbleness to the Lord, both in their actions and hearts, as the verse tells us; pay attention to what they did and what happened afterwards.

“Set apart to Me Barnabas and Saul ...” When believers humble themselves, the Lord God Almighty reveals to them the purpose of what He wants them to do. Those whom the Lord God Almighty has chosen, have been told at this time. The work of the Lord God Almighty toward people has been shown at this time.

3 Then, having fasted, and having prayed, and having laid the hands on them, they sent them off.

Comments Acts 13:3 Give attention that the laying of hands on a person has special meaning: the person, the hand had laid on, had received blessings and guidance, and the Lord God Almighty dwells on that person to guide the person for work, and gives protection to keep them safe.

4 They, indeed, therefore, having been sent forth by the Holy Spirit, went down to Seleucia; then from there, they sailed to Cyprus.

Comments Acts 13:4 The Lord God Almighty has specific places and persons for work. These disciples, by the guidance of the Holy Spirit, went to the places they had been directed. The work of spreading the good news will not be easy, but with the guidance of the Lord God Almighty, they will succeed.

5 And having come at Salamis, they declared the word of God in the synagogues of the Jews; and they had also John as a helper.

Comments Acts 13:5 “And having come at Salamis ...” The place where the Lord God Almighty’s children gathered together to worship was the place the Lord God Almighty sent His disciples to speak and tell the good news.

“And they had also John as a helper.” Also, in this place, the Lord God Almighty worked with this faithful servant to help. The work was not difficult, but problems with people arose, and a helping hand would have made the job succeed.

6 And having passed through the whole island as far as Paphos, they found a man, a certain magician, a false prophet, a Jew, whose name was Bar-Jesus,

Comments Acts 13:6 In this area, the dark had occupied the minds of humans, and the Lord God Almighty wanted to help all of them. The Lord God Almighty sent His apostle to go into the dark place to show them the true light of the Lord. With the great mercy of the Lord God Almighty, the light shone through the darkness in this area.

7 who was with the proconsul, Sergius Paulus, an intelligent man. He, having called to him Barnabas and Saul, desired to hear the word of God.

Comments Acts 13:7 “Who was with the proconsul ...” The man, who possessed intelligence but did not know how to utilize it, instead, with the dark influence, used that gift to help control the people in a dark way.

“He, having called to him Barnabas and Saul ...” The leader, with a gentle heart toward the Lord God Almighty, wanted to know more about the true light and inquired about having a meeting with the apostle. Pay attention to what the verse tells us: the person wanted to know more about the Lord God Almighty, and the mercy of the Lord has poured into his heart.

8 But Elymas the magician (for thus his name is translated) opposed them, seeking to prevent the proconsul from the faith.

Comments Acts 13:8 “But Elymas the magician ...” The dark knows very well who is on the Lord’s side, and used the intelligence of the man in trying to persuade and to stop the work of the Lord being fulfilled.

“Seeking to prevent the proconsul from the faith.” The dark tries hard to turn people away from seeking the Lord, and when the dark notices that someone wants to seek the Lord God Almighty, they will use every way to deter the person.

9 Then Saul, also called Paul, being filled with the Holy Spirit, having looked intently upon him,

Comments Acts 13:9 The apostle, filled with the Holy Spirit, looked intently, and with that ability, he could see through, and could see the dark that occupied the mind of the person. The Lord God Almighty gave this ability to His apostle, so that by the look, the apostle could tell who had a dark covering over the mind.

10 said, O full of all deceit and all fraud, son of the devil, enemy of all righteousness, will you not cease to pervert the straight ways of the Lord?

Comments Acts 13:10 “O full of all deceit and all fraud ...” Pay attention to what the verse tells you all; the Lord God Almighty clearly tells people who this person was. The Lord sees and hears, and in this place, the heart of this person was full with an evil mind and did not have good intentions toward anyone who heard them speak here. The magician had told lies to people by using their intelligence and tried to confuse them, and the verse clearly reveals what this magician had within themselves.

“Will you not cease to pervert ...” The evil mind, with the intelligence of humans, tried to persuade people to turn away from the Lord. The Lord had sent His apostle to point out that this person was working against Him; pay attention to what the Lord’s warning is here.

11 And now, behold, the hand of the Lord is upon you, and you will be blind, not seeing the sun for a season. And immediately fell upon him mist and darkness, and going about he was seeking someone to lead him by the hand.

Comments Acts 13:11 “And now, behold, the hand of the Lord is upon you ...” Let all readers pay attention to the result of a person who wanted to deter people’s faith in the Lord. The punishment doesn’t need to wait for the next life, but it is now at this time for this magician. The Lord God Almighty created humans, and to punish humans by making them become incomplete persons, the punishment could be severe; however, the mercy of the Lord is still extended to all humans. This punishment here was a warning for this magician to turn away from the dark.

“And immediately fell upon him mist and darkness ...” The Lord sent the mist to cover the eyes, but did not gouge out the eyes. The magician had claimed to have power himself, but now, he walked with blindness and begged people for help; all readers, pay attention.

12 Then the proconsul, having seen what had happened, he believed, being astonished at the teaching of the Lord.

Comments Acts 13:12 “Then the proconsul, having seen ...” When the unbelievers saw all the miracles, it stirred their hearts; in their hearts, it also stirred up the curiosity about the Lord God Almighty.

“Being astonished at the teaching of the Lord.” The way of the Lord’s teaching is different from what they know, and this makes their heart and mind ask questions and want to know more.

13 Now Paul with those around him, having sailed from Paphos, came to Perga of Pamphylia; however, John having departed from them, returned to Jerusalem.

Comments Acts 13:13 When the apostle started the journey, some would find themselves having other things to do and would depart as well. As this verse tells us, one of the Lord’s servants separated himself to do something else, but that does not mean that this servant lost faith; rather, he felt in his heart that the Lord was calling him to something else.

14 Now they, passing through from Perga, came to Antioch of Pisidia, and having gone into the synagogue on the day of the Sabbaths, they sat down.

Comments Acts 13:14 “Now they, passing through from Perga ...” The workers of the Lord travelled on the path that had been guided for them. This traveling was in the plan of the Lord God Almighty for the work.

“And having gone into the synagogue ...” Pay attention to what the verse tells all the people. This group of people came to worship the Lord; in their hearts, they wanted to seek attention not from humans, but the attention for help from the Lord God Almighty. The place of worship is the place where the Lord will speak to them.

15 Then after the reading of the law and the Prophets, the rulers of the synagogue sent to them, saying, Men, brothers, if there be, in anyone of you, a word of exhortation to the people, speak.

Comments Acts 13:15 “Then after the reading of the law and the Prophets ...” These people claimed, themselves, to know all; they have the law and the word to tell from the Lord what they should do, but these people study but never meditate on the true meaning of the word itself.

“Men, brothers, if there be, in anyone of you ...” After reading, the rulers sought advice not from the word itself from the people who listened there, but with the expectation that someone would come up with an idea on how to take the next step; however, they, themselves, did not seek advice from the Lord.

16 Then Paul, having risen up, and having made a sign with the hand, he said, Men, Israelites, and those fearing God, listen.

Comments Acts 13:16 The apostle of the Lord God Almighty had received the order and direction on where and how to lead the people; in this sojourn, the Lord God Almighty will be with them all the way.

17 The God of this people, of Israel, chose our fathers, and exalted the people in the sojourn, in the land of Egypt, and with uplifted arm, led them out of it.

Comments Acts 13:17 “The God of this people, of Israel, chose our fathers.” The children of God know in their hearts that the Lord God Almighty chose their forefathers to be His people, and because of that, they themselves become the Lord’s children as well.

“And exalted the people in the sojourn ...” To take the children of God out of slavery, the Lord God Almighty had performed many miracles, in taking them out of slavery, and set them free, and He also led them out to where He had the land to be their own to stay.

18 And of about, the time of forty years, He suffered their manners in the wilderness.

Comments Acts 13:18 The children of the Lord needed time to adjust their behavior, with hardship, but during that time, the Lord God Almighty also strengthened their faith toward Him, and that will be the foundation for their faith in the future.

19 And having destroyed seven nations in the land of Canaan, He gave them as an inheritance the land,

Comments Acts 13:19 “And having destroyed seven nations ...” In the time that the Lord guided His children to walk the right way, He also had made a promise to them that they would become a nation and have their own place to stay.

“He gave them as an inheritance the land.” With love and mercy of the Lord God Almighty, He had given them the land, not only for them to stay, but also for their children to be there as well.

20 for about four hundred and fifty years; and after these things He gave them judges until Samuel the prophet.

Comments Acts 13:20 “For about four hundred and fifty years.” The Lord God Almighty, with His mercy for His children, gave them the land as an inheritance for them to stay; but also, the length of time was impacted, because of their own actions in betraying whom they should worship. The Lord’s children turned away and took their hearts from worshiping the Lord. With unfaithful hearts, when they saw the nations around them worshiping something, they believed that those things had more power than their own God. This length of time is the time for them to realize that when they return back to the Lord God Almighty and worship Him, they will receive the same favor as their forefathers have received, and will be able to keep the inheritance for their children for generations after.

“And after these things He gave ...” When the length of time was closed to being fulfilled, the children of the Lord turned their hearts back and worshiped

the Lord God Almighty again, and at that time, the Lord God Almighty showed mercy to them again by sending His workers to guide them with many warnings, and teachings, reminding them that they must be faithful to the Lord God Almighty in order to gain their own inheritance, and keep it to the end of the age.

21 And afterward, they asked for a king, and God gave to them Saul the son of Kish, a man of the tribe of Benjamin, forty years.

Comments Acts 13:21 “And afterward, they asked for a king.” The Lord God Almighty’s children never learned their own lesson. Instead of worshiping the Lord as their King, they wanted a human king to rule over them, like the nations around them that had a king to rule them. When they asked, the Lord God Almighty gave them what their hearts desired.

“And God gave to them Saul ...” The king that they had, ruled over them for a certain time and during that time the children of the Lord had learned the hardship and understood the difference between a human king and the Lord God Almighty be as a King for them, but they have chosen the human king, and their own children will face the difficult time, because of this human king they wanted.

22 And having removed him, He raised up David as their king; to whom also He said, testifying: I have found David of Jesse, a man after My heart, who will do all My will.

Comments Acts 13:22 “And having removed him, he raised up David ...” As the verse tells us, let all readers pay attention: the Lord God Almighty had His plan and person in place for the work. After He removed the unfaithful heart ruler from His people, the Lord God Almighty called out the man whom He would use to do His will in saving humans.

“I have found David of Jesse ...” The human that the Lord God Almighty considered as a man after His own heart, being a human, still committed sin as well, but the soul of his heart never departed from faith; his heart stayed firm in faith in the Lord God Almighty.

23 Of the seed of this one, God, according to promise, has brought unto Israel the Savior, Jesus;

Comments Acts 13:23 “Of the seed of this one, God, according to promise.”

The man who was pleasing to the Lord God Almighty will be the one whose name will remind all humans that if your soul remains true and faithful to the Lord God Almighty, the blessing you receive is not only on this earth, but the Lord God Almighty will use your whole family to be a blessing for humans as well.

“Has brought unto Israel the Savior, Jesus.” The plan of God the Father will be fulfilled according to His promise to His faithful servant. The beloved Son of God will have the human body come through this line of His faithful servant; the Savior of the world will come to be born to fulfill the promise of the Father.

24 John having proclaimed before the appearance of His coming, the baptism of repentance to all the people of Israel.

Comments Acts 13:24 “John having proclaimed ...” The messenger of the Lord God Almighty had the duty to proclaim the coming of the beloved Son of God. This is an important duty and needs a humble heart to proclaim His coming. The person without a humble heart will not want to proclaim that someone greater than themselves is coming.

“The baptism of repentance ...” The messenger of the Lord also proclaimed for people to come and repent, but in order to receive forgiveness, His people must humble themselves and repent.

25 And while John was fulfilling the course, he said, Whom me you suppose to be, I am not. But behold, He comes after me, of whom I am not worthy to untie the sandal of the feet.

Comments Acts 13:25 “And while John was fulfilling his course ...” The messenger of the Lord tells all the Lord’s people the truth according to what they think who he is. The messenger never lifted himself up to be more than what he is.

“But behold, He comes after me ...” Let all readers pay attention to what the messenger said. He tells all people that the Savior of the world is coming, and he himself is not worthy even to untie His sandal. With a truly humble heart,

he accepts being below, and even for the lowest position job, he considers himself unworthy to have.

26 Men, brothers, children of the family of Abraham, and those among you fearing God, to us this message of the salvation has been sent.

Comments Acts 13:26 “Men, brothers, children of the family ...” Give attention, all believers, to what the verse is telling us; by being the Lord’s children, you must have hearts full with fear and worship the Lord God Almighty.

“To us this message of the salvation has been sent.” The message of salvation from the Lord has been sent out not only at that time, but to every age until the end. The Lord has mercy for all humans and recorded this message in the Bible for all to read and meditate.

27 For those dwelling in Jerusalem, and their rulers, not knowing Him and the voices of the prophets that are being read every Sabbath, fulfilled them by condemning Him.

Comments Acts 13:27 “For those dwelling in Jerusalem ...” The generation of the deaf hearing the Word of the Lord God Almighty: the Lord has mercy on His children and all humans, and has dictated the Word to be put down in the Holy Bible. Let all humans meditate on the Holy Word and be saved.

“Fulfilled them by condemning Him.” The hearts darkened with jealousy had condemned the beloved Son of God to death on the cross; the evil used the human minds to stir people to fulfil their work.

28 And having found no cause of death, they begged Pilate to put Him to death.

Comments Acts 13:28 “And having found no cause of death.” The evil minds tried to find guilt in the beloved Son of God in all directions, but they could not find anything to condemn Him of guilt.

“They begged Pilate to put Him to death.” The evil minds used the human way of begging to get what they wanted. The evil ruler had authority to do as he pleased, but humans with dark influence were begging and using many reasons to get what they wanted in order to stop the work of God. The evil thought that the death of the beloved Son in the human body will stop the work of God.

29 Then when they had accomplished all that had been written about Him, having taken Him down from the wood, they put Him in a tomb.

Comments Acts 13:29 “Then when they had accomplished ...” The evil plan had come to an end; with the death of the beloved Son of God, the evil work was accomplished, and now they must take Him down from the wood to bury the body.

“Having taken Him down from the wood ...” With the death of human body, the evil will put Him in the tomb; the evil never know the power and the plan of God, and believed that by putting the body of the beloved Son of God in a tomb, the dark believed that the Lord God Almighty has limit power and won’t be able to show any power from the tomb; they believe the end of the beloved Son of God had come and the tomb will keep Him away from all power.

30 But God raised Him from the dead,

Comments Acts 13:30 The miracle had happened; the Lord God Almighty had let all humans know that His beloved Son of God cannot die. Death has no power over Him because He is God Almighty, and death cannot hold Him.

31 who appeared for many days to those having come up with Him from Galilee to Jerusalem, who are now His witnesses to the people.

Comments Acts 13:31 “Who appeared for many days to those ...” Give attention that the spirit cannot stay and appear to people, but this appearing of the Lord Jesus is in the physical body, which the eyes can see and touch. The miracle of being alive in His physical body had been shown to people in this place.

“Who are now His witnesses to the people.” The miracle did happen, and many witnesses have seen it. This is not a storyteller, but the real thing; many witnesses have also served as proof for the people.

32 And we proclaim good news to you of the promise made to the fathers,

Comments Acts 13:32 “And we proclaim good news to you.” The Lord God Almighty proclaimed to all His children what had happened.

“Of the promise.” The Lord God Almighty promised salvation to His people and all humans, the coming of the Savior of the world, the beloved Son of God, Jesus Christ.

“Made to the fathers.” The children of the Lord have all been told that the Savior is coming; the Savior will come among them to guide them to salvation.

33 that God has fulfilled this to us, the children, having raised up Jesus; as also it is written in the second psalm, Thou art My Son, today I have begotten Thee.

Comments Acts 13:33 “That God has fulfilled this to us, the children, having raised up Jesus.” God the Father gave promise to His children, and all humans, that He will raise up His beloved Son, Jesus Christ, from death, because the death has no right to hold Him.

“As also it is written in the second psalm ...” The Lord God Almighty has told all humans that the beloved Son of God will be born as human, to save the world, and this became His promise, which will be fulfilled, regardless of what happens in the world.

34 Then also He raised Him out from the dead, no more to be destined to return to corruption, thus He spoke: I will give to You the holy sure blessings of David.

Comments Acts 13:34 “Then also He raised Him out from the dead ...” The Lord God Almighty raised up His beloved Son because He is One in Him; then part of Him cannot see or face any corruption.

“Thus He spoke: I will give to you ...” It had been told to all humans what the man of God had been blessed with, and that blessing, also part of the beloved Son, is extended to the faithful servant, which will also remain in Him forever.

35 Because He also says in another, Thou wilt not allow Thy Holy One to see corruption.

Comments Acts 13:35 The Lord God Almighty and the beloved Son of God are One, and neither part can face corruption. Every human faces corruption, but in this place, the body of the Holy Son cannot face corruption.

36 For David, indeed, having served in his own generation the purpose of God, fell asleep, and was added to his fathers, and saw corruption.

Comments Acts 13:36 “For David, indeed, having served ...” The man after God’s own heart was a common man; after death, his body had seen corruption.

“And saw corruption.” Many people expected that David would be raised to life. Because of the blessing he had received from the Lord God Almighty, people had made a story that he would not truly face corruption, but that the Lord God Almighty would take his body out and up to be with Him, without the body being rotten in the ground.

37 However, the One God raised up saw no corruption.

Comments Acts 13:37 “However, the One God raised up.” As the verse tells, the One that the Lord God Almighty raised up, the Lord Jesus, is the only One who will never face corruption.

“Saw no corruption.” When the verse says, “saw no corruption,” it also tells all humans that His body will transform instantly from the inside out to be the Holy Body and never see the true corruption of the human body.

38 Then, be it known to you, men, brothers, that through this One is proclaimed to you forgiveness of sins,

Comments Acts 13:38 “Then, be it known to you, men, brothers, that through this One.” Let all humans keep in their heart whom you should look upon to: the beloved Son of God is the only One that every heart and soul should follow and worship in order to be pleasing to the Lord God Most High.

“Is proclaimed to you forgiveness of sins.” The Lord God Most High has mercy for all humans, but the sinful nature of humans prevents them from approaching Him. However, only through the beloved Son, Jesus Christ, do all humans now have a chance to receive the mercy and forgiveness of their sins.

39 and in Him everyone that believes is justified from all things, from which you were not able to be justified in the law of Moses.

Comments Acts 13:39 “And in Him everyone that believes is justified.” To be pleasing to the Lord God Most High is only by believing in the beloved Son of God, Jesus Christ; believing in Him brings faith to glorify the Lord God Most High, and that makes that soul have worth in itself to receive mercy.

“From all things.” Name, person, actions, nothing will be counted without faith in His Son; the faith and trust in Him will bring a pleasing aroma for that soul.

“From which you were not able to be ...” The old law had been given by the Lord God Most High and had ended when the beloved Son came down to be born as a human, the Lamb of God, who came down and was waiting to be sacrificed for the atonement of sins.

40 Behold therefore, lest come upon you that which has been spoken in the prophets:

Comments Acts 13:40 What the Lord God Almighty has said will happen, whether in the past or the future, because, for the Lord God Almighty, time has no past or future, it is always now.

41 Behold, scoffers, and wonder, and vanish; For I work a work in your days, A work which you will not believe, even if one declares it to you.

Comments Acts 13:41 “Behold, scoffers, and wonder, and vanish.” Give attention to how many types of humans have been mentioned in this place. All these types of humans have heard and have been told; the Lord God Almighty had declared to all humans, to every kind and level of humans, to know about the work He is doing.

“For I work a work in your days ...” The work has been told, the eyes have seen, the ears have heard; but the rebellious hearts cannot accept the truth.

42 And having departed, they besought that these words to be spoken to them on the next Sabbath.

Comments Acts 13:42 After the faithful servants of the Lord God Almighty talked with the people, it made their hearts open, and they wanted to know more about the Lord God Almighty, and requested the Lord’s servants to come back to talk with them more, because in their hearts they have been drawn to hear more about the mighty work of the Lord.

43 Then the synagogue having broken up, many of the Jews and of the worshipping converts followed Paul and Barnabas; who, speaking to them, urged them to continue in the grace of God.

Comments Acts 13:43 “Then the synagogue having broken up ...” When the time of worship was ended, the work in the hearts from the Lord did not end there. The hearts of those who truly wanted to know more followed the faithful servants of the Lord, not because they needed something else, but because all they wanted was to hear more. The word that had been told to

them stirred their hearts and led them to follow to hear more about the Lord God Almighty.

“Who, speaking to them, urged them ...” Give attention, all believers, the verse tells us clearly. The faithful servants of the Lord urged people to stay firm in prayer. When your heart is sensitive to the Lord God Almighty, the Lord Himself will also stir you to want and do what is right.

44 Now on the next Sabbath almost all the city was gathered together to hear the word of God.

Comments Acts 13:44 After the Lord God Almighty servants proclaimed the good news to the people, it made the people ask them to return again because the word that they heard in their ears also worked in their hearts, and that it stirred their hearts to have faith and to want to hear more about the work of the Lord.

45 But the Jews having seen the multitudes, they were filled with jealousy, and contradicted the things spoken by Paul, blaspheming.

Comments Acts 13:45 “But the Jews having seen the multitudes.” The children of the Lord, when they saw that more of their people were going and had faith, believing in the Lord God Almighty, that made them have no peace and worry about how to stop what was happening now.

“They were filled with jealousy ...” Let all believers pay attention to what the verse says: jealousy is the problem in the human heart. Even if people just wanted to hear more about the Lord God Almighty, the hearts of those who did not believe have been stirred with jealousy. Watch out, all humans: jealousy is the enemy of faith and good deeds.

46 Also, Paul and Barnabas having spoken boldly, said, It was necessary the word of God to be spoken first to you. But since, you thrust it away, and you judge yourselves unworthy of eternal life, behold, we are turning to the Gentiles.

Comments Acts 13:46 “Also, Paul and Barnabas having spoken boldly ...” The servants of the Lord God Almighty have the first duty to the Lord’s children and have received the order to come to tell them the good news, but if their hearts are not ready to follow, the Lord will guide them on what the next step should be in order to spread the good news.

“But since, you thrust it away, and you judge ...” The hearts of the Lord’s children were not ready to receive and put themselves down that they are unworthy, but for you to be good or not good to get saved is not by your own work but by the work of the beloved Son of God, Jesus Christ, but the Lord’s children have reject their own God, and the Lord God Almighty sent His servants to go to the Gentiles; the whole earth will be saved through the good news.

47 For so has the Lord commanded us: I have set you for a light of the Gentiles, for you to be for salvation to the uttermost part of the earth.

Comments Acts 13:47 “For so has the Lord commanded us.” The Lord God Almighty commanded His faithful servants to be the light for the world and tell the good news, and proclaim the beloved Son of God to the Gentiles, so that the true light will be shown to the world. To get saved starts with the work of the faithful servants that follow the order in spreading out the beloved Son of God, and the deed for salvation for all humans will be told to the world; the earth belongs to the Lord, and His mercy will be given to all the hearts that are willing to obey.

“I have set you for a light of the Gentiles ...” The Lord God Almighty set His faithful servants to be the messengers to give the good news to the world that the only way to be saved is through the beloved Son of God, the Lord Jesus alone, because the beloved Son of God had come down to be crucified for the world, not only for His children alone. The Gospel of the Lord Jesus is the true light to give out to all.

48 And hearing it, the Gentiles were rejoicing and glorified the word of God, and as many as were ordained to eternal life believed.

Comments Acts 13:48 “And hearing it, the Gentiles were rejoicing ...” All readers give attention: by hearing and opening the hearts, it will bring faith and happy to all. When the heart rejoices, it also opens the soul to receive the good news.

“And as many as were ordained to eternal life believed.” The Lord God Almighty has the plan for all to be saved. When their ears hear the news, and whoever’s hearts are open, they will all be accepted. As it happens, here, the heart opens, the soul receives blessings, and rejoices, and these souls will receive eternal life to be with the Lord God Almighty in Paradise at the end.

Q: Is this saying here predestination? **A:** This is not predestination, but some souls the Lord sends for a purpose.

49 And the word of the Lord was spread through all the region.

Comments Acts 13:49 The reason that the Lord God Almighty has sent His faithful servants to spread the good news in this area has been shown here. The souls that the Lord saw will accept the good news. The Lord God Almighty gives them the chance to hear the good news, and their souls receive the joy, because their hearts truly believe and have faith in the Lord God Almighty.

50 But the Jews stirred up the devout women of honorable position, and the chiefs of the city, and stirred up a persecution against Paul and Barnabas, and drove them out from their boundary.

Comments Acts 13:50 “But the Jews stirred up the devout women ...” The way of the dark to fight against the Lord, they will use the human way to do it. Pay attention, the people in this place all had wealth of this earth and positions in society. For the dark to fight against the Lord God Almighty, they only use the human way and human resources, because they believe that this is the way to win the war.

“And stirred up a persecution against ...” The Lord’s servants were common men who had no power to fight against anybody. By pushing them out of their area, the dark believed that the work of spreading the good news would be stopped in their area, and the people would notice which power was more important on earth.

51 But having shaken off the dust of their feet against, they went to Iconium.

Comments Acts 13:51 “But having shaken off the dust ...” Give attention, all children of God, the Lord God Almighty does not have teaching of violence. For all the believers this is an example: by even the dust that stick on the feet, shaking it off, also mean you have done the work in spreading the good news to save them but they themselves are the ones who rejected the good news and to be saved; by doing this, the Lord God Almighty also will not take you responsible for the lost souls in this place.

“They went to Iconium.” The plan of the Lord God Almighty in saving humans does not stop at one place. When one place rejects the good news, go to the next place to seek souls to be saved. The Lord God Almighty also

guided His servants to go to the next place where the Lord God Almighty also has people who are waiting to be saved.

52 And the disciples were filled with joy and the Holy Spirit.

Comments Acts 13:52 “And the disciples were filled with joy.” When the disciples’ hearts were filled with the Holy Spirit, the joy occupied their souls as well; let all believers pay attention to the joy that they had.

“And the Holy Spirit.” The gift from the Lord God Almighty poured down on the disciples: the Holy Spirit. The mind, the heart, and the soul have been covered with the Holy Spirit; the human heart has received the Holy Spirit to dwell in.

Life and faith applications. 1) Before sending disciples for mission work, a church should fast, pray, and lay hands on them, asking for the anointing of the Holy Spirit. 2) As disciples of the Lord Jesus, we must follow the guidance of the Holy Spirit in spreading the good news to others. 3) When working for the Lord, we must pray, meditate on the Word of God, and listen to the voice of the Holy Spirit. 4) We should not discriminate to whom and where to share the good news; the Lord loves all people, and He has the plan of salvation for the entire world. 5) If persecuted in one place, pray and do not stop; the Lord desires to spread the good news throughout the world, and He will guide us to other places in His plan.

Acts 27

Summary. In this chapter, the apostle Paul is on his journey to Rome. The Lord God Almighty is in control of Paul's life, and everything unfolds according to His plan. God lifts up His apostle in the presence of the two hundred seventy-six souls aboard the ship. **Acts 27:1-8**. The apostle Paul begins his journey to Rome. The apostle Paul and other prisoners were placed on a ship, guarded by a centurion named Julius, to travel to Italy. They stopped at various ports, changed ships at Myra of Lycia, and sailed with difficulty to Fair Havens. **Acts 27:9-13**. The apostle Paul warns the men about the dangers of continuing their journey and encourages them to stay in Fair Havens for the winter. However, the centurion and many of the men on the ship are unwilling to heed Paul's advice. **Acts 27:14-38**. The ship is facing the storm at sea. After leaving Fair Havens, the ship was caught in a storm. As the situation worsened, everyone focused on how to keep the ship afloat and moving with the current, starting by throwing overboard what was unimportant. Panic soon gripped the men on the ship. In this moment of crisis, the Lord God Almighty lifted up His apostle, who became seen as the blessed man receiving guidance from God. He encouraged the men and testified that the Lord had sent His angel to deliver a message: all would be saved and land on an island, but they would lose the ship. **Acts 27:39-44**. The shipwreck and the landing. The Lord God Almighty had a plan for everyone to see and respect the apostle as His mighty man. The weather and nature may work against humans, but everything works according to the plan of the Lord. The ship ran aground and was damaged, but the centurion, wanting to save Paul, instructed everyone to swim or use floating objects. The wind and water currents carried everyone to shore; no lives were lost, and the word of the Lord was fulfilled.

1 And when our sailing to Italy was determined, they delivered both Paul and certain other prisoners to a centurion named Julius, of the cohort of Augustus.

Comments Acts 27:1 At the right time, the Lord God Almighty sent His apostle with the right people in order to reach the destination, and the people who traveled with the apostle would also have a chance to be saved. The Lord God Almighty will use His apostle in every place and situation.

2 Then, embarking on a ship of Adramyttium, being about to sail to places along Asia, we set sail -- Aristarchus, a Macedonian of Thessalonica, being with us.

Comments Acts 27:2 “Then, embarking on a ship ...” The life of the apostle was under the Lord God Almighty’s protection; the boat that will be used to take the apostle to the place must be the right one, and all situations will be under the protection of the Lord.

“Aristarchus, a Macedonian of Thessalonica, being with us.” The mercy of the Lord had brought a faithful companion to be on the same boat with the apostle. The Lord God Almighty had mercy on everyone who traveled with the apostle on this trip.

3 And next we landed at Sidon; and Julius, having treated Paul kindly, allowed him to go to his friends to receive care.

Comments Acts 27:3 The ones who treated the apostle with care, the Lord God Almighty had a purpose to save not only the physical but also the soul. The soldier allowed the apostle to receive care from friends. When the boat stopped for a supply refill, the apostle could go and visit other believers to receive care. The centurion, with the Lord God Almighty working in his heart, trusted the apostle, knowing that even if he granted the apostle freedom, the apostle would not escape but would return. The gentle heart of the centurion was not from himself alone; the ear received the good news, which made the heart gentle, and he put trust and belief in the guidance.

4 And having set sail from there, we sailed under Cyprus, because of the winds being contrary.

5 And having sailed across the open sea along Cilicia and Pamphylia, we came to Myra of Lycia.

6 And there, the centurion, having found a ship of Alexandria sailing to Italy, he placed us into it.

7 Now, having sailed slowly for many days, and with difficulty having arrived off Cnidus, the wind not permitting us, we sailed under Crete, off Salmone;

8 and with difficulty coasting along it, we came to a certain place called Fair Havens, to which close was the city of Lasea.

9 Now much time having passed, and the sailing being now dangerous, because even the Fast was now already passed, Paul advised them,

Comments Acts 27:4-9 Because the sailing faced many situations, the time stretched out further. Now, when they reached this place, where the Lord God Almighty had planned for the apostle to be and to do his duty, the apostle told all people that the time is limited, that the weather also does not permit sailing further; the place to stop is here for now.

10 saying to them, Men, I perceive that the sailing is about to be with harm from insolence and much loss, not only of the load and of the ship, but also of our lives.

Comments Acts 27:10 The Lord God Almighty gave His apostle wisdom to give everyone the reason why sailing should be stopped, because by telling about things around them, they can be replaced, but their own lives cannot be replaced; so, he advised them to think carefully about whether to go or to stop.

11 But the centurion was persuaded by the captain and by the owner of the ship, rather than by Paul's speech.

Comments Acts 27:11 The centurion was more concerned with his own safety than with the safety of the prisoners, and he wanted to listen to what the shipmaster was telling him, even though, in his heart, the spoken word of the apostle had been guiding him to pay attention to what the apostle had spoken.

12 And the harbor being unsuitable to winter in, the more part gave advise to set sail from there; somehow, they might be able to arrive at Phoenix, and winter; a harbor of Crete, looking toward the southwest and toward the northwest.

Comments Acts 27:12 Humans use their eyes and minds to judge the weather, but neither of them has knowledge of what the weather could be like tomorrow. People always think they know what kind of weather the Lord God Almighty will bring tomorrow. By looking at the sky and feeling the wind, people believe they know what the weather will be like. But all humans should think first: who controls the weather? The Lord God Almighty is the One who orders the weather. The winds and the water receive orders from the Creator.

13 Now the south wind having blown gently, having thought they had obtained their purpose, having weighed anchor, they sailed near Crete.

14 However, after not a long time, there beat down from it a tempestuous wind, called the Northeaster;

15 and the ship having been caught, and not being able to face into the wind, having given way, we were driven.

Comments Acts 27:13-15 The apostle had given the word of warning, but humans believe in what they see and think; the sky looked calm, the sea silent, and the hearts of men forgot who controls the weather. Suddenly facing a difficult time, the minds of men were filled with fear. The human mind, when facing problems, will think to ask for help, and the only place they have is the Lord God Almighty. But their warning was not from what they believed but from the apostle who did not have the same belief as them, but proclaimed the name of the Lord God Almighty.

16 Then having run under a certain island called Cauda, we were able, with difficulty, to secure the boat under control;

17 and when they had hoisted it up, they used helps, undergirding the ship; then, fearing lest they should be cast into the Syrtis, having lowered the gear, thus they were driven along.

Comments Acts 27:16-17 Now, when the ship faced a difficult time, everyone on the ship began to fear for their lives, and this made them think back to the word the apostle had told them. But at this point, the fear was not for the ship but for their own lives, and everyone started looking for help, each doing what they had done when problems came. Their minds were thinking of the apostle's warning, but also of the way they used to do things, how to survive.

18 Now, as we labored exceedingly with the storm, on the next day, they began to make a casting out;

19 and on the third day, they cast out with their own hands the tackle of the ship.

Comments Acts 27:18-19 When the situation grew worse, everyone was thinking about how to keep the ship moving with the current, and they started by throwing away what was not important. Everyone was thinking only of how to keep the ship afloat; to go along with the wind, they tried to make way to keep the ship from sinking.

20 And neither sun nor stars appearing for many days, and no small storm lying on us, from then on, all hope was removed of our being saved.

Comments Acts 27:20 The time of panic had come upon all humans on the ship; their hope disappeared. The weather, the waves beating up on the ship, nature beating up on humans' hearts to believe in their own ways; this is the point for humans to realize that safety is not in their own hands but in the Lord God Almighty's alone.

21 And there having been long fasting, then Paul, having stood up in the midst of them, said, O men, it behooved you, indeed, having been obedient to me, not to have set sail from Crete and to have incurred this disaster and loss.

Comments Acts 27:21 "And there having been long fasting." When humans offer sacrifice by fasting, the Lord God Almighty receives them with joy.

"Paul, having stood up in the midst of them." Now, the apostle projected himself in the eyes of everyone as the blessed man who received advice from the Lord God Almighty and the way to be safe for all.

"O men, it behooved you, indeed, ..." Also, the apostle reminded everyone of the words which he had spoken before this trouble came upon them, that they had been warned not set sail until the proper time came.

22 And now I exhort you to be of good cheer; for there will be no loss of life among you, but only of the ship.

Comments Acts 27:22 Humans are concerned about their lives, and now the apostle's words have cheered them: their lives are safe; only the boat and the things of this world will be lost.

23 For there stood by me this night an angel of the God whose I am and whom I serve,

Comments Acts 27:23 The apostle testified to people all around him that the Lord God Almighty, whom he serves, appeared to him. This angel represents the word of the Lord for the apostle. The Lord God Almighty blessed His apostle to see with his physical eyes the angel of the Lord.

24 saying, Fear not, Paul; you must stand before Caesar; and behold, God has granted to you all those sailing with you.

Comments Acts 27:24 “Saying, Fear not, Paul; you must.” The Lord God Almighty told His apostle that he must stand in front of Caesar, and the Lord will also give His apostle the words to speak.

“And behold, God has granted ...” The Lord God Almighty let the apostle know that the lives of everyone on this ship will also be spared, and the apostle can tell them that their lives will be safe.

25 Therefore, men, be of good cheer; for I believe God, that thus it will be, according to the way it has been spoken to me.

26 However, we must fall out upon a certain island.

Comments Acts 27:25-26 The apostle spoke with confidence, for everyone to hear, that all he told them came from the Lord God Almighty. They will all reach an island where they can stop the ship for safety. And he also repeated to them what the Lord God Almighty told him would happen.

27 Then, when the fourteenth night had come, we being driven through in the Adriatic, about the middle of the night, the sailors began sensing they were drawing near to some land;

Comments Acts 27:27 With the mercy of the Lord God Almighty, now the boat, driven by the wind power, came to a safe area, and the people noticed that they were close to the land where the ship could go and stop.

28 and having taken soundings, they found twenty fathoms; and having gone a little farther, and again having taken soundings, they found fifteen fathoms.

29 Then, fearing lest we might fall somewhere on rocky places, having thrown four anchors out of the stern, they were praying for the day to come.

Comments Acts 27:28-29 The boatmen, with their knowledge, checked the water depth for the ship to pass through. After checking, when they noticed the water depth was not enough for the ship, the human action sought help, and all, in one heart, together prayed to the Lord God Almighty, seeking help.

30 Then, as the sailors were seeking to flee out of the ship, and had let down the lifeboat into the sea, under the pretense of being about to cast out the anchors from the foreship,

Comments Acts 27:30 When the people saw that their lives were in danger, they pretended to do a good deed in order that they themselves could escape alone.

31 Paul said to the centurion and to the soldiers, If these do not remain in the ship, you cannot be saved.

Comments Acts 27:31 The apostle, with the guidance of the Lord God Almighty, gave a warning to the centurion and soldiers that, for themselves to be saved, they must keep everyone in the boat. If anyone strayed away from the boat, none would be saved.

32 Then the soldiers cut away the ropes of the lifeboat, and let her fall off.

Comments Acts 27:32 The word the apostle spoke through the Holy Spirit took root in the soldiers' hearts themselves. In order to follow the advice of the apostle to save their lives, the soldiers cut away the lifeboat, which meant to cut off the help for themselves as well. This action showed all the people on the boat that the soldiers who controlled their lives on this boat followed the advice that the Lord God Almighty gave to His apostle.

33 Then, until the day was about to come, Paul exhorted all to take food, saying, Today you continue the fourteenth day watching without food, having taken nothing.

34 Therefore, I exhort you to take food; indeed, this is for your safety; for not one hair from your head will perish.

Comments Acts 27:33-34 The apostle spoke with great confidence in front of all; in his words, he encouraged everyone that indeed the Lord God Almighty will protect all, and that everyone will be safe, as the verse told all: not even a hair of their heads will perish. This saying gave more confidence to the hearers that if the Lord God Almighty cares for one single thing of the body, their life will not perish.

35 Now having said these, and having taken bread, he gave thanks to God in front of all; and having broken it, he began to eat.

Comments Acts 27:35 “Now having said these, and ...” Give attention to the action of the apostle. In front of all people, by giving thanks to the Lord God Almighty and breaking the bread, the apostle invited everyone to take communion, glorifying the Lord God Almighty for all things.

“And having broken it, he began to eat.” By eating the bread with thanksgiving, it showed all people that their health would be well. When you take communion with thanksgiving, the Lord will receive your fast as an offering in appreciation.

36 Then, all having been encouraged, they also took food.

37 And we were in all in the ship two hundred seventy-six souls.

Comments Acts 27:36-37 The apostle, speaking by the guidance of the Holy Spirit, gave courage to everyone on the ship that all will be saved, no life will perish.

38 Then having been filled with food, they lightened the ship, throwing out the wheat into the sea.

39 Now, when it was day, they knew not the land; however, they observed a certain bay having a shore, on which they determined to drive the ship if they should be able.

40 And having cut away the anchors, they left them in the sea, at the same time loosing the ropes of the rudders; and having raised up the foresail to the blowing wind, they began making for the shore.

41 However, having fallen into a place between two seas, they ran the ship aground; and indeed, the foreship struck and remained immovable, but the stern was broken up by the violence.

Comments Acts 27:40-41 The Lord God Almighty had a plan for everyone to see and respect the apostle as His mighty man. The weather and nature may work against humans, but everything works according to the plan of the Lord, and the Lord God Almighty’s plan to lift up the apostle will begin in the hardship of everyone (see verses 23 to 26).

42 And the counsel of the soldiers was that they should kill the prisoners, lest anyone should swim away, and escape.

43 But the centurion, desiring to save Paul, prevented them from the purpose; and he commanded those being able to swim, having cast themselves off first, to get out to the land;

Comments Acts 27:43 “But the centurion, desiring to save Paul.” The Lord God Almighty worked in the gentle heart of the centurion to have attachment with the apostle and was willing to do under his authority to save the apostle from harm.

“Prevented them from the purpose ...” At the same time, the Lord God Almighty gave intelligence to the centurion to be able to save himself by giving the order to everyone to swim out from the ship to save their lives, in order to cover his own wish to save the apostle alone.

44 and the rest, some indeed on planks, and some on things from the ship. And thus, it came to pass that all were brought safely to the land.

Comments Acts 27:44 “And the rest, some indeed on planks ...” Everyone could find something to help them float and reach the land safely. The word of the Lord God Almighty, through the apostle’s mouth, that everybody will be safe, was fulfilled; when they put their trust in the word of the Lord God Almighty, all were safe.

“And thus, it came to pass ...” The wind and the current of the water washed everyone on the shore; no life perished, and the word of the Lord had been fulfilled.

Life and faith applications. 1) When we serve the Lord, we must pray, surrender ourselves to Him, and trust Him in all situations. 2) We must all believe that the Lord God Almighty is in control of the weather, and we should always listen to His voice when facing weather challenges. 3) Whenever we face difficult situations in our lives, we should offer a sacrifice to the Lord through fasting, as the Lord God Almighty receives these sacrifices with joy. 4) If the Lord speaks to us with words of warning or encouragement, we should always deliver His messages as soon as possible. 5) If we are entrusted with people’s lives, we must honor and value all lives and do everything in our power to rescue anyone in danger.

Acts 28

Summary. In this chapter, the apostle Paul is on the island of Melita. He then journeys to Rome and ultimately arrives in the city. While on his travels and while in Rome, the Lord God Almighty empowers him to proclaim the good news of the Lord Jesus. **Acts 28:1-10.** The apostle Paul on Melita. The word of the Lord God Almighty has been fulfilled, as He revealed it to His apostle: everyone reached the land safely on the island of Melita. The Lord God Almighty lifted up the apostle in front of all the people of the island, and He performed great miracles through him. Although the apostle's stay with the people on the island was short, many miracles were performed, and the name of the Lord God Almighty was proclaimed. **Acts 28:11-16.** The apostle Paul arrives in Rome. The Lord God Almighty put favor in the hearts of people of Melita to help the apostle's journey to Rome and provide for his needs for the journey. On the journey, whenever they had a chance to stop, the apostle would seek out believers with whom he could worship the Lord together. **Acts 28:17-31.** The apostle Paul in Rome. In Rome, the apostle stayed in his own rented place, guarded by a soldier. He invited the brothers and Jewish leaders from the surrounding area to meet with him. He declared that he had committed no crime against the country and had been unjustly handed over to Rome for judgment. Additionally, he wanted the brothers to understand that he was experiencing this persecution because of his faith in the Lord God Almighty. The Lord stirred their curiosity, prompting them to learn more about his beliefs. Guided by the Holy Spirit, the apostle testified about salvation through the Lord Jesus Christ; some believed, while others did not. During his time in Rome, the apostle welcomed everyone who came to him and proclaimed the resurrection of the Lord Jesus Christ, through His suffering and love. He shared the complete story of the beloved Son of God, Jesus Christ, and His sacrifice for all humanity.

1 And having been saved, then we knew that the island is called Melita.

2 And the barbarians showed us no ordinary kindness; for having kindled a fire, they received us all, because the rain was present, and because of the cold.

3 Now Paul, having gathered a bundle of sticks and having laid them on the fire, a viper having come out for the heat, fastened upon his hand.

Comments Acts 28:1-3 The word of the Lord God Almighty has been fulfilled as He gave it to His apostle: everyone reached the shore safely. Now, the Lord God Almighty showed kindness to the barbarian people, allowing them to see and experience the miracle. Let the believers notice the action of the apostle. After reaching the shore, he did not stay and wait to help people; the apostle himself did not stay idle but went and gathered sticks to make a fire for those who were wet to receive heat. At this time, the mighty power of the Lord God Almighty was shown to all when a viper bit the apostle's hand. Everyone saw the viper hanging from the apostle's hand, and now everyone had the same thought: the apostle may have been saved from the water, but nature did not want him to live, and he had been bitten by the viper instead.

4 Then, when the barbarians saw the venomous creature hanging from his hand, they said one to another, Surely this man is a murderer, whom, having been saved from the sea, Justice has not permitted to live.

Comments Acts 28:4 "Then, when the barbarians saw ..." In the barbarian mind, regardless of whether smart or not, when a person has escaped from drowning, even on land, the evil deed the person committed still follows and seeks revenge to prevent him from having a long life.

"Whom, having been saved from the sea ..." Being barbarians, they believed in the power of their god, which would not let the wrongdoing pass without punishment, and here the apostle escaped death from drowning, but still faced another death from a creature.

5 Then, he, indeed, having shaken off the creature into the fire, he suffered no harm.

Comments Acts 28:5 The apostle, when he saw the viper hanging on his hand, without fear, shook it over the fire, and the viper fell into the fire.

6 But they were expecting him to be about to swell or to fall down dead suddenly; however, they expecting it a long time, and seeing nothing uncommon happening to him, having changed their opinion, they spoke of him being a god.

Comments Acts 28:6 "But they were expecting him ..." Everyone noticed what kind of viper had bitten the apostle, and all thought one thing only: death

would befall the apostle. This viper had a strong venom that could kill instantly.

“However, they expecting it a long time ...” Everyone was waiting and expecting to see the dead fall, but a long while passed, and nothing happened. The human mind changed suddenly and took this as a sign that the apostle was their god in disguise, so this viper could not do him any harm.

7 Now, in around that place were lands belonging to the chief of the island, named Publius, who having received us, lodged us kindly three days.

Comments Acts 28:7 By the mercy of the Lord God Almighty, the chief leader of the people received the apostle to stay at their place. The Lord God Almighty had a purpose for His apostle to stay with the leader of the people. This way, the apostle will have a chance to speak more with people.

8 Then it happened, the father of Publius, afflicted with fevers and dysentery, was lying; toward whom Paul, having entered in, and having prayed, having laid the hands on him, healed him.

Comments Acts 28:8 “Then it happened, the father of Publius ...” Having been invited to stay with the leader, the apostle entered the place. The Lord God Almighty guided His apostle to be with the right people and at the right place. In this place, the Lord God Almighty will use His apostle to perform miracle work, and the witnesses of this miracle will be the ones who help spread the mighty work of God.

“And having prayed, having laid his hands ...” The apostle, with the guidance of the Holy Spirit, began by praying to glorify the Lord God Almighty. Let all readers give attention; first, we must glorify the Lord, because everything is in the Lord God Almighty’s will and power to do the work. By the guidance of the Holy Spirit, the apostle laid hands upon the sick, and the miracle happened. The magnificent power of the Lord God Almighty healed the sick and made the person whole. The leader of the people witnessed the miracle work of the Lord God Almighty, and this event made the leader’s heart accept and submit to the Lord God Almighty; the old belief was wiped from the leader’s head, and the new belief in the miracle power of the Lord God Almighty replaced it, keeping the heart firm.

9 And this having been done, the rest also in the island having sicknesses were coming, and were healed,

Comments Acts 28:9 “And this having been done.” When the result was positive, the witnesses also experienced the mighty power; now, not only by hearing, but also by seeing with their eyes, the sickness disappeared, and the person received healing. This was the beginning of miracle work, which led people’s hearts to search for and ask the apostle more about this; the urge to know more about the Lord God Almighty entered people’s hearts.

“The rest also in the island having sicknesses ...” When the people saw the miracle, all those with problems and illnesses came to the apostle to receive healing.

10 who also honored us with many honors; and on setting sail, they put upon us the things for the needs.

Comments Acts 28:10 The length of time the apostle stayed with the people on the island was not long, but many miracle works had been performed, and the name of the Lord God Almighty was proclaimed. When the time came for the apostle to leave them, all in one accord gave everything that the apostle needed for the journey. The Lord God Almighty put favor in people’s hearts to help the apostle’s journey.

11 Then, after three months, we sailed in a ship of Alexandria, having wintered on the island, with a figurehead of Dioscuri.

12 And touching at Syracuse, we remained three days.

13 From there, taking off, we arrived at Rhegium; and after one day, a south wind having come on, on the second day we came to Puteoli;

14 where, having found brothers, we were encouraged to remain with them seven days; and so, we came to Rome.

Comments Acts 28:14 On the travels, whenever the apostle had a chance to stop, the first thing he would do was seek out believers with whom he could stay and glorify the Lord together. Because all his life, in the apostle’s heart, he wanted to spread the good news and bring more people to glorify the Lord God Almighty.

15 And from there the brothers, having heard the things concerning us, came to meet us as far as The Market of Appius and The Three Taverns; whom Paul, having seen, having given thanks to God, took courage.

Comments Acts 28:15 The Holy Spirit guided the believers to come and meet the apostle. The hearts that had faith in the Lord God Almighty obeyed the guidance of the Holy Spirit and longed to hear more about the Lord God Almighty; these hearts came to meet the apostle to hear and worship the Lord God Almighty together.

16 And when we entered into Rome, [the centurion delivered the prisoners to the captain of the guard]. Paul was allowed to stay by himself with the soldier guarding him.

17 Then, it came to pass, after three days, he called together those being leaders of the Jews; then they, having come together, he said to them, I, men, brothers, having done nothing against the people, or the customs of our fathers, was delivered a prisoner from Jerusalem into the hands of the Romans;

Comments Acts 28:17 “Then, it came to pass, after three days ...” The apostle had been delivered to prison, but he had some freedom, as he was not a common prisoner; being a citizen of an important country, he had privileges. The Holy Spirit guided the apostle to gather the people who had faith and belief in the Lord God Almighty to talk and share with them the faith that he had. The work for the apostle in teaching about the beloved Son of God began at this time in Rome.

“Then they, having come together ...” The apostle told all the brothers in faith that he had committed no crime against the country but had been unjustly delivered to Rome to be judged. But he also wanted to let the brothers know that, because of his faith in the Lord God Almighty, he had received this persecution. And he also wanted the brothers in faith to know that, even facing trouble, do not be afraid. If you are spreading the good news to the people to save their souls, the Lord God Almighty will help you to succeed.

18 who, having examined me, wished to set me free, because there was no cause of death in me.

19 However, of the Jews speaking against it, I was compelled to appeal to Caesar, not as having anything to accuse my nation of.

Comments Acts 28:19 The apostle spoke out under the guidance of the Holy Spirit. He explained the situation to everyone, and with confidence, he could tell all that he had done nothing wrong and that he would not even accuse his own nation. But because some of his own people could not accept the truth of the good news that he brought, that without truly repenting and returning to the Lord God Almighty, their sins will never be forgiven, he is a prisoner.

20 For this cause, therefore, I have called you to see and to speak to you; for because of the hope of Israel, I am bound with this chain.

21 And they said to him, We neither received letters from Judea concerning you, nor did any of the brothers, having arrived, report or say anything bad concerning you.

Comments Acts 28:20-21 The apostle explained to all the brothers that he did nothing and reported nothing negatively against anyone regarding his doing in spreading the good news of the resurrection of the beloved Son of God. The Lord God Almighty will forgive them all if they repent and come back to worship Him.

22 However, we deem it worthy to hear from you what you think, for truly concerning this sect, it is known to us that everywhere it is spoken against.

Comments Acts 28:22 The Lord's children heard the good news, but not straight from the apostle, so this raised questions and wonder about the true story the apostle was telling people. The Lord God Almighty worked in their hearts to be curious and wanting to know more, but the minds of people still need to receive more good news to convince the heart to be open to listening and thinking; they need strong encouragement in the heart to be open.

23 Then, having appointed a day to him, they came to him to the lodging many; to whom he explained, testifying the kingdom of God, and persuading them concerning Jesus, from both the law of Moses and the prophets, from morning until evening.

Comments Acts 28:23 "Then, having appointed a day to him." The people gave orders to the apostle about the day they wanted to come to hear him speak.

“They came to him to the lodging many ...” Now, the Lord God Almighty stirred up the apostle’s heart about what to speak and how to speak. The opportunity for the apostle to speak happened, and the Holy Spirit was guiding the apostle’s mouth in what to speak.

“Persuading them concerning Jesus ...” With great learning, the apostle had knowledge, but with the help of the Holy Spirit, the apostle could link the Old Testament to salvation by grace. And the people, when their ears heard the word about the Lord God Almighty, the open hearts received the good news, and the Holy Spirit worked with those hearts to accept the good news of salvation.

24 And some, indeed, were persuaded of the things he spoke, and some disbelieved.

25 Then, disagreeing with one another, they departed, Paul, having spoken one word: Rightly spoke the Holy Spirit through Isaiah the prophet to your fathers,

26 saying, Go to these people, and say, Hearing you will hear, and will not understand; And seeing you will see, and will not see;

27 For this people's heart is waxed gross, And they barely hear with the ears, And their eyes they have closed; Lest ever they should see with the eyes, And they should hear with the ears, And they should understand with the heart, And should turn, And I will heal them.

Comments Acts 28:25-27 See Comments John 12:40.

28 Therefore, be it known to you that this salvation of God has been sent to the Gentiles; then, they will listen.

Comments Acts 28:25-28 The apostle spoke the word that the Holy Spirit gave to him. Also, the Holy Spirit linked the situation back to the prophecy told by the prophet Isaiah to the Lord’s children regarding their actions.

“Then, they will listen.” When the good news of salvation is told to the world, people who are called will listen to that good news.

29 [And having said these things, the Jews departed, having much disputing among themselves.]

Comments Acts 28:29 It is believed that this verse was not part of the original writings of the Book of Acts.

30 And he remained two whole years in his own rent, and he accepted all coming unto him,

31 proclaiming the kingdom of God, and teaching the things concerning the Lord Jesus Christ with all boldness, without hindrance.

Comments Acts 28:30-31 "... proclaiming the kingdom of God." The apostle spent some time in this place with people, but also with the guidance of the Holy Spirit, he received everyone with joy, regardless of who they were. In the apostle's heart, the purpose of being there alive was to proclaim the good news and to point the way for souls to be saved, because the apostle knew that the only way to be saved is through the Lord God Almighty's mercy. The mercy of the Lord God Almighty through His beloved Son, Jesus Christ, is the only true way for souls to be saved.

"Teaching the things concerning the Lord Jesus Christ ..." The apostle proclaimed the resurrection of the Lord Jesus Christ through His suffering and love. The apostle told everyone the whole story regarding the beloved Son of God, Jesus Christ, and His sacrifice for all humans.

Life and faith applications. 1) Trust in the Lord God Almighty in all situations by praying in the name of the Lord Jesus. 2) Do not test the Lord by intentionally handling venomous snakes and expecting to be protected from their poison; the apostle Paul did not catch the snake on purpose; the viper, having come out for the heat, bit his hand unexpectedly; however, the Lord God Almighty miraculously protected Paul as a miraculous sign of His power and mercy to the people on the island. 3) Pray with faith for those who are ill when the Holy Spirit leads you to do so. 4) When traveling, it is beneficial to seek out fellow believers and worship with them. 5) Proclaim the resurrection of the Lord Jesus Christ through His suffering and love. Let us tell everyone the whole story regarding the beloved Son of God, Jesus Christ, and His sacrifice for all humans.

SECTION 3: Faith Fundamentals Articles

In this section, we present a selection of articles on core faith fundamentals of Bible Commentary Forever Ministries in the Trinity of God—God the Father, God the Son (Jesus Christ), and God the Holy Spirit—as guided by the Holy Spirit.

The Trinity of God

What is the Trinity of God?

In this article, we present the doctrine of the Trinity of God, as derived from the teachings of the Gospels, reflecting our Bible Commentary Forever work. We encourage all readers also to consult our blog article titled [Teachings about the Lord Jesus being the Son of God and the Son of Man](#), where we offer a comprehensive analysis of the teachings of the Gospels regarding the deity of the Lord Jesus.

God is One in His Trinity. The Trinity of God is God the Father, God the Son, Jesus Christ, and God the Holy Spirit. The Trinity of God is not directly mentioned in the Scripture. However, the Trinity of God is implied in many passages of Scripture (see [Comments Matthew 3:16](#), [Comments John 1:1](#), and [Comments John 1:18](#)). We believe that the Lord Jesus is and always has been God within the Trinity of God. The Lord Jesus, as God within the Trinity of God, has power and authority, in Himself, to perform miraculous works, perform miraculous healings, and to know the times. Specifically, even while the Lord Jesus was on earth as a man, He remained fully God and held dominion over all things in both the seen and unseen worlds. Thus, while on earth, the Lord Jesus was not merely a prophet filled with the Holy Spirit; He is the Son of God and God within the Trinity of God. Additionally, as the Son of Man, the Lord Jesus was truly human, experiencing all aspects of life like any other man.

While in heaven, the Lord Jesus existed in the Bosom of the Father, and shared in His Form and glory ([John 1:18](#)). The Lord Jesus laid aside this Heavenly Body to take up residence in an earthly temple the Father had prepared for Him in the womb of the virgin Mary, by the power of the Holy Spirit ([Matthew 17:2](#), [Acts 7:48-49](#), [Hebrews 10:5-7](#)). In this Human Form, the Son of God lived, died, and rose again as a human being and as the Beloved Son – accomplishing the full will of the Father for His creation and taking His rightful place in His human Body at the Father's side ([Mark 16:19](#), [Philippians 2:5-11](#)). Though He was found in Human Form, to look on the face of the Lord Jesus was to look on the face and the body of God ([John 14:9](#)). By the mercy of the Father, the human body of the Lord Jesus enabled sinful humans to look on God Himself and not die ([Exodus 33:20](#)).

We can imagine the Trinity of God as a triangle with God the Father, God the Son, Jesus Christ, and God the Holy Spirit, all connected as Three Persons in One. God in His Trinity is eternal, and creator of all things seen and unseen. Genesis 1:1 tells us that “in the beginning, God created the heavens and the earth,” and Genesis 1:26 tells us that “God said, Let Us make man in Our image, after Our likeness.” When the Bible says, “make in Our likeness,” it means that the Trinity of God has been involved from the beginning of the creation. The Trinity of God has created all things in this time of creation, the world of the seen and the unseen; the God of Three has created all for His pleasure (see [Comments John 1:1](#)).

God the Father is eternal and exists before all created things. In Him, the Son, Jesus Christ, and the Holy Spirit also exist. Although we speak of Three Gods, they are equal and unified as One. Each One has His own duty, which makes the Three become One in duty as well. The Father is above all, yet the Three are united together in Him (see [Comments John 14:28](#)).

The God of Three but One in unity. The duty may be different, but the power and authority are One, and the Father is above all. Think about it this way: in the Father Himself is the unity of the Three (the Father, the Son, Jesus Christ, and the Holy Spirit). All of them are in unity as One in the Father. Remember as well, all is in the Father, and everything belongs to the Father (see [Comments Matthew 24:36](#)).

The Holy Spirit is the Spirit of the Father, but the Son, Jesus Christ, has His own Spirit as well (see [Comments Matthew 27:50](#), and Acts 16:7). The Lord Jesus is God the Man, and in His humanity, He has Spirit, Soul, and Body. Therefore, the Son, the Lord Jesus, in His complete humanity as Spirit, Soul, and Body is One Person within the Trinity of God (see [Comments Matthew 27:50](#), and [Comments Luke 23:46](#)). Thus, the Holy Spirit is the Spirit of the Father Himself, but when talking about the Spirit of the Lord Jesus Christ, this is the beloved Son of God’s Spirit, which is not the same. Each Spirit has their own duty and authority; two Spirits but One together within the Trinity. Don’t forget that the earth is the footstool of the Father, both Spirits will be on earth, and each has their own responsibility. When we invite the Holy Spirit to come in the name of the Lord Jesus, the Holy Spirit will work in our hearts and minds. The Holy Spirit’s duty is to testify to our hearts and minds about the Lord Jesus as the Savior of the world. When we invite the Spirit of the beloved Son of God, Jesus Christ, to come as well, He will work straight in our souls to enlighten and give understanding for the work we do. Our petitions are taken to the

Lord Jesus Himself through His Spirit and the Holy Spirit, who then presents them to the Father on our behalf.

The Trinity of God makes the Bible complete, and we cannot leave out any one of the Three: the Father, the Son Jesus Christ, or the Holy Spirit. However, the Father is first (see [Comments Matthew 20:23](#)).

Why is Faith in the Trinity of God Important for a Christian?

A human cannot be saved alone without the Trinity of God. The soul and spirit of a human need the Trinity faith guideline, which is the Holy Son, Jesus Christ, who has all in His humanity: the Trinity of God and the human's three dimensions; all humans will be saved through faith in the Lord Jesus Christ the beloved Son of God. If you call yourself a believer, you must believe in the Trinity of God. The God of Three is the base for believers' faith. Matthew 3:16 tells us that "Jesus, having been baptized, ascended immediately from the water; and behold, the heavens were opened to Him, and He saw the Spirit of God descending as a dove, alighting upon Him." The water baptism of the Lord Jesus serves as a clear testimony to the Trinity of God in the Bible, where all Three Persons of the Trinity (God the Father, God the Son, Jesus Christ, and God the Holy Spirit) unite in their testimony to humanity (see [Comments Matthew 3:16](#)).

We encourage all readers of this article to review our core beliefs (see [Core Faith](#)) and explore the various articles we offer that provide essential doctrinal perspectives for anyone who follows the Lord Jesus Christ as their Lord and Savior.

BCF Comments Related to the Trinity of God

The Gospel of John highlights the importance of glorifying the beloved Son of God as divine. In this gospel, John presents a clear understanding of the Trinity of God. Therefore, anyone with questions about the Trinity of God should refer to the Gospel of John for answers. Below is a list of comments from the Gospel of John where, in our commentary, we connect Bible verses to the concept of the Trinity of God.

Comments in the Gospel of John regarding the Trinity of God, organized by chapter

- [John 1:1](#); [John 1:2](#); [John 1:18](#); [John 1:33](#).
[John 3:5](#); [John 3:6](#); [John 3:11](#).
[John 5:14](#); [John 5:19](#); [John 5:26](#); [John 5:27](#).
[John 6:56](#); [John 6:57](#).
[John 7:17](#); [John 7:20](#).

John 8:16; John 8:50; John 8:55; John 8:58.

John 10:18.

John 12:25; John 12:36; John 12:40; John 12:49.

John 13:31.

John 14:10; John 14:11; John 14:13; John 14:16; John 14:23; John 14:24; John 14:26; John 14:28; John 14:29.

John 15:7; John 15:20; John 15:26.

John 16:7; John 16:8; John 16:9; John 16:13; John 16:21; John 16:27; John 16:32.

John 17:12; John 17:21; John 17:22; John 17:24.

John 18:11; John 18:33; John 18:37.

John 19:3; John 19:11; John 19:15; John 19:18; John 19:34.

John 20:17.

Additionally, we list below all our comments related to the Trinity of God in the Gospels of Matthew and Luke.

Comments in the Gospel of Matthew regarding the Trinity of God, organized by chapter

- Matthew 3:16.

Matthew 13:20-21; Matthew 13:27; Matthew 13:52.

Matthew 19:17.

Matthew 20:23.

Matthew 24:36.

Matthew 27:20.

Matthew 27:50.

Comments in the Gospel of Luke regarding the Trinity of God, organized by chapter

- Luke 3:22.

Luke 4:14.

Luke 19:11.

Luke 22:70.

Luke 23:34; Luke 23:37.

The God We Serve

Introduction

We, as the followers of the Lord Jesus Christ, the Son of God, must obey all the commandments the Lord Jesus gives us. However, there are a few core faith statements that separate us and define the God we serve. The following is a link to our core faith statements: [Bible Commentary Forever Ministries Core Faith](#). In this blog, we will meditate on the first three essential core faith principles:

1. We believe in the Trinity of God: God the Father, God the Son, Jesus Christ, and God the Holy Spirit; God of Three but One. God of Three: different in each individual, but the Three become One in the Father; everything is in the Father. The God of Three is One from the beginning. The Lord Jesus Christ was begotten when He took flesh upon Himself, but He is One with the Father from the beginning (read our article: [The Trinity of God](#)). -- Genesis 1:26-28; [Matthew 3:16-17](#); [Matthew 19:17](#); [Matthew 28:19](#); [Luke 3:21-23](#); [John 1:1-3](#); [John 1:14](#); [John 3:16](#).
2. We believe the Lord Jesus Christ was born of the Holy Spirit and the Virgin Mary to be the Son of God and the Son of Man (read our article: [The Lord Jesus the Son of God and the Son of Man](#)). -- [Matthew 1:25](#); [Luke 1:30-35](#).
3. We believe the Lord Jesus Christ is both the Son of God and the Son of Man, being one hundred percent God and one hundred percent man. Furthermore, the Lord Jesus Christ is the only sinless human and the only begotten Son of God (read our article: [The Lord Jesus the Son of God and the Son of Man](#)). -- [Matthew 12:18](#); [Matthew 17:2](#); [Matthew 20:28](#); [Mark 14:61-62](#); [John 1:1-5](#); [John 3:13](#); [John 10:28-30](#); Colossians 2:9.

The Way of the Followers Jesus Christ the Son of God

In our walk with the Lord Jesus, we must clearly understand who the Lord Jesus is for us, and we must keep the narrow way as He teaches us. In [Matthew 7:13-14](#), we find the teaching of our Lord Jesus about the way of being a true believer:

Matthew 7:13 Enter through the narrow gate, for wide is the gate, and broad is the way leading to destruction, and many are those entering through it. 14 For narrow is the gate, and straitened the way, leading to life, and few are those finding it.

Comments Matthew 7:14. “For narrow ... leading to life.” Humans are selfish and believe in themselves, so it is hard for them to accept that a man can be God. They cannot accept that God walked on earth as a man. The dark mind covers the eyes of humans. The way is narrow, and there is only one way to heaven: through the Lord Jesus. How many humans are there willing to give their life for another human? There is no other way to heaven but to believe in the Lord Jesus. In John 14:6, the Lord Jesus tells us, “I am the way, and the truth, and the life; no one comes to the Father, if not by Me.”

“Few are ... finding it.” People try to find reasons to fight against the virgin birth. They limit God’s power to make a human baby without the action in a human manner. However, John 1:13 clearly tells us that the Lord Jesus was born by the power of God. Only a few have clear minds and can accept that God has the power to do unbelievable things; those few will find the way to heaven.

The Incarnation of the Word in the Lord Jesus, the Son of God

In John 1:11-14, we read about the incarnation of the Word of God into the person of the Lord Jesus as the Son of God and the Son of Man.

John 1:11 He came to His own, and those belonging to Himself received Him not. 12 But as many as received Him, to them He gave the right to become children of God, to those that believe in His name,

Comments John 1:12. Now, this verse does not talk about only His own people, but talks about all humans of this earth; all that comes and accepts the Lord Jesus from a true heart, the Lord Himself will adopt them all to be His children; they just need to accept His beloved Son to be the true God for them, and all will earn that right to become children of God.

13 who was born, not out of blood, nor out of the will of the flesh, nor out of the will of man, but of God.

Comments John 1:13. “Who was born, not out of blood, nor out of the will of the flesh.” At first, all readers should think, when the verse has told “not out of the blood,” what do you think of that blood? The beloved Son of God was not

born through the sperm of a human, which is the blood; that is the meaning. When the Bible has told, “nor out of the will of the flesh,” the beloved Son of God was not born through the woman’s will but the will of the Father Himself who gave the woman to be able to conceive the beloved Son in her womb; that is why the verse tells He was not born by the will of the flesh.

“Nor out of the will of man, but of God.” From the verse itself, we can clearly see that the beloved Son of God came down to be born by the will of the Father Himself, which is the most honorable will; also, the beloved Son of God was utterly willing to come down to do so the Father’s will.

14 And the Word became flesh and dwelt among us, and we beheld His glory, glory as of the only begotten from the Father, full of grace and truth.

Comments John 1:14. “And the Word became flesh and dwelt among us.” This portion of the verse clearly tells all humans that the beloved Son of God came down to be born as a human and took the human flesh to be His own; the beloved Son of God has lowered Himself down to be a human.

“and we beheld His glory ... full of grace and truth.” From the first breath of life that the beloved Son of God has taken on this earth, His glory has shown to all humans, the glory from the Father Himself, the glory from the Father Himself has come down with the beloved Son as well, all humans can see through His grace and the truth that He is teaching to all humans; all His teaching is the truth of life, every human should take it seriously, the Bible is the Word of life.

Full of grace in this place means that when every human reads the Bible, all can notice the way the beloved Son of God has used His life on earth, teaching and pointing out the way to be saved; all of the teaching the beloved Son of God has given to humans is giving according to His own grace to humans, for all can see and worship Him.

Grace (meaning from Webster dictionary): unmerited divine assistance given to humans for their regeneration or sanctification.

The Deity of the Lord Jesus

In John 10:29-30, we clearly learn about the deity of the Lord Jesus.

John 10:29 My Father, who has given to Me, is greater than all; and no one is able to snatch out from the Father's hand.

Comments John 10:29. In this verse, let all the believers notice that the Father Himself is the One that picks you and gives you into the beloved Son's hand; whoever or whatever that wants to snatch you, their fight will be with the Father; that is why you can be sure, nothing can fight with the Father's hand.

30 I and the Father are One.

Comments John 10:30. All readers must keep this in their hearts; the beloved Son of God and the Father are One. Therefore, because God is One, you cannot worship only One person, but you must worship the God of Three in One (God the Father, God the Son Jesus Christ, and God the Holy Spirit).

And, in John 14:6, the Lord Jesus tells us about the way of truth and life.

John 14:6 Jesus says to him, I am the way, and the truth, and the life; no one comes to the Father, if not by Me.

Comments John 14:6. "I am the way." The beloved Son of God has said to all true believers, according to the way of living, you walk on the road, but when to come to be alive on both this earth and the earth to come, you must walk the way the beloved Son of God has walked for you; you can see what He has taught you, use that way for your walk. When He says He is the way, He also tells all readers: you have the beloved Son of God as a leader, use His teaching, meditate on His word, and you will know the way to walk on this life.

"And the truth." The beloved Son of God in human form is the truth for humans. His way of being human has also shown all humans that humans can be better than now. The Lord did not create humans just for His pleasure; He loves humans, and the beloved Son of God is the proof of His true love for humans; when the beloved Son has accepted the human form, the true love of God has been proven to all humans. He is the truth because He has come in person and has taken the form of a human; think in this way as well, the God Most High came down and took human form to show the true love of God towards humans; the truth of God has been shown in His love.

“And the life.” Through the beloved Son of God, you can have life after death. The life He will give to you is for eternity; that is the true life you will get if you keep the teaching of the Holy Bible until the last day of your life on earth.

“No one comes” The Father is the Most High God, and to come to Him is only one way through the beloved Son of God. So, there is no other way to be close to the Father, but only if you are behind the beloved Son of God; the glory of the beloved Son will shadow your soul, and your soul will be safe in front of the Father.

Meditation Tasks:

1. Read our article [The Trinity of God.](#)
2. Read our webpage [Make Peace with God the Father through His Son Jesus Christ.](#)
3. Meditate on the Trinity of God and who the Lord Jesus is for you.
4. Find further Scripture verses supporting the Trinity of God, the Deity of our Lord Jesus, and His humanity.
5. Choose one or two verses about the deity of our Lord Jesus and memorize them.

If you have any questions about the God we serve, please get in touch with us, and we will try to provide our answers in a timely manner.

The Lord Jesus: the Son of God and the Son of Man

Introduction

The Lord Jesus is one hundred percent God and one hundred percent human. He is the only sinless human (2 Corinthians 5:21) and the only begotten Son of God ([John 1:14](#), [John 1:18](#), [John 3:16](#)). In His Deity and humanity, He is God of the [Trinity of God](#), and He is One with God the Father and God the Holy Spirit from the beginning ([John 1:1](#)). In Hebrews chapter 10, we learn that the Lord Jesus Christ is the perfect sacrifice made once for the entire human race. He offered Himself once and forever as a sacrifice for sins and then sat down at the right hand of God the Father. Because of that, God the Father took away the Old Covenant and established a New Covenant in the blood of the Lord Jesus, “by which will we have been sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.” So, for a believer in the Lord Jesus, keeping the Old Covenant means keeping the New Covenant in the blood of the Lord Jesus. The Lord Jesus is the way, the truth, and the life, and no one comes to the Father but by Him ([John 14:6](#)).

The Lord Jesus is Son of God and Son of Man at the Same Time

The Lord Jesus is both the Son of God and the Son of Man, meaning that He is one hundred percent God and one hundred percent Man. This section presents Biblical verses and comments supporting these claims. Many of these comments can also be found in our [Bible Commentary Forever](#) work. We encourage all readers to check the links provided and meditate on all the comments we provide.

[John 1:18](#). No one has seen God ever yet; only the begotten God, the One existing in the bosom of the Father, He shows the way.

[Comments John 1:18](#). “No one has seen God ever yet.” As the verse says, nobody ever has seen the Father because all things are just created things; the eyes cannot afford to see the Father Himself. With human eyes, you cannot see the Father. The human eyes cannot see the Father, but the Father has shown Himself through the beloved Son of God.

“Only the begotten God the One existing in the bosom of the Father, He shows the way.” As the verse tells all believers, the beloved Son of God has the

Father Himself in Him; whatever the beloved Son of God has taught that is the Father Himself teaching humans, all humans can know the Father through the beloved Son of God's teachings.

Here, we can ask ourselves, what does it mean when the Bible says, “begotten God,” and how is the Lord Jesus begotten if He is part of the Trinity? The Father Himself is the head of the Trinity; in the Father, the beloved Son, and the Holy Spirit also exist; that is why we can say the Trinity of God is Three, but all are One in the Father. With the mercy of the Father, He has allowed the beloved Son and the Holy Spirit to come out and shine to be the light for all, but the Trinity is always still there, Three in One; this is its meaning. Think in this way: the Father is here; with the mercy of the Father Himself, He has allowed the beloved Son and the Holy Spirit to have the work by themselves; the beloved Son has come down to take human form, and the Holy Spirit has come down to be as the guide and speaking to every heart regarding the love of the Father. In the Father Himself, He has given birth to the beloved Son of God, that is why always the beloved Son will call Father I will do your will. As the Bible tells us, He always calls God the Father as His Father. It is not complicated when we think that the Father is One. Still, in that One, there are another Two, and the Three become One together; no separation.

Then, one might ask, how was the Holy Son Jesus born to be the Son of God and the Son of Man at the same time? The Lord Jesus is the Son of God and the Son of Man. The Holy Spirit conceived the baby Jesus in the virgin Mary's womb. The Holy Spirit dwelt in the egg of Mary to make the egg conceive — God to be a Man. The Bible tells us how this happened. First, God sent the angel Gabriel to Nazareth to a virgin named Mary. In Luke chapter 1, we read the Lord Jesus' birth account. Below, we present comments on some essential verses from this chapter.

Luke 1:30. Fear not, Mary; for you have found favor with God.

Pay attention to the words “found favor with God”; the Lord clearly tells her who she is dealing with. The angel represented the Lord when talking to her. Gabriel is an angel from the Lord God the Father, and the word he brings is from God the Father.

Luke 1:31. And behold, you will conceive in your womb, and will bring forth a Son, and you shall call His name JESUS.

This verse describes the moment when the Lord Himself chose the person to give birth to His Beloved Son of God. In this place, it also tells that the woman the Lord chose to carry the Beloved Son of God is worthy and a good woman.

Luke 1:32. He will be great, and He will be called the Son of the Most High; and the Lord God will give to Him the throne of His father David;

Luke 1:33. and He will reign over the house of Jacob forever; and of His kingdom there will be no end.

“And of His kingdom there will be no end.” Here, it tells us that Jesus is King of all, not just of one group of people, because His kingdom has no end on earth, beneath earth, and in heaven; that is His kingdom, with no end.

Luke 1:34. And Mary said to the angel, How will this be, since I am a virgin?

This question is a common question for her. Mary, as a young, innocent girl, knew that in order to have children, one needed physical contact, but she was a virgin who had never been touched by a man.

Luke 1:35. And the angel answered and said to her, The Holy Spirit will come upon you, and the power of the Most High will overshadow you; therefore, the being born will be called the Son of God.

“And the power of the Most High will overshadow you.” This saying shows there is no physical contact with Mary from the Lord as humans do; the physical contact is only by the shadow of the Most High over her egg. The Lord does not need to have physical interaction with sperm and egg, as humans do for procreation. With Mary, by His shadow, the egg conceived the baby Jesus. The Lord Jesus must be a hundred percent human, and the woman’s egg is needed for this.

“The being born will be called the Son of God.” Because the power of the Most High overshadowed the egg of Mary, the Child Jesus is Holy and the Son of God.

The Public Testimony of God the Father about His Son, the Lord Jesus

In Matthew 3:16-17, we have the testimony of God the Father Himself to John the Baptist and the people around when the Lord Jesus was baptized in water by John, and God the Father Himself identified Himself as the Father of the Lord Jesus.

Matthew 3:16-17. Now, Jesus, having been baptized, ascended immediately from the water; and behold, the heavens were opened to Him, and He saw the Spirit of God descending as a dove, alighting upon Him; and behold, a voice from out of the heavens, saying, This is My beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased.

These verses show a reunion between the Father, the Son Jesus, and the Holy Spirit (the Trinity of God). John saw part of the reunion act, while all the other people present only heard the voice of the Father.

Therefore, the Father of the Lord Jesus is God the Holy Spirit, not any human, and His mother is a woman, the virgin Mary. The Lord Jesus was born by the power of the Holy Spirit, not by the will of the flesh or of man, as John 1:13 verse testifies to us when it says about the Lord Jesus: “who was born, not out of blood, nor out of the will of the flesh, nor out of the will of man, but of God.”

“Who was born, not out of blood, nor out of the will of the flesh.” At first, all readers should think, when the verse says, “not out of the blood,” what do they think of that blood? The beloved Son of God was not born through the sperm of a human, which is the blood; that is the meaning. When the Bible says, “nor out of the will of the flesh,” the beloved Son of God was not born through the woman’s will but by the will of the Father Himself, who gave the woman to be able to conceive the beloved Son in her womb; that is why the verse tells He was not born by the will of the flesh.

“Nor out of the will of man, but of God.” From the verse itself, we can see that the beloved Son of God came down to be born by the will of the Father Himself, which is the most honorable will; also, the beloved Son of God Himself was utterly willing to come down to do so the Father’s will.

Joseph is the Caretaker of the Lord Jesus

In Matthew chapter 1, we are given the genealogy of the Lord Jesus Christ, Son of David, Son of Abraham which shows that Joseph was the caretaker of the Lord Jesus, and through him, it was fulfilled the unconditional prophecy given to King David. However, Joseph was not the physical father of the Lord Jesus, the Holy Spirit is.

Matthew 1:18-20. Now the birth of Jesus Christ was in this manner: His mother Mary having been betrothed to Joseph, before they came together, she was found in womb having a child of the Holy Spirit. And Joseph, her husband, being righteous and not wishing to expose her publicly, was minded to send her away privately. But he, having pondered on these things, behold, an angel of the Lord appeared to him in a dream, saying, Joseph, son of David, do not fear to take to you Mary, your wife; for that having been conceived in her is of the Holy Spirit.

“For that having been conceived in her is of the Holy Spirit.” It is a wonderful experience for God to be a human and to make people see Him in the Lord Jesus. People cannot say anymore that God doesn’t know what it is to be a human.

The Resurrection of the Lord Jesus is a Testimony to His Deity and Humanity

The Lord Jesus came on earth as the Son of God and the Son of Man, and He, as the sinless Lamb of God, was put to death on the cross of Calvary to die a cruel death for the sins of the world (Mark 15:20-41). They laid His body in a tomb (Matthew 27:57-66), but as the Bible tells us, after three days, He rose again (Mark 16:6). After the Lord Jesus rose from the dead, in the body, as the Bible tells us He was caught up to the heaven as God and Man (Luke 24:51) and is seated at the right hand of God the Father (Mark 16:19, Hebrews 10:22-23, Matthew 26:64, Mark 14:62). The Lord Jesus, God of the Trinity, has taken His human body with Him up into the heaven and is seated at the right hand of Power. The Gospels present various details of the Lord Jesus’ crucifixion and resurrection. In particular, the Gospel of John chapter 20 presents the bodily resurrection of the Lord Jesus and His appearances to Mary Magdalene and the disciples to strengthen their faith in the work of the Gospel. Specifically, in this chapter, the Lord Jesus appeared to the disciples, showed them His hands and His side, and gave them the Holy Spirit. We encourage all readers to read this chapter and the comments we post along the chapter’s verses. In this blog, we will focus on the verse of John 20:19 and comment on the Lord Jesus’ deity and humanity, being both God and Man simultaneously, even after the resurrection. After the resurrection, the Lord Jesus is forever God and Man at the same time. He could walk through anything; neither wood nor iron could stop Him. No one would notice His movements either. He is human, but also God in the same time; He has already returned to the Father and received back all the glory of the beloved Son of God to cover the human body.

John 20:19. It being, therefore, evening, on that day, the first after Sabbath, and the doors having been shut where the disciples were because of fear of the Jews, Jesus came and stood in the midst, and says to them, Peace to you.

Comments John 20:19. “It being, therefore, evening, on that day, ... because of fear of the Jews.” The disciples’ lives at that time were not easy because of the good news they were spreading regarding the beloved Son of God, which was against most people’s beliefs. The disciples believed that the beloved Son of God in human form was also indeed the Son of God even though He was a human; God has become a Man and dwelled with humans; therefore, He is the Son of Man as well.

“And the doors having been shut ... Jesus came and stood in the midst.” Jesus resurrected in the body, which here is important in how He appeared to them. The beloved Son of God is a hundred percent human and a hundred percent God simultaneously. The resurrected Lord has conquered all; He conquered the living and the death; nothing can block Him anymore; even being in human form, He can go through all things; nothing can block His way anymore. After the beloved Son of God was resurrected from death, His human form and the heavenly form were joined, not just covered any longer; the human form of the beloved Son of God now has the same power as the heavenly form because He has conquered all. We should not think that the Lord Jesus’ human body was transformed at the resurrection, but instead, we must think that His resurrected human body has joined His heavenly body; if the human body is transformed, then it will change, but when they are joined, the two will cover over each other, the two become one and the beloved Son of God has both forms, the human form, and the heavenly form. Furthermore, we cannot think that the human body of the Lord Jesus is being preserved through the heavenly body; however, we must believe that His human body came to life and is alive as a human body, which has joined with the heavenly body. The heavenly form has given life to the human form; in the human form, the beloved Son of God now has blood and water from the heavenly form to replace all that He has lost on the cross. When humans have crucified the beloved Son of God on the cross, the heavenly form has given all the life back to the human body; now the beloved Son of God has complete human life and body in Him, and He has joined with the heavenly form; the beloved Son of God has become one hundred percent of both forms in One. All the food and every nutrition for this human body are received through His own heavenly

form; He does not need human food, but all the food that His human body needs, the heavenly form gives it.

We must believe that only the beloved Son of God will have human form in the new world to come; He will be the only true human left; He is the only God and Man at the same time.

People Questioned and still Question the Deity of the Lord Jesus

People have questioned the deity of the Lord Jesus in the past and now, and many false doctrines about Him have appeared. Furthermore, people have also given miraculous power, which has no support in the Holy Bible, to the Lord Jesus' mother, Mary. Also, people have argued that the virgin birth of the Lord Jesus required that Mary remain a virgin and never have other children with Joseph. We will comment on Matthew 13:53-56 and John 8:41-43 verses to refute some false beliefs.

Matthew 13:53-56. And it came to pass, when Jesus had finished these parables, He departed from there. And having come into His own region, He taught them in their synagogue, so that they were astonished, and said, From where to this, this wisdom, and the miraculous powers? Is not this the carpenter's Son? Is not His mother called Mary? And His brothers, James, and Joseph, and Simon, and Judas? And His sisters, are not all with us? From where then to this, all these things?

This passage shows how the people in the Lord Jesus' hometown think of Him. For them, in their eyes, the Lord Jesus was just a simple man. They used the earthly family of the Lord Jesus to judge Him. His mother, father, and siblings all made mistakes the same way as everybody, so the people could not see the deity of the Lord Jesus as the Son of God. In these types of people's eyes, if the Lord Jesus is the Son of God, Mary cannot have other children, and the Lord Jesus' siblings become the main issue. Since they have seen Mary pregnant by Joseph and having other children after the Lord Jesus, they cannot accept that He is the Son of God. They use the Lord Jesus' earthly family to make people not believe in the virgin birth. Their logic is that if Mary had a child with the Holy Spirit, then Joseph cannot touch her and have children. The holiness of the virgin birth becomes impossible for them since Mary had other children with Joseph. However, the Bible tells us that Mary was not holy but a blessed woman; she was blessed because the Lord chose her to carry the Lord Jesus in her womb, but she was just a human and lived as a human. After Mary gave birth to the Lord Jesus, she had an everyday human life, as every woman should have, and she had to do her duty as a wife to Joseph. No one should

worship Mary; she was a blessed woman, but not more than that (See Luke 1:48). She couldn't perform any miracles, and there is no record in the Bible that she ever performed any miracles. The people in her hometown saw her having more children, but God had only one Son, and it is written that the Lord Jesus is the begotten Son of God (See John 1:14, John 1:18, John 3:16, and 1 John 4:9).

John 8:41. You are doing the works of your father. They said to Him, We were not born of fornication; we have one Father, even God.

Comments John 8:41. "You are doing the works of your father." The beloved Son of God has told them that they do the works of their earthly father by pushing away the truth and being stubborn as an ox; their own actions and answers also support this.

"They said to Him, ..." Here, they mean that if the Lord Jesus is the beloved Son of God, then His Father cannot be a human, and Mary is not fit to be a mother. Also, at the same time, they have told the beloved Son of God that they are the children of God, and God the Father is their Father as well; but, this saying is by their own understanding only, not because this has been taught to them, but they take themselves to be different than the rest of humans. All they want is to make sure and confirm to their children that if this is indeed the Son of God, Mary should not be married to a human, and because they have seen Mary use her life as a human, the birth of the beloved Son of God has become a question for them. That way of belief is common in human thinking, and if you want to set up a belief, and if that belief fits with human thought, then that belief will catch on. But if you want to believe that the beloved Son of God has not been born by human will but by the will of God the Father alone, you must believe in the virgin birth of Jesus and that Mary did not conceive through human seed but by the Holy Spirit, and this is a miracle.

John 8:42. Jesus said to them, If God were your Father, you would love Me, for I came forth and am here from God; for not even have I come of Myself, but He sent Me.

Comments John 8:42. The beloved Son of God has said to all of His people that if they truly believe in God the Father, then they will believe in Him as well because their love for the Father will guide them to know the Father's will; the same as the beloved Son of God has loved the Father and does all

things according to the Father's will for Him to become a human, it has already shown love and respect in Himself towards God the Father.

John 8:43. Because of what do you not understand My talk? Because you are not able to hear My word.

Comments John 8:43. When the beloved Son of God told them that they could not hear His word, He did not mean only the physical ear alone but also the spiritual ear because the beloved Son of God has not talked in riddles but straight that He is coming from God the Father Himself.

Conclusions

God the Father wants all humans to come to His Son Jesus for the forgiveness of sins and pray in the name of the Lord Jesus for the Holy Spirit to come into their hearts so they can understand His Word. Specifically, as true believers and followers of the Lord Jesus, we must believe that the Lord Jesus is the Son of God and the Son of Man at the same time as the Word of God tells us, meaning one hundred percent God and one hundred percent human. We must believe in the miraculous virgin birth of the Lord Jesus from the virgin Mary by the power of the Holy Spirit shadowing the egg of Mary and conceiving the baby Lord Jesus in her womb. Also, we must believe in the bodily resurrection of the Lord Jesus and that after the resurrection, He took His human body into heaven and is still both God and Man and is seated in this way at the right hand of God the Father. Furthermore, we must believe that Mary, after the birth of the Lord Jesus, lived her life as the wife of Joseph, and they had children together. However, Mary is not to be worshiped; she is not God; the Bible doesn't show that she ever performed any miracles; she is just the most blessed woman on earth by being the earthly mother of the Lord Jesus. Also, Joseph is the most blessed man on earth, as he was the adoptive Father to the Lord Jesus; through him, the Lord Jesus connects to the genealogy line of David.

The Lord Jesus came on earth as the Son of God and the Son of Man to bring salvation for all humans by His sacrificial death on the cross. The Lord Jesus says in John 14:6, "I am the way and the truth and the life; no one comes to the Father if not by Me." As true believers in the Lord Jesus, we must reject all false teachings about the Lord Jesus and ground our faith in the Word of God by reading and meditating daily on the Word of God. We must believe that the Lord Jesus is God of the Trinity and He is "the King of kings, and Lord of lords; who only has immortality, dwelling in light unapproachable; whom no man has seen, nor can see;

to whom be honor and power eternal” as written in 1 Timothy 6:15-16, and only through Him we can gain eternal life. Let us humbly come to the foot of the cross of Calvary, glorify the name of the Lord Jesus, and give Him the praise and honor He richly deserves.

Meditation tasks:

1. Think about your difficulties regarding the Lord Jesus being the Son of God and the Son of Man!
2. Find verses to support that the Lord Jesus is indeed the Son of God and the Son of Man.
3. Meditate why Mary cannot be worshiped and why she had lived her life as a normal wife of Joseph after the Lord Jesus’ birth.

The Bodily Resurrection of the Lord Jesus!

This article outlines our core beliefs regarding the bodily resurrection of the Lord Jesus. The Lord Jesus is the Son of God and God within the Trinity of God. In the Gospel of John 14:6, the Lord Jesus declares, “I am the way, and the truth, and the life; no one comes to the Father, if not by Me.” He came to earth to show us the way to God the Father and to provide salvation for our souls. As the Lamb of God, the Lord Jesus was crucified for the sins of the world, serving as the perfect sacrifice. His grace offers salvation to all who believe in His name. To attain salvation, one simply needs to believe in the Lord Jesus, the Son of God, and in His redemptive work on the cross—there is nothing else required. For a more detailed exploration of the bodily resurrection and the second coming of the Lord Jesus, please refer to our blog article titled Teachings about the Bodily Resurrection of the Lord Jesus, End Times, and the Second Coming of the Lord Jesus.

The Lord Jesus Rose Out from the Dead in the Body

The Bible teaches clearly that the Lord Jesus was crucified (Matthew 27:33-37), died on the cross (Matthew 27:46), buried in the tomb (Matthew 27:58-60, Mark 15:42-47), and rose out from the dead in the same body (flesh and bones) on the third day (Luke 24:6-9). The same body that was crucified and died and placed in the tomb came to life (John 20:27) and was taken into heaven, and the Lord Jesus in His humanity and Deity (Luke 24:51) is seated at the right hand of God the Father (Mark 16:19). The belief in the bodily resurrection and bodily ascension to heaven of the Lord Jesus is foundational to the Christian faith (1 Corinthians 15:12-19). We all hold the conviction that one day we will rise again and be united with the Lord Jesus in the new earth (see Comments Matthew 24:3, and Comments Matthew 27:52). The Lord Jesus’ body never experienced decay, as stated in Acts 2:27. He rose out from the dead in His body, in which He has returned to the Father, since everything is ultimately in the Father. And, this is why He rose in the body—to preserve the earth. This earth will eventually melt away, leaving nothing from it except for the Lord Jesus’ body (see Comments Matthew 24:3, and Comments Mark 13:3-13). To ensure that His disciples believed in who He is and in His resurrection in the body, the Lord Jesus appeared to them on multiple occasions (John 20:19-31, John 21:1-24, Acts

1:3). During these encounters, He revealed His resurrected body, taught them about the kingdom of God, and commissioned them to go into all the world to proclaim the gospel of salvation to everyone (see Mark 16:12-13).

Why is the Resurrection of the Lord Jesus in the Body Important for a Christian?

For the hope of all humans, the resurrected body of the Lord Jesus becomes the fundamental faith issue. Suppose the believer comes to the beloved Son of God but has no hope in the resurrection, meaning the believer's hope in the resurrected heavenly body to rejoice with the beloved Son of God is gone; in that case, the resurrected body of the beloved Son of God will have no meaning for that person. It is essential to understand that in the world to come, the earthly body of all humans will be gone, and only one human body will remain—the body of the beloved Son of God, who is already in heaven.

For a believer, the level of faith and hope is to aim together to the One Body that has been resurrected: the beloved Son of God, who should be the hope of all to see. Therefore, when the believers go to heaven, they will all see the beloved Son of God with the scarred, pierced hands and feet, and they will remember the sins of the earth, that He has taken them all in those scars with Him. All the judgment has been placed on Him already; the forgiveness for humans is related to the scars He carried with Him. And that is why He is seated on the throne of God in His humanity as well.

BCF Comments Related to the Bodily Resurrection of the Lord Jesus

In our Bible Commentary Forever work, we share many insights regarding the deity and humanity of the Lord Jesus, as well as His bodily resurrection from the dead. We emphasize the importance of believing in the bodily resurrection of the Lord Jesus as a fundamental aspect of one's faith. We encourage all readers to review our comments alongside the relevant verses. Below, we have listed most of the verses from all four Gospels that pertain to the bodily resurrection of the Lord Jesus.

Comments in the Gospel of Matthew, organized by chapter

- Matthew 28:2-7.
Matthew 27:46 (death in human body), Matthew 27:50, Matthew 27:52, Matthew 27:53, Matthew 27:58-60.
Matthew 26:2, 26, 28.
Matthew 24:3.

Matthew 22:23-33.

Matthew 17:2.

Matthew 13:30.

Matthew 12:6.

Matthew 10:26.

Matthew 7:24.

Comments in the Gospel of Mark, organized by chapter

- Mark 16:12-13, Mark 16:19-20.

Mark 15:42-47.

Mark 14:22-25.

Mark 13:3-13.

Mark 12:18-27.

Mark 4:21-23, Mark 4:35-41.

Comments in the Gospel of Luke, organized by chapter

- Luke 24:1-9, 31, Luke 24:36, Luke 24:39, Luke 24:40, Luke 24:41, Luke 24:51.

Luke 23:33-34, Luke 23:46, Luke 23:51-54, Luke 23:55, Luke 23:56.

Luke 22:19-20.

Luke 19:12, Luke 19:15.

Luke 18:32, Luke 18:33.

Luke 6:5, Luke 6:48.

Luke 2:52.

Comments in the Gospel of John, organized by chapter

- John 21:12, John 21:25.

John 20:2, John 20:6, John 20:7, John 20:8, John 20:11, John 20:12, John 20:13, John 20:14, John 20:15, John 20:17, John 20:19, John 20:20, John 20:25, John 20:27.

John 19:17, John 19:23, John 19:28, John 19:30, John 19:31, John 19:34, John 19:36, John 19:37, John 19:38, John 19:39, John 19:40, John 19:41.

The Second Coming of the Lord Jesus Christ

This article outlines our core beliefs regarding the glorious second coming of the Lord Jesus to earth. For a more thorough analysis on this topic, we encourage all readers also to consult our blog article titled, [Teachings about the Bodily Resurrection of the Lord Jesus, End Times, and the Second Coming of the Lord Jesus](#). The Lord Jesus Christ is the only begotten Son of God, who is One with God the Father and God the Holy Spirit from eternity. He came down from heaven to be born on earth as both the Son of God and the Son of Man to give the bread of life to the world, as He states in [John 6:33](#): “Indeed the bread of God is the One coming down from heaven and giving life to the world.” As the Lamb of God, the Lord Jesus was crucified for the sins of the world, serving as the perfect sacrifice. He died on the cross for the sins of the world, was buried in the tomb, rose out from the dead on the third day, ascended to heaven, and is seated at the Father’s right hand. To attain salvation, one simply needs to believe in the Lord Jesus, the Son of God, and in His redemptive work on the cross—there is nothing else required. Before His ascension to heaven, He appeared in His resurrected body to many of His disciples. He is now seated at the right hand of God the Father, and He promised that He will come again to take His followers to be with Him. In [Acts 1:1-11](#), we read about the Lord Jesus being taken to heaven while the disciples watched Him ascend. “And while they were looking steadfastly into the heaven as He was going, and behold, two men stood by them in white apparel; who also said, Men of Galilee, why do you stand looking into heaven? This Jesus, who was taken up from you into heaven, thus will come in that manner you beheld Him going into heaven” ([Acts 1:10-11](#)).

Will the Lord Jesus Return to the Earth?

The Book of Revelation depicts a glorious return of our Lord Jesus Christ to the earth, commonly known as the Second Coming of the Lord Jesus to earth. So, will the Lord Jesus return indeed as He Himself and the angels promised to His disciples? Throughout His ministry, the Lord Jesus spoke numerous times about His resurrection, His return to the Father in heaven, and His second coming to earth. For instance, in [John 14:1-4](#), the Lord Jesus tells His disciples, “Let not your heart be troubled; believe in God, and believe also in Me. In My Father’s house are many

mansions. If it were not so, would I have told you that I go to prepare a place for you? And if I go and prepare a place for you, I am coming again, and will receive you to Myself; that where I am, you may be also. And where I go, you know the way.” Additionally, before His suffering on the cross, the Lord Jesus discussed the end times with His disciples, saying, “Then will appear the sign of the Son of Man in heaven, and all the tribes of the earth will mourn. They will see the Son of Man coming on the clouds of heaven with power and great glory” (Matthew 24:30). Furthermore, during His trial, while being questioned by the High Priest before His crucifixion, the Lord Jesus identified Himself as the Christ, the Son of the Blessed, declaring that they “will see the Son of Man sitting at the right hand of Power, and coming with the clouds of heaven” (Mark 14:62).

Therefore, we firmly believe that the Lord Jesus will return to take His followers to be with Him for eternity in His kingdom and to judge the living and the dead. But some may wonder how long we must wait for the Lord Jesus’ return to earth and whether the Gospels provide clear specifics about His return and its timing. We provide extensive commentary on this subject in Matthew 13, Matthew 24, Matthew 25, Mark 13, and Luke 21. We encourage all readers to consult our comments in these chapters. The Bible teaches that all Christians should live each day with the hope of the glorious return of the Lord Jesus to the earth, believing that one day we will be with Him for eternity in His kingdom on the new earth. When speaking to His disciples about the end times, the Lord Jesus forewarned all believers about what would happen in the world before His return. However, the rest of the world needs to read the Bible for themselves and learn to pray. For further reading, see the Gospel of Matthew, chapter 24. The Lord Jesus provided several warnings to believers regarding the times to come and His return, which are essential for us to consider.

- Watch your faith.
- No one knows the time and the hour of the second coming of the Lord Jesus; only God the Father knows it.
- The Bible will be attacked to wither the faith of the true believers, which is the beginning of false christs to arrive.
- There will appear wrong translations of the Bible and many false christs.
- All of the attacks will be directed to destroy the Holy Bible as this now is the temple of the Holy Spirit on earth.
- The Gospel of the kingdom will be proclaimed to the whole world and then the end time will come.

- Keep an eye on the abomination of desolation when the world wide will have a fake Bible and will start to rebuild the temple in Jerusalem.
- The ones that endure to the end will be saved.

When is the Lord Jesus Christ Returning to the Earth to Take His Bride?

In Matthew 13, the Lord Jesus speaks in parables about the Kingdom of God. The parable of the weeds, found in Matthew 13:24-30 illustrates that the church will be mixed with both the righteous (wheat) and the unrighteous (weeds) until the end times. It emphasizes the importance of studying and meditating on the Word of God to discern the difference between truth and error within the church. In our comments on Matthew 13:30 we discuss the Lord Jesus judging His house and provide brief notes on His second coming.

In Matthew 24, the Lord Jesus and His disciples were on the Mount of Olives. His disciples asked Him privately, “Tell us, when will these things be? And what will be the sign of Thy coming, and of the consummation of the age?” In response, the Lord Jesus addresses three main topics: warnings for believers, the troubles that will occur in the world, and His time of return. The events that the Lord describes in this chapter will indeed come to pass. When the Lord provides warnings in the Bible, we must be prepared because they will happen. In our commentary on Matthew 24:3, we offer insights on the temple of the Lord that will help in understanding end-time events. Additionally, this chapter includes commentary related to: the Lord’s warnings to the believers, the Lord’s discourse about the troubles that will happen to the world, and the Lord’s time of return.

The dialogue between the Lord Jesus and His disciples on the Mount of Olives is also recorded in Mark 13. In this chapter, we provide additional commentary on signs and warnings. In the comments for Mark, we offer further explanations related to Matthew’s account regarding the second coming of the Lord Jesus to earth.

In Matthew 25, specifically in the parable of the ten virgins (Matthew 25:1-12), the Lord Jesus teaches us that we do not know the exact time or hour of His return; therefore, we must always be prepared. No one knows the time and the hour; only the Father knows. No one can impersonate the Father and know the time; even the Lord Jesus Himself does not know. The Lord Jesus never portrayed Himself as knowing all, and in the Bible, the Lord Jesus tells us that only the Father knows the time. Trinity of God, but the Lord Jesus humbles Himself and accepts His role to be under the Father’s authority. However, there will be signs indicating that the return of

the Lord Jesus is approaching. For instance, [Matthew 25:6](#) states “at middle of the night there is a cry, Behold, the bridegroom! Come out to meet him.” We offer detailed commentary on this verse regarding the second coming of the Lord, as well as insights related to the marriage feast, the rapture, and the tribulation (see [Comments Matthew 25:6](#)).

BCF Comments Related to the Second Coming of the Lord Jesus to the Earth

In our work on the Bible Commentary Forever, we provide numerous insights about end-time events and the Second Coming of the Lord Jesus to earth. We encourage all readers to examine our comments alongside the relevant verses. We have compiled most of the verses from all four Gospels where we post comments related to the Second Coming of the Lord Jesus and the end times.

Comments in the Gospel of Matthew, organized by chapter

- [Matthew 13:24-30](#); [Matthew 13:36-43](#).
[Matthew 22:2-14](#).
[Matthew 24:1-51](#).
[Matthew 25:1-13](#); [Matthew 25:6](#); [Matthew 25:14-46](#).

Comments in the Gospel of Mark, organized by chapter

- [Mark 13:1-13](#); [Mark 13:14-23](#); [Mark 13:24-27](#); [Mark 13:28-31](#); [Mark 13:32-37](#).

Comments in the Gospel of Luke, organized by chapter

- [Luke 19:12](#); [Luke 19:15](#); [Luke 21:5-36](#).

Comments in the Gospel of John, organized by chapter

- [John 14:3](#).

Guidance for the New Birth of a Believer in the Lord Jesus

What do Gospels Teach about the Lord Jesus?

The Bible presents us with a complete teaching about the Lord Jesus Christ, the Son of God, and about His mission on earth. For a comprehensive overview of the teachings of the Lord Jesus, please refer to our blog article, [The Teachings of the Lord Jesus](#). The Gospels of Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John complement each other, so we must read and meditate on the writings of all four Gospels to understand the work of salvation that God the Father has provided for us through His beloved Son, the Lord Jesus Christ. As we study the Gospels, we discover at least eight essential truths about the Lord Jesus Christ.

1. **The Lord Jesus is the Son of God and the Son of Man.** In [Luke 1:26-35](#), we find how the Lord Jesus was born from the Holy Spirit and the Virgin Mary. Specifically, [Luke 1:35](#) tells us, *“And the angel answered and said to her, The Holy Spirit will come upon you, and the power of the Most High will overshadow you; therefore, the being born will be called the Son of God.”* This verse tells us that the Lord Jesus Christ is the Son of God through the Holy Spirit, the Spirit of God the Father, and the Son of Man through Mary; therefore, we must believe that the Lord Jesus is both fully God and fully Man simultaneously.
2. **The Lord Jesus came to earth to do the will of God the Father.** The Son of God, the Lord Jesus, came to earth as a human to save all people, show us the way to get eternal life, and teach us how to become children of God. In [John 10:10](#), the Lord Jesus states, *“I came that they may have life and may have it more abundantly.”* For those who have accepted the beloved Son of God as their Lord and put all their trust in His mercy, the beloved Son of God will receive them to be with Him, and they will have life for eternity with Him because it is for eternity, that is, *“more abundantly.”*
3. **The Lord Jesus teaches us the way to be saved.** The Lord teaches us how to live as believers through His Word, providing examples to follow in the Bible. In our Christian walk, we must believe in Him and follow Him in all aspects of His teachings. In [Matthew 16:24](#), the Lord Jesus tells His disciples, *“If anyone*

desires to come after Me, let him deny himself, and take up his cross, and follow Me.”

4. **The Lord Jesus Christ is God in the Trinity of God.** The Lord Jesus Christ is One with God the Father and God the Holy Spirit. In John 10:30, the Lord Jesus Christ states, *“I and the Father are One.”* The Gospel of John presents a comprehensive and nuanced teaching about the deity of the Lord Jesus Christ, the beloved Son of God. Therefore, faith in the Trinity of God—God the Father, God the Son, Jesus Christ, and God the Holy Spirit—must be the solid foundation of a true believer’s faith. To better understand the deity of the Lord Jesus, we suggest reading our article, The Trinity of God.
5. **The Lord Jesus is the Kingdom of God.** The Lord Jesus, through His Word, teaches us what the Kingdom of God is and how a person can become part of it through faith in Him. In Luke 17:20-21, the Lord Jesus tells us that *“The kingdom of God comes not with observation, neither shall they say, Behold, here! or, There! for behold, the kingdom of God is in the midst of you.”* This essentially means that the Kingdom of God is present among the true believers in the Lord Jesus.
6. **The Lord Jesus was crucified for the sins of the world.** The Bible provides a detailed account of the crucifixion of the Lord Jesus and emphasizes the significance of His sacrifice on the cross. As the sinless Lamb of God, His shed blood represents the path to forgiveness of sins for all humanity, enabling us to make peace with God the Father. The Scripture clearly states that no one can come to God the Father without faith in the Lord Jesus Christ and without receiving forgiveness of sins through His sacrifice. In John 14:5-6, we read, *“Thomas says to Him, Lord, we do not know where Thou go; how are we able to know the way? Jesus says to him, I am the way, and the truth, and the life; no one comes to the Father, if not by Me.”*
7. **The Lord Jesus rose from the dead.** The Lord Jesus was crucified on Calvary’s cross and laid in the tomb; after three days, He rose from the dead in His body; the same body that was put in the tomb has risen in the palm of God the Father Himself. The belief in the bodily resurrection of the Lord Jesus is fundamental for true believers in the Lord Jesus. Moreover, after His resurrection, the Lord Jesus appeared to His disciples and many others before ascending to heaven in body, where He is now seated at the right hand of God the Father. In Acts 2:32-33, we read, *“This Jesus God has raised up, whereof we all are witnesses; therefore, having been exalted to the right hand of God,*

and having received from the Father the promise of the Holy Spirit, He has poured out this, which you also are seeing and hearing.”

8. **The Lord Jesus is coming again.** The Lord Jesus talked many times to His disciples about His coming again, and He will come again as He promised (Read more on this in the Gospel of Matthew: Matthew 24). The Lord has warned all believers before that time comes, what will happen to the world and about His return, but the rest of the world needs to read the Bible by themselves and learn to pray. Yet, the Lord Jesus is telling us in His Word not to be troubled. He is the way, the truth, and the life, and there are many mansions in heaven prepared for us, and the Lord Jesus said that He is coming again to take us to Himself, not to destroy us. *“Let not your heart be troubled; believe in God, also believe in Me. In My Father’s house are many mansions; and if not, would I have told you that I go to prepare a place for you? And if I go and prepare a place for you, I am coming again, and will receive you to Myself; that where I am, you may be also. And where I go, you know the way.”* — John 14:1-4.

The New Birth

This article will briefly explain how a person can be born again, drawing from a well-known passage in the Gospel of John, chapter 3. In John 3:5-7, the Lord Jesus responds to Nicodemus, saying, *“Jesus answered, Truly, truly, I say to you, Except anyone is born of water and of Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God. That having been born of the flesh, flesh is, and that having been born of the Spirit, spirit is. Marvel not that I said to you, It behooves you to be born from above.”* This Scripture indicates that in order to experience a new birth of the soul, a person must be baptized in water and the Holy Spirit; this truth comes directly from the words of the Lord Jesus Himself.

To be born again, a person must first acknowledge their sinful state and publicly declare their faith in the Lord Jesus Christ and the Holy Trinity of God. The person must seek forgiveness for their sins from God the Father, asking in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ, based on the blood He shed on the cross. Additionally, they must be baptized in water in the name of God the Father, God the Son (Jesus Christ), and God the Holy Spirit. The Bible teaches us that the Lord Jesus Christ is the only human who is without sin. However, He chose to be baptized in water to set an example for us to follow. Each Gospel describes this event, including how the Holy Spirit, in the form of a dove, descended upon Him after His water baptism.

We specifically find the water baptism of the Lord Jesus, performed by John the

Baptist, in several Bible passages: Matthew 3:13-17, Mark 1:9-11, Luke 3:21-22, and John 1:29-34. In Matthew 3:15, when the Lord Jesus responds to John the Baptist, He says, *“Permit just now; for thus it is proper to us to fulfill all righteousness. Then he permits Him.”* This saying of the Lord Jesus indicates that every Christian is called to fulfill this step. Additionally, in Matthew 28:19, before ascending to heaven, the Lord Jesus entrusted His disciples with the mission to go and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of God the Father, God the Son (Jesus Christ), and God the Holy Spirit. In John 1:33-34, John the Baptist testifies about the Son of God, stating, *“But I knew Him not; but the One having sent me to baptize with water, He said to me, Upon whom you will perceive the Spirit descending, and remaining on Him, He is the One who baptizes with the Holy Spirit. But I have seen and have testified that this is the Son of God.”*

Furthermore, by following the teachings of the Lord Jesus, we understand that the practice of infant water baptism in some Christian churches is merely a tradition and not the type of water baptism referenced in John 3:5-6. Therefore, any faithful Christian who desires to experience the new birth of the soul, as described in this passage of Scripture, must be baptized in water through complete body immersion under the water, following the example set by the Lord Jesus Christ.

In this article, we will not cover all aspects of the water baptism of a believer; however, you can refer to our article titled Water Baptism for a Christian for more information on this topic. Instead, this article will explain a step that anyone seeking the Lord can take to establish a personal relationship with the Lord Jesus Christ through the Holy Spirit. Once this relationship is formed, the Holy Spirit will guide that person in all aspects of life, provided they pray, read, and meditate regularly on the Word of God.

The Bible teaches us that anyone, regardless of their religious background—whether they have been baptized in water by immersion or not—can establish a personal relationship with the Lord Jesus through the Holy Spirit. Through this relationship, individuals can experience the Holy Spirit at work in their hearts and Him testifying to them about the Lord Jesus. To help establish this personal relationship, we can draw upon the teaching from John 15:26, which states, *“When the Intercessor comes, whom I will send to you from the Father, the Spirit of truth, who proceeds from the Father, He will bear witness concerning Me.”* Therefore, when we invite the Holy Spirit, in the name of the Lord Jesus, into our hearts, He will guide us and teach us in all matters related to becoming true children of God. He will instill in us love for the Lord Jesus, a passion for the Word of God, and a desire to follow God’s

commandments, helping us become more and more like our Lord and Master, the Lord Jesus Christ.

The question is, how can we have the Holy Spirit and the Spirit of Christ living in our hearts? To understand this, we can refer to John 14:22-23, which tells us, “*Judas (not the Iscariot) says to Him, Lord, and what has occurred that Thou art about to declare Thyself to us, and not to the world? Jesus answered and said to him, If anyone loves Me, he will keep My word, and My Father will love him, and We will come to him, and will make a home with him.*” To experience the presence of the Trinity of God in our hearts, we must genuinely love the Lord Jesus, keep His Word, and invite Him into our lives. When we are ready to accept the Lord into our hearts, we should pray to God the Father with sincerity, perhaps in the following way: “*Holy Father, who is in heaven, have mercy on me, a sinner. Forgive all my sins in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ, and wash me clean with His blood shed on the cross of Calvary. I believe that the Lord Jesus is Your Holy Son, the only begotten from the Father and the Virgin Mary. I believe You sent Him to show us the way to heaven and to grant us eternal life through faith in the Trinity of God: God the Father, God the Son, Jesus Christ, and God the Holy Spirit. Therefore, Father, Lord Jesus Christ, and Holy Spirit, I give my heart to You and ask You to come and live within me, teaching me Your Word.*” This prayer serves as a template for what we need to believe in order to cultivate the right faith, so that the Holy Spirit and the Spirit of Christ can touch our hearts and live in us. We can also enrich this prayer with our personal expressions of love for the Lord.

After extending this invitation, our next step is to read and meditate on the Word of God on a daily basis. We should pray for the Holy Spirit to guide us in understanding everything about our Lord and Master, the Lord Jesus Christ. As stated in John 6:63, “*It is the Spirit that gives life; the flesh profits nothing; the words that I speak to you are Spirit and are life.*” This means that the words in the Bible provide spiritual nourishment for our souls. Therefore, it is essential to read and meditate on the Word of God daily so that we can feed our spirits and foster growth and maturity in our spiritual lives.

Conclusion

In conclusion, we must consider the distinction between being born again and having the Lord touch a person’s heart and live within them without undergoing water baptism by immersion. According to the Bible, being born again involves both water baptism by immersion and the baptism of the Holy Spirit. In contrast, for the Lord to

touch a person's heart and live inside them, they simply need to invite Him to be the leader of their life.

The distinction is clear: when a person is born again, their body and soul are cleansed by the blood of the Lord Jesus through water baptism by immersion, and in the spiritual world, a new person is born. However, when someone invites the Lord Jesus to live inside them but has not gone through water baptism yet, it is only their body that is cleansed from sin, allowing the Lord to reside in them by touching their heart. It is important to understand that sins of the body and sins of the soul are different.

Read our other articles on this topic, [Making Peace with God](#), [Water Baptism for a Christian](#), and [Holy Spirit Baptism for a Christian](#).

Water Baptism for a Christian

Should a Believer Baptize in Water?

Water baptism is a public declaration of faith in the Trinity of God—God the Father, God the Son (the Lord Jesus), and God the Holy Spirit. It signifies the believer's faith in the Trinity of God and in the redemptive work performed by the Lord Jesus Christ on the cross at Calvary. Water baptism is an essential step for every follower of the Lord Jesus Christ. All four Gospels illustrate that the Lord Jesus was baptized in water by John the Baptist and in the Holy Spirit by God the Father Himself (see [Matthew 3:13-17](#), [Mark 1:9-11](#), [Luke 3:21-22](#), and [John 1:32-34](#)). Specifically, [Matthew 3:13-17](#) highlights that the Lord Jesus traveled from Galilee to the Jordan River to be baptized by John. This act of the Lord Jesus' baptism serves as a clear example for all faithful believers, indicating that they too must be baptized as conscious adults in water through full-body immersion for the forgiveness of their sins.

In [Matthew 3:13-17](#), we read, *"Then comes Jesus from Galilee to the Jordan to John, to be baptized of him. But John was hindering Him, saying, I have need to be baptized of Thee, and do Thou come to me? However, Jesus answering him said, Permit just now; for thus it is proper to us to fulfill all righteousness. Then he permits Him. Now, Jesus, having been baptized, ascended immediately from the water; and behold, the heavens were opened to Him, and He saw the Spirit of God descending as a dove, alighting upon Him; and behold, a voice from out of the heavens, saying, This is My beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased."*

This passage of Scripture shows that even the sinless Lamb of God needs to be baptized in water. If the sinless Lamb of God asks to be baptized, how then can humans say they have no sin and do not need to be baptized? Here we see the example we need to follow about baptizing in water. The Lord Jesus Himself, talking to John the Baptist, says, "for thus it is proper to us to fulfill all righteousness," showing that the Lord Jesus Himself needed to be baptized in water. The Lord Jesus is both God and human, serving as an example for humans to follow. If the sinless One has to be baptized in water, then all the people who want to follow the Lord Jesus must also do so. As is the walk through the gate of death, even so, a person baptizing in the water dies from the old life and becomes a new person in the Lord. The old book of life has been destroyed, and a new book of life starts (see [Comments](#)

Matthew 12:30, and Comments Matthew 12:36-37). When you merge under the water in the name of God the Father, God the Son, Jesus Christ, and God the Holy Spirit, your soul is touched by the Lord in that water. And when you come out from that water, the Lord becomes the guide of your soul in the unseen world and the Master of your life in this world. Water baptism is essential for a new believer, but the person must meditate on the Lord's teachings and seek and ask for the Holy Spirit baptism as well. When you have received the Holy Spirit baptism, the Holy Spirit goes through your soul and guides your soul. All humans must be born of water and the Holy Spirit in order to enter the kingdom of heaven (see John 3:5, and our article, Guidance for the New Birth of a Believer in the Lord Jesus). Your life living on this earth must follow according to the Master of your life. After the Lord Jesus's crucifixion, all believers must be baptized in water; if you do not baptize in water, your soul does not have a chance to be counted in. For the soul of a human, baptism in water is similar to a butterfly emerging. The soul itself is wrapped with many layers of sins. When you submerge into the baptism water, and when you come out, most of the layers of sins covering your soul are left in the water, and you come out with a purer soul, free: this is the new birth in the spiritual world. However, the Holy Spirit baptism, when it happens, will cleanse the soul thoroughly, making a complete cleansing of your soul.

Water baptism is necessary to complete the salvation seal on a believer's heart. The salvation seal has been put on a believer's heart when the person believes and gives his heart to the Lord Jesus and then goes and baptizes in the water: complete baptism, heart, and water, meaning soul and body (see Comments Matthew 16:18). The believer's responsibility is to keep the salvation seal alive by staying in faith and studying the Word of God, and keeping it in the heart until the end of life on this earth. If you have the Word in your heart, it is like you have a shield of protection. Regardless of the order, whether baptism of the Holy Spirit or water baptism, all believers must undergo water baptism to complete the transformation of a person in both body and spirit.

The moment we are baptized in the water, our old book of life is destroyed. A new book of life starts at the time of our baptism in water, and the Lord will use this book of life to judge Christians. There is no turning back; we cannot go to be baptized again. Baptism in water is important, and you can find water if you want to be baptized. If you don't want to be baptized, you won't do it even if there is water. If the Lord of your life was baptized in water, how can you find a reason not to? (See Comments Matthew 12:35-36).

What is the Best Way to Be Baptized in Water?

The baptism in water must be performed publicly in the name of God the Father, God the Son, Jesus Christ, and God the Holy Spirit through immersion, with the full body submerged in the baptism water. As Christians, we need to follow the example of our Lord Jesus and publicly confess our faith in the Trinity of God through a public baptism in a water ceremony. You can be baptized in every part of the earth to be born again in the water of the Lord Jesus' blood (see [Comments Matthew 26:27-28](#), and [Comments John 19:34](#)). We encourage all readers also to consult our article on [Holy Spirit Baptism for a Christian](#) for a deeper understanding of the completion of the salvation seal.

Comments Related to the Water Baptism

Our commentary includes numerous insights on water baptism and emphasizes why it is essential for every true believer to be baptized. We encourage all believers to read the relevant Bible passages along with our comments and to pray for guidance from the Lord through the Holy Spirit regarding their personal spiritual journey. Below, we first provide a list of Scripture passages that describe the water baptism of the Lord Jesus, followed by a comprehensive list of our comments on the topic of water baptism.

The Lord Jesus' water baptism Scripture passages:

- [Matthew 3:13-17](#); [Mark 1:9-11](#); [Luke 3:21-22](#); [John 1:32-34](#).

BCF comments related to water baptism listed in book order and chapter order:

- **Gospel of Matthew water baptism comments:** [Matthew 3:15](#); [Matthew 12:30](#); [Matthew 12:35-36](#); [Matthew 12:43](#); [Matthew 16:18](#); [Matthew 17:15-16](#); [Matthew 18:10](#); [Matthew 25:1](#); [Matthew 25:2](#); [Matthew 26:27-28](#).
- **Gospel of Mark water baptism comments:** [Mark 1:9-11](#); [Mark 7:2-4](#); [Mark 7:14-23](#); [Mark 9:49](#); [Mark 10:39-40](#); [Mark 14:22-25](#); [Mark 16:12-13](#).
- **Gospel of Luke water baptism comments:** [Luke 3:21-22](#); [Luke 4:1](#); [Luke 11:24](#); [Luke 12:50](#).
- **Gospel of John water baptism comments:** [John 1:26](#); [John 1:31](#); [John 1:33](#); [John 3:5](#); [John 3:6](#); [John 3:7](#); [John 3:15](#); [John 3:22](#); [John 3:25](#); [John 4:3](#); [John 6:56](#); [John 16:9](#); [John 16:22](#); [John 16:23](#); [John 19:34](#).

Holy Spirit Baptism for a Christian

Should a Believer Seek the Baptism in the Holy Spirit?

The baptism in the Holy Spirit is a gift from God the Father, given in the name of the Lord Jesus to all believers who trust in this gift and earnestly seek it. However, many Christians today grapple with the doctrine of Holy Spirit baptism and whether it should be pursued. The answer is yes, and the Gospels and other New Testament writings support the baptism in the Holy Spirit. For more information, see our extended article: [The Baptism in the Holy Spirit](#).

The Lord Jesus Himself was baptized in water and in the Holy Spirit. Furthermore, numerous Scripture passages affirm that the Lord Jesus is the One who baptizes with the Holy Spirit. For example, see [Matthew 3:11-12](#), [Matthew 3:13-17](#), [Mark 1:7-8](#), [Mark 1:9-12](#), [Mark 16:16](#), [Luke 3:16-17](#), [Luke 3:21-22](#), [Luke 12:50](#), [John 1:33](#), [John 3:23](#), [John 3:32-34](#), and [John 3:34-35](#)). A true believer in the beloved Son of God, the Lord Jesus Christ, should follow all the teachings and examples set by the Lord Jesus to live a faithful Christian life. After His bodily resurrection, while in Jerusalem with His disciples, the Lord Jesus instructed them to wait for the promise of the Father—the baptism in the Holy Spirit. He told them in [Luke 24:49](#): “*And behold, I am sending out the promise of My Father upon you; but remain you in the city, until you be clothed with power from on high.*”

In [Acts 1:4-5](#), Luke, speaking through the Holy Spirit, emphasizes the commandment and promise of the Lord Jesus: “*He commanded them not to depart from Jerusalem, but to wait for the promise of the Father: which you heard of Me; for John indeed baptized with water; however, you will be baptized with the Holy Spirit, not many days after these.*” In [Acts chapter 2](#), we witness the Holy Spirit descending upon the disciples: “*And they were all filled with the Holy Spirit, and began to speak in other tongues, as the Spirit was giving them utterance*” — [Acts 2:4](#). The baptism in the Holy Spirit, which is the promise of the Father, is intended for all believers in the beloved Son of God, not just for those who were present in Jerusalem at that time.

In [Acts 2:38](#), Peter preaching to the multitude says, “*Repent, and be baptized every one of you, in the name of Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of your sins, and you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit.*” This saying indicates that the gift of the Holy

Spirit—the most powerful gift from God—is available to anyone who is ready and prepared to receive it. First, one must repent of their sins and preferably undergo the baptism of repentance in water in the name of the Trinity of God (God the Father, God the Son, Jesus Christ, and God the Holy Spirit). After this, if one seeks the baptism in the Holy Spirit and is ready, the Holy Spirit will come to baptize them if they ask this gift from the Trinity of God in the name of the Lord Jesus.

The baptism in the Holy Spirit completes the salvation seal, signifying that the human spirit has joined the believer's salvation seal. Speaking in tongues serves as a sign for the believer that they have received the baptism in the Holy Spirit. For more detailed explanations regarding the baptism in the Holy Spirit and its signs, please refer to our comments on the following passages: [Comments John 1:33](#), [Comments John 3:5](#), [Comments Matthew 16:18](#), and [Comments Acts 2:2-4](#). When a believer's spirit joins the salvation seal, the Lord God has a specific plan for that person, and the work of the Father will be carried out through this joining.

How Can a Believer Receive the Baptism in the Holy Spirit?

In [John 1:33](#), John the Baptist identifies the Lord Jesus as the One who has the authority to baptize with the Holy Spirit. We associate this particular verse with the practice of baptism in the Holy Spirit. In the comments related to this verse, we explain what baptism in the Holy Spirit is and how a believer can receive it, evidenced by the miraculous occurrence of speaking in other tongues (see [Comments John 1:33](#)). For a believer seeking the baptism in the Holy Spirit, it is important to understand that there are two types of baptism in the Holy Spirit: “the Holy Spirit going through” and “the Holy Spirit dwelling” (see [Comments John 3:5](#), and [Comments John 3:6](#)).

Additionally, in [Comments Matthew 16:18](#), we provide further insights related to the salvation seal, as well as the roles of water baptism and Holy Spirit baptism in the life of a believer in the Lord Jesus. Furthermore, in [Luke 12:50](#), the Lord Jesus speaks about the baptism He had to undergo. You can find more details in [Comments Luke 12:50](#), where we discuss the two baptisms that the Lord Jesus experienced during His time on earth as a human.

In [Matthew 12:30](#) and [Matthew 12:35-36](#), the Lord Jesus emphasizes the importance of gathering with Him, being baptized in water, and being mindful of our new book of life, which will be used to judge us (see [Comments Matthew 12:30](#), and [Comments Matthew 12:35-36](#)).

In [Luke 24:49](#), the Lord Jesus speaks to His disciples about the Promise from the Father, which is the baptism in the Holy Spirit. [Acts 2:1-39](#) describes the outpouring

of the Holy Spirit, accompanied by the miraculous sign of speaking in other tongues, experienced by the apostles of the Lord Jesus and other disciples who were gathered and waiting for the Promise. We encourage all readers to take time to review all the comments we have provided alongside the verses in [Acts 2:1-39](#). Additionally, in [Acts 8:17](#), we see that the baptism in the Holy Spirit is bestowed upon those who believe through the laying on of hands and prayer. This method is also available for us to practice while seeking the baptism in the Holy Spirit (see [Comments Acts 8:17](#)).

We encourage all believers to seek mercy from the Father through prayer and fasting, in the name of the Lord Jesus, to receive the baptism in the Holy Spirit. Pray together with supportive believers, and continue to ask and knock, trusting that the Lord will pour out His blessings.

We encourage all believers to seek mercy from the Father through prayer and fasting, in the name of the Lord Jesus, to receive the baptism in the Holy Spirit. Pray together with supportive believers, and continue to ask and knock, trusting that the Lord will pour out His blessings. For a deeper understanding of the salvation seal, please refer to our article titled [Water Baptism for Christians](#).

Additionally, for a more comprehensive understanding of Holy Spirit baptism, we encourage readers to refer to our detailed article titled [The Baptism in the Holy Spirit](#).

The Baptism in the Holy Spirit

Abstract

The baptism in the Holy Spirit is a topic that generates significant debate among both Christians and non-Christians. In this blog article, we explore various Bible passages from the Gospels and the Book of Acts to demonstrate that the baptism in the Holy Spirit is a gift from the Father, given in the name of the Lord Jesus to all who are open to and believe in receiving this gift. We discuss how the baptism in the Holy Spirit must be accompanied by speaking in tongues as a miraculous sign, both for the believer and those around them, indicating that the baptism in the Holy Spirit has indeed taken place. Within the context of Holy Spirit baptism, we examine three important stages in a believer's faith journey: 1) a person repents and invites the Lord Jesus to live in their hearts; 2) a person is baptized in water by immersion in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit; 3) a person seeks the baptism in the Holy Spirit in the name of the Lord Jesus, believing that the miraculous sign of the Holy Spirit baptism must include speaking in unknown angelic tongues. The article is organized into four main sections:

1. Introduction.
2. Does the Baptism in Water Replace the Baptism in the Holy Spirit?
3. The Stages of the Holy Spirit Baptism.
4. Conclusions.

Moreover, the section "The Stages of the Holy Spirit Baptism" is divided into two subsections:

1. The Holy Spirit Baptism: The Holy Spirit Passing Through Stage.
2. The Holy Spirit Baptism: The Holy Spirit Dwelling Stage.

For clarity, these subsections are further divided into sub-subsections.

Introduction

The Lord Jesus came to earth as both the Son of God and the Son of Man, born of the Holy Spirit and the Virgin Mary. He came to show us the way to the Father. As the sinless Lamb of God, He was crucified for the sins of the world. He died on the

cross, was buried in the tomb, and on the third day, He rose, in the body, from the dead. He then ascended to the Father, where He is seated at the Father's right hand. During His time on earth, the Lord Jesus told His disciples multiple times that He would be crucified and would rise again. He promised that if we love Him and keep His commandments, He will ask the Father to send us another Intercessor: The Holy Spirit, who will be with us forever ([John 14:15-18](#)). After His resurrection and before His ascension into heaven, the Lord Jesus commanded His disciples to stay in the city of Jerusalem until they would receive the baptism in the Holy Spirit ([Luke 24:49](#)).

The Book of Acts then details the ministry of the Lord Jesus after His resurrection, under the leadership of the Holy Spirit. The first chapter of the Book of Acts continues the events presented in [Luke 24](#). The resurrected Lord Jesus tells His disciples to go out and tell people about the Lord's work and His purpose for all. Also, the Lord Jesus commands them to wait for the blessing from the Father, the baptism in the Holy Spirit. Not one person but many have witnessed the departure of the Lord Jesus. Humans' eyes have seen the Lord Jesus being taken up into heaven, where He is seated at the right hand of God the Father (see [Acts 7:55-56](#)).

Furthermore, in [Acts 2](#), at Pentecost, as the disciples were waiting in prayer, as instructed by the Lord Jesus, we witness the miracle of the promise of the Father: the gift of the Holy Spirit is poured on the Lord Jesus' disciples. Here, we see that the Lord Jesus keeps His promise to send "the promise of My Father upon you," as stated in [Luke 24:49](#). The mighty works of God have been manifested in this place. The Holy Spirit came upon the disciples, as they were gathered together in one place and praying, in a powerful way, through miraculous, audible, and visible signs, and baptized all those gathered in that place, so they all began to speak in tongues and prophesy about the mighty works of God Almighty. The power of God has no time or space limit, and the baptism in the Holy Spirit has been given to all, then and now, who seek and believe in the Lord Jesus Christ as being the Son of God and the Savior of the world. People from all over the ancient world have witnessed the miraculous work of God and were all amazed. Peter, an ordinary fisherman by occupation, anointed by the power of the Holy Spirit, delivered a powerful message to all those gathered in Jerusalem. Peter testifies that the Lord Jesus, who was crucified and put to death by lawless men, was raised up in the body by God the Father, and He is the One who received from the Father the promise of the Holy Spirit, which He poured out on them as seen by all. The Lord Jesus, who was crucified, is Lord and Christ, seated at the right hand of God the Father, and has the

power to save all those who believe in Him. The mighty power of God works in the hearts of people. When people repent and are baptized in the water, then they will receive the promise of the Father if they seek it and are ready. Distance and time have no limit for the Lord; the gift of the Holy Spirit is available to all humans and all generations, past and future. The work of God is powerful throughout every generation of humans, and all people should be in awe at the mighty works of God. When believers join together under the leadership of the Holy Spirit to praise the Lord God Almighty, the work of glorifying God Almighty begins among other people as well.

In this blog article, we explain the gift of the baptism in the Holy Spirit for all believers in the Lord Jesus, evidenced by speaking in an unknown angelic tongue. All believers in the Lord Jesus seeking the baptism in the Holy Spirit can receive this gift and be blessed by this gift.

Does the Baptism in the Water Replace the Baptism in the Holy Spirit?

In this section, we address a common question among believers: whether they have received the baptism in the Holy Spirit when baptized in water. The answer can be either yes or no. The baptism in the Holy Spirit is a gift from God the Father, given in the name of the Lord Jesus to all believers who trust in this gift and earnestly seek it. Furthermore, numerous Scripture passages affirm that the Lord Jesus is the One who baptizes with the Holy Spirit. Each believer is called to follow the examples portrayed for us in the Bible. The Lord Jesus Himself was baptized in water and in the Holy Spirit (see [Matthew 3:16-17](#)) when the Holy Spirit descended as a dove upon Him and spoke in a loud voice from heaven saying: “This is My beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased.” And the Lord Jesus’ disciples, as shown in many places in Acts, have received the baptism in the Holy Spirit by the manifestation of the miraculous signs both visible and audible by speaking in unknown languages (see [Acts 2:4-11](#); [Acts 8:17](#); [Acts 10:44-46](#); [Acts 19:6](#)). We see that there is always a miracle accompanying the baptism in the Holy Spirit. Therefore, for a true believer in the Lord Jesus, the manifestation of the baptism in the Holy Spirit must have the miraculous sign of the believer speaking at least a word, loudly, in an unknown angelic tongue (spiritual tongue), because at the baptism in the Holy Spirit, the Holy Spirit takes control over our soul and spirit ([John 3:8](#)). And this must be true; otherwise, how can a believer have the assurance in their soul of being baptized in the Holy Spirit?

The obvious question that arises on the water baptism and Holy Spirit baptism matter is: what happens during water baptism when one is baptized in the name of the Father, Son, and Holy Spirit? This question has two answers. As a further note, we are referring here to the true baptism in water of a believer by full immersion, in the name of the Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. We cannot consider infant water baptism or water sprinkling baptism, as these types of baptism are not commanded in the Holy Scripture, and the manifestation of the Holy Spirit cannot endorse something that the Word of God does not command.

First, according to the teachings of the Bible, if a believer believes in the baptism of the Holy Spirit and is seeking this gift, and if the Holy Spirit comes upon them—either before, during, or shortly after they exit the water baptism—and they begin to speak in tongues loudly, then they can be confident that they have been baptized in the Holy Spirit in the name of the Lord Jesus.

Second, if a believer believes in the baptism of the Holy Spirit and is seeking this gift but the experience of speaking in another tongue did not occur before, during, or shortly after the time of the water baptism, then the believer has not experienced the full baptism in the Holy Spirit at that time, and their responsibility is to continue to seek this baptism.

Our second answer leads us to another question: what do we mean by “full baptism in the Holy Spirit,” and what truly happens during water baptism?

In all cases, the believer must seek and believe that the Holy Spirit baptism must have the miraculous manifestation of speaking in an unknown tongue upon receiving the full baptism in the Holy Spirit. The sign of the Holy Spirit’s baptism must show according to the Bible, and we know in our spirit about this act (see [Acts 2:2-4](#)). The miraculous gift of speaking in tongues is the confirmation that the human spirit has joined the salvation seal. Speaking out loud, one word or a few words, in a tongue is the sign of the Holy Spirit baptism (see [Comments John 1:33](#)). Speaking more in tongues is a gift that comes after, and everyone can get this gift of speaking in tongues by praying and asking for the gift from the Lord. This miraculous gift of tongues is given to everyone; they only need to listen to the very small voice of the Holy Spirit inside their heart. Many are being baptized in water but ignore the small voice of the Lord; it’s not that the Holy Spirit doesn’t come to them. He comes to each heart with a small voice, but many have refused to listen, which is why not many people speak in tongues. However, a true believer must believe in both water baptism and Holy Spirit baptism (see [Comments John 3:5](#) and [Comments John 1:33](#)).

Following our comments in [Matthew 16:18](#), after a believer receives the Holy Spirit, the evil one cannot make the believer reject the Lord, but they can still trick the believer. They can make you believe that the Lord left you, and then you yourself reject the Lord or become angry with the Lord; then you can grieve the Holy Spirit (see [Ephesians 4:30](#)). But remember, the Bible is clear in telling us that the Lord will never leave us nor forsake us (see [Deuteronomy 31:6-8](#), [Hebrews 13:5-6](#), [Psalm 55:22](#)). By the will of the Lord, the gates of hell will never open for a person that has the faith (salvation) seal. Therefore, keep in mind that the Lord always gives a way out for everybody, and He will judge by the heart of the person.

As a note, the criminal on the cross did not receive the salvation seal by baptism in water, but he received the salvation seal of the Lord Jesus' Word on his soul. The Lord baptized him by His Word (see [Luke 23:43](#)).

The Stages of the Holy Spirit Baptism

Numerous Scripture passages affirm that the Lord Jesus is the One who baptizes with the Holy Spirit. For example, see [Matthew 3:11-12](#), [Matthew 3:13-17](#), [Mark 1:7-8](#), [Mark 1:9-12](#), [Mark 16:16](#), [Luke 3:16-17](#), [Luke 3:21-22](#), [Luke 12:50](#), [John 1:33](#), [John 3:23](#), and [John 3:32-35](#). A true believer in the beloved Son of God, the Lord Jesus Christ, should follow all the teachings and examples set by the Lord Jesus to live a faithful Christian life. After His bodily resurrection, while in Jerusalem with His disciples, the Lord Jesus instructed them to wait for the promise of the Father—the baptism in the Holy Spirit. He told them in [Luke 24:49](#): “And behold, I am sending out the promise of My Father upon you; but remain you in the city, until you be clothed with power from on high.”

As followers of the Lord Jesus, we go through various stages in our faith journey. While there are many experiences, we can highlight three important stages in the growth of a believer's faith:

1. A person repents and invites the Lord Jesus to live in their hearts.
2. A person is baptized in water by immersion in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.
3. A person seeks the baptism in the Holy Spirit in the name of the Lord Jesus, believing that the miraculous sign of the Holy Spirit baptism must include speaking in unknown angelic tongues.

Considering these faith development stages, regarding the baptism of the Holy Spirit, there are three important questions to consider (see [Comments Acts 2:11](#)):

****First****. What happens inside of us when someone repents and invites the Lord Jesus into their hearts? At this stage, the person has much work to do before reaching the next level. Here, the Spirit of the Lord Jesus and the Holy Spirit are simply checking the person's soul and stirring them to meditate on the Word of God.

****Second****. What occurs within us when a person is baptized in water? At this point, the person has begun walking in the steps of completing and receiving both baptisms: in the water (the baptism of repentance) and in the Holy Spirit (the baptism of fulfillment).

****Third****. What happens inside of us when a person seeks and receives the baptism in the Holy Spirit? At this stage, the spirit of the person joins the salvation seal; the Holy Spirit dwells in the soul of the believer, and He performs His work (using the believer).

In our commentary, we discuss two main stages of the baptism in the Holy Spirit. For a believer in the Lord Jesus seeking this baptism, it is important to understand that there are two potential stages: “the Holy Spirit passing through or touching” and “the Holy Spirit dwelling or using” (see [Comments John 3:5](#) and [Comments John 3:6](#)). However, these stages occur only when a believer actively seeks the baptism in the Holy Spirit. We emphasize that the stage of the Holy Spirit dwelling in or using a believer represents the complete experience of baptism in the Holy Spirit. Additionally, some believers may receive this baptism quickly, while others may take more time. It's also worth noting that not everyone will experience speaking in an unknown tongue loudly. Nevertheless, as long as one has faith in the baptism in the Holy Spirit and earnestly seek it, that is what pleases the Lord.

We have organized this main section into two primary subsections, each with a conclusion subsection.

1. The Holy Spirit Baptism: The Holy Spirit Passing Through Stage
2. The Holy Spirit Baptism: The Holy Spirit Dwelling Stage

The Holy Spirit Baptism: The Holy Spirit Passing Through Stage

In this subsection, we discuss the baptism of a believer in water and its connection to the baptism in the Holy Spirit. We reference passages from [Matthew 3:13-17](#), [Matthew 16:18](#), and [John 3:3-8](#), and we end with a conclusion subsection.

[Matthew 3:13](#) Then comes Jesus from Galilee to the Jordan to John, to be baptized of him.

14 But John was hindering Him, saying, I have need to be baptized of Thee, and do Thou come to me?

Comments Matthew 3:13-14. This passage of Scripture shows that even the sinless Lamb of God needs to be baptized in water. If the sinless Lamb of God asks to be baptized, how then can humans say they have no sin and do not need to be baptized? Here we see the example we need to follow about baptizing in water.

15 However, Jesus answering him said, Permit just now; for thus it is proper to us to fulfill all righteousness. Then he permits Him.

Comments Matthew 3:15. As it is written, “to fulfill all righteousness,” the Lord Jesus Himself needed to be baptized in water. He is both God and human, serving as an example for humans to follow. If the sinless One has to be baptized in water, then all the people who want to follow the Lord Jesus must also do so. As is the walk through the gate of death, even so, a person baptizing in the water dies from the old life and becomes a new person in the Lord. The old book of life has been destroyed, and a new book of life starts (see Matthew 12:30 and Matthew 12:36-37).

When you merge under the water in the name of the Father, the Son, the Lord Jesus Christ, and the Holy Spirit, your soul is touched by the Lord in that water. And when you come out from that water, the Lord becomes the guide of your soul in the unseen world and the master of your life in this world. Water baptism is important for a new believer, but the person must meditate on the Lord’s teaching and seek and ask for the Holy Spirit baptism as well. When you have received the Holy Spirit baptism, the Holy Spirit goes through your soul and guides your soul. All humans need to be born of water and the Holy Spirit in order to enter the kingdom of heaven (see John 3:5). Your life living on this earth must follow according to the master of your life. If you do not baptize in the water, your soul will not have a chance to be counted in; after the Lord’s crucifixion, all must be baptized in water. For the soul of a human, the baptism in the water is the same way as a butterfly emerging. The soul itself is wrapped with many layers of sins. When you submerge into the baptismal water and when you come out, most of the layers of sins covering your soul are left in that water, and you come out with a purer soul, free; this is the new birth in the spiritual world. However, the Holy Spirit baptism, when it

happens, will cleanse the soul thoroughly, making a complete cleansing of your soul.

16 Now, Jesus, having been baptized, ascended immediately from the water; and behold, the heavens were opened to Him, and He saw the Spirit of God descending as a dove, alighting upon Him;

Comments Matthew 3:16. The door of heaven was opened to the Lord Jesus for the Lord to see His house: the Father's throne. The Lord Jesus misses His home. The Father misses His Son. This here is a reunion between the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit (the Trinity of God).

17 and behold, a voice from out of the heavens, saying, This is My beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased.

Comments Matthew 3:17. John saw part of the reunion act between the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit. All the other people present only heard the voice of the Father. See also Comments Mark 1:9-11.

In Matthew 16:16, Peter testifies that the Lord Jesus is the Son of God. In response, the Lord Jesus blesses Peter, telling him that his revelation of faith has come from the Father in heaven, and this faith that the Lord Jesus is the Son of God is the foundational rock upon which the Church of the Lord Jesus will be built.

Matthew 16:18 Moreover, I also say to you, that you are Peter, and upon this rock I will build My church; and the gates of Hades will not prevail against it.

Comments Matthew 16:18. This verse refers to the believer's faith.

"You are Peter, and upon this rock" indicates that Peter is the first one to whom the Father revealed who the Lord Jesus is, and on this rock of knowledge, the church will be built on. After the Lord Jesus fulfilled the Father's will, this knowledge that the Lord Jesus is the Son of God will keep going on, and it will build more people's faith in the Son of God, the Holy One. At this time, Peter's faith had been established; he could die for what he believed.

"Upon this rock" refers to the truth that Peter received. The rock is the truth about the Lord Jesus that He is "the Christ, the Son of the Living God."

"I will build My church" means that the Lord Jesus will build His church on the truth that Peter received, which is the rock, the foundation of the church.

“And the gates of Hades will not prevail against it” means that the gates of hell have no power to stop the Lord Jesus from building His church. The Lord Jesus opened the gate of the heavens (see [Matthew 3:16](#)) and put the seal of His blood on the gates of hell when He was there (at the gates) during the three days (see 1 Peter 3:18-20). The Lord Jesus put the seal on the gates of hell, which is the blood of the Lord Jesus, and it is a forbidden seal; no evil can touch this seal or remove it (see Exodus 12:13). All His children have the salvation seal of the Lamb of God on them. The gates of Hades will never open for those who have the salvation seal of the Lamb of God on them. The salvation seal is put on a believer’s heart when the person believes and gives his heart to the Lord Jesus, and then goes and is baptized in the water (complete baptism: heart and water, meaning soul and body). The believer’s responsibility is to keep this seal by staying in faith, studying the Word of God, and keeping the Word of God in the heart until the end of life on this earth. If you have the Word of God in your heart, you have a shield of protection.

In [John 3:1-12](#), Nicodemus comes to the Lord Jesus by night. In this passage, the Lord Jesus explains to Nicodemus what it takes to enter the kingdom of God. The Lord Jesus says that we must be “born from above” to enter into the kingdom of God. Being “born from above” means being baptized in water and the Holy Spirit. All true believers must be baptized in the water in the name of the Father, of the Son Jesus, and of the Holy Spirit, and believe in the Trinity of God to enter into the kingdom of God.

[John 3:3](#) Jesus answered and said to him, Truly, truly, I say to you, Except anyone is born from above, he is not able to see the kingdom of God.

[Comments John 3:3](#). “Except anyone is born from above, he is not able to see the kingdom of God.” What the beloved Son of God has talked about here relates to those born according to the will of the Father, those who will accept the beloved Son of God and have a chance to enter into the kingdom of God.

“Born from above.” Born by the will of the Father to know the light and accept the beloved Son of God as their own personal Savior.

4 Nicodemus says to Him, How can a man be born being old? Can he enter a second time into his mother's womb and be born?

Comments John 3:4. In this verse, Nicodemus gives a question from a human mind's point of view.

5 Jesus answered, Truly, truly, I say to you, Except anyone is born of water and of Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God.

Comments John 3:5. "Except anyone is born of water and of Spirit." This verse clearly tells all humans that everyone should be baptized in water and seek the baptism in the Holy Spirit to enter the kingdom of God. But also, we must remember that the Holy Spirit baptism has two kinds: "the Holy Spirit going through" and "the Holy Spirit using or dwelling in." "The Holy Spirit going through" occurs during water baptism, when the person feels the Holy Spirit, and we can call this the Holy Spirit checking the person's heart. So, by "the Holy Spirit going through," we mean as the Holy Spirit touching that person's heart, and the person feels it as well. When the Holy Spirit prefers to use that heart for work, He will dwell and use that heart; this is "the Holy Spirit using or dwelling in" and happens after the baptism in the Holy Spirit with the evidence of speaking in tongues (see Comments John 1:33).

"He cannot enter into the kingdom of God." The person must be baptized in the name of the Father, of the Son Jesus, and of the Holy Spirit, and believe in the Trinity of God to enter into the kingdom of God. Being "born from above" means being baptized in the water and the Holy Spirit. All true believers must be baptized in the water and in the Holy Spirit.

6 That having been born of the flesh, flesh is, and that having been born of the Spirit, spirit is.

Comments John 3:6. "That having been born of the flesh, flesh is." Every human is born of the flesh; if the person does not accept the Trinity of God and does not worship Him, the flesh will remain as flesh only.

"That having been born of the Spirit, spirit is." So, any human that accepts the Holy Spirit and has invited Him, and the water baptism also has been completed in that time, then the Holy Spirit has touched that person's heart, and that person has already been born through the Holy Spirit as well; the person will feel in their heart some feeling going through them, but that person

has not yet received the complete baptism in the Holy Spirit; still, this can count as having been touched by the Holy Spirit (the Holy Spirit going through baptism).

7 Marvel not that I said to you, It behooves you to be born from above.

Comments John 3:7. The verse tells all readers clearly that to be born from above is to be born through the water and the Holy Spirit: when you come out of the water, you are renewed, and you complete the process by being baptized in the Holy Spirit, you are reborn again. The only way to be born from above is through the water baptism and the Holy Spirit baptism in the name of the Father, the Son of God (Jesus Christ), and the Holy Spirit. For this earth to be born from above, everyone must go through the water baptism and the Holy Spirit baptism (see verse 5).

8 The wind blows where it wills, and you hear the sound of it, but be aware not from where it comes, and where it goes; in this manner is every one that is born of the Spirit.

Comments John 3:8. As the verse tells all believers, you do not know where the Holy Spirit is, not by eyes nor by ears, but only by the heart being touched by Him. Unlike anything else on this earth, all have shape and sound, but the Holy Spirit does not have shape and sound for humans to perceive, but by the feeling when He touches you.

Conclusions of the Subsection “The Holy Spirit Baptism: the Holy Spirit Passing Through Stage”

From the comments in the main section, we deduce four main fundamentals of faith in the Lord Jesus.

****First**.** From Matthew 3:13-17, we conclude that all believers must be baptized by immersion in water in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit, as a command and example from the Lord Jesus Himself. When a believer submerges in the baptismal water and comes out, most of the layers of sin covering their soul are left behind in that water, and they come out with a purer soul, free; this is the new birth in the spiritual world. However, all humans need to be born of water and the Holy Spirit in order to enter the kingdom of heaven. When the Holy Spirit baptism occurs, the Holy Spirit will thoroughly cleanse the soul, providing complete cleansing.

****Second**.** From Matthew 16:18, we conclude that regardless of which comes first, the baptism in the Holy Spirit or water baptism, all believers must be baptized in water to complete the transformation of a person in the body and the spirit. The Lord Jesus put the seal on the gates of hell, which is the blood of the Lord Jesus, and it is a forbidden seal; no evil can touch this seal or remove it (see Exodus 12:13). All His children have the salvation seal of the Lamb of God on them. The gates of Hades will never open for those who have the salvation seal of the Lamb of God on them. The salvation seal is put on a believer's heart when the person believes and gives his heart to the Lord Jesus, and then goes and is baptized in the water (complete baptism: heart and water, meaning soul and body). The believer's responsibility is to keep this seal by staying in faith, studying the Word of God, and keeping the Word in the heart until the end of life on this earth. If you have the Word of God in your heart, you have a shield of protection.

****Third**.** Being "born from above" means being baptized in the water and the Holy Spirit. All true believers must be baptized in the water and in the Holy Spirit. Any human that accepts the Holy Spirit and has invited Him, and the water baptism also has been completed in that time, then the Holy Spirit has touched that person's heart, and that person has already been born through the Holy Spirit as well; the person will feel in their heart some feeling going through them, but that person did not get the complete baptism in the Holy Spirit yet; still this can count as has been touched by the Holy Spirit (the Holy Spirit going through baptism).

****Forth**.** Therefore, we are talking about two types of indwelling of a person by the Holy Spirit: the indwelling of a person by covering the heart and the soul and the indwelling of a person by dwelling deep inside the heart and the soul. At the salvation stage, a believer will be indwelt by the Holy Spirit by the Holy Spirit covering their heart and soul, and at the Holy Spirit baptism stage, the believer will be indwelt by the Holy Spirit dwelling deep in the human heart and the soul.

The Holy Spirit Baptism: Holy Spirit Dwelling Stage

In this subsection, we address four main questions. First, why must the baptism in the Holy Spirit be evidenced through the miracle of speaking audibly in an unknown angelic tongue? Second, how can a person begin to speak in an unknown angelic tongue? Third, what is the best practice for receiving the baptism in the Holy Spirit? Fourth, is the baptism in the Holy Spirit necessary today, and does it still manifest through speaking in an unknown tongue? To help answer these questions, we

comment on a few passages of Scripture: John 1:33; Acts 2:4-11; Acts 8:17; Acts 10:44-46; and Acts 19:6. This subsection is organized into four subsections:

1. The Lord Jesus Baptizes with the Holy Spirit
2. The Baptism in the Holy Spirit through the Miracle of Speaking in an Unknown Tongue
3. The Best Practices for Receiving the Holy Spirit Baptism
4. Conclusions of the Section on “Baptism in the Holy Spirit: The Holy Spirit Dwelling Stage.”

The Lord Jesus Baptizes with the Holy Spirit

In John 1:33, John the Baptist identifies the Lord Jesus as the One who baptizes with the Holy Spirit saying:

John 1:33 But I knew Him not; but the One having sent me to baptize with water, He said to me, Upon whom you will perceive the Spirit descending, and remaining on Him, He is the One who baptizes with the Holy Spirit.

Comments John 1:33. As the verse tells all readers, John himself had not known the Lord before until he had seen the Holy Spirit descending upon Him. After that, he will realize who He is that the Father has told him, which will make an impact on every heart, with the Holy Spirit baptism, to the one who has faith and trust in the beloved Son of God, which is the gift of life to give to all who believe in Him.

Here we can ask a couple of questions. Why does the Holy Spirit descend on the beloved Son of God at this time, this way? Wasn't the Holy Spirit already upon the Lord Jesus? The Holy Spirit was already on the Lord Jesus, but at this time, there was a need to show all humans who is the One in whom the Father is within as well.

“He is the One who baptizes with the Holy Spirit.” The Holy Spirit will be given to the one who has faith and trust in the beloved Son of God and confesses with the mouth and heart regarding the beloved Son of God; the Holy Spirit will also come and dwell in that person. The Holy Spirit will give the feeling to the person of being close but not within the Holy Spirit, not as to be one with, but as the shell covering, as the Holy Spirit using to cover. The Holy Spirit dwells in the person, not the person dwells in the Holy Spirit; the feeling between these two will be different. The Holy Spirit dwelling in a

person and baptism in the Holy Spirit are different: Holy Spirit dwelling in the person is only a deep feeling of the heart, while baptism in the Holy Spirit involves speaking in tongues as well and dwelling in the soul.

The Baptism in the Holy Spirit through the Miracle of Speaking in an Unknown Tongue

Not everyone who is baptized in the Holy Spirit will be speaking in tongues, even if the person has the word but is afraid to say it out loud because of a lack of understanding and uncertainty of what the words mean. Also, at that time, the apostles performed miracles accompanied by baptism in the Holy Spirit, but nowadays, no miracles will accompany when anyone is baptized in the Holy Spirit; it is just the miracle gift of speaking in tongues and the understanding of the Word of God.

At first, the Holy Spirit will touch you, but when the Holy Spirit baptism takes place, the Holy Spirit dwells inside your heart. So, first, at the water baptism, the Holy Spirit touches your heart. If your heart is open and willing to follow the Holy Spirit's baptism, then the Holy Spirit will dwell inside your heart, but not work; He will dwell because of being invited. Then, when the right time comes, the Holy Spirit will work; when the Holy Spirit is working, the person will have more understanding and will speak more in tongues. [Think of the stages of being baptized: physical, mind, and spiritual.]

As we all have seen, there are many ways of faith, but you cannot have faith alone in the beloved Son of God; you must believe in the Trinity of God as well. When you have faith in the Trinity of God, that person also has faith in the Holy Spirit, and when you invite the Holy Spirit into your heart, then the Holy Spirit dwelling in the heart will happen, and we call this the baptism in the Holy Spirit, but the baptism at this stage is incomplete. The baptism in the Holy Spirit is the time when this person may have only one word in a tongue, but not every person may say it out because of the lack of understanding. When the person has the feeling of the hearing of the word inside of their heart, even without understanding, but still should say it out loud, this is the sign of the baptism in the Holy Spirit.

At the Holy Spirit baptism, the person has the word of a tongue but does not speak it out, so it is not that there is no speaking in tongues, but the person did not speak it. Therefore, the baptism in the Holy Spirit must always be accompanied by speaking in a tongue, even just one word; the person who receives it must speak out, and that

is considered to claim the ability to speak in a tongue. If the person did not speak the word out loud, then the speaking in tongues for that person would not generate further knowledge; that person will have only that word until the person accepts the gift deep in the soul, not in mind, but in the heart; the gift here is the knowledge of that word which the Lord has given even one single word. The person is considered completely baptized in the Holy Spirit when they speak at least one tongue word out loud and accept that tongue word as a miraculous sign of the Holy Spirit baptism for themselves.

Here we can raise the question: Can the Holy Spirit indwell a person at water baptism, or when they simply express faith in the Trinity of God? The person can be considered baptized in the Holy Spirit only when that person says the tongue word out loud, even just one time, one word, but must say it out loud. The difference between being baptized in the Holy Spirit and the Holy Spirit touching the heart is this: the Holy Spirit touches the heart at the water baptism, and at the Holy Spirit baptism, there must be speaking in tongues as evidence of the Holy Spirit baptism.

When a person has been baptized in the Holy Spirit, that person has been touched from the inside of their soul, and the feeling of that person will be different. So, when the person has been touched this way, if the person does not ignore the little voice (of the Holy Spirit) that tells the person of any word, even one to remember, even if the person hears many words but can remember only one word, and says that word out loud, by saying out loud that word, it will lead the person to speak more. Every time when the person feels they don't have any words to pray, bring that word and say it repeatedly, and the Holy Spirit will follow and guide more words to come; that word for that person is considered a leading prayer for the soul in a tongue.

When the Holy Spirit dwells in that person's heart, whenever that person prays or meditates on the Word of God, the heart of that person will go and beg the Holy Spirit to act out accordingly to His own will; you can say as a consistent invitation of the soul for the Holy Spirit to act and give more words of speaking in a tongue when the Holy Spirit dwells in that person.

Another question we can ask is: How does the Holy Spirit touch a person at water baptism, and how does the Holy Spirit dwell inside such a person? This person is touched by the Holy Spirit, but the Holy Spirit does not dwell deep inside that person's soul; the Holy Spirit just covers the human heart itself and the soul of the person.

Therefore, here we are talking about two types of indwelling of a person by the Holy Spirit: the indwelling of a person by covering the heart and the soul, and the indwelling of a person by dwelling deep inside the heart and the soul. At the salvation stage, a believer will be indwelt by the Holy Spirit, by the Holy Spirit covering their heart and soul. At the Holy Spirit baptism stage, the believer will be indwelt by the Holy Spirit dwelling deep in the human heart and the soul.

In Acts 2, at Pentecost, as the disciples were waiting in prayer, as instructed by the Lord Jesus, we witness the miracle of the promise of the Father: the gift of the Holy Spirit is poured on the Lord Jesus' disciples (Acts 2:4-11).

Acts 2:4 And they were all filled with the Holy Spirit, and began to speak in other tongues, as the Spirit was giving them utterance.

Comments Acts 2:4. “And they were all filled with the Holy Spirit.” Give attention to what the word says: all, not part, but all were filled with the gift from the Father.

“And began to speak in other tongues.” Here, it confirms the sign of the gift: when you are baptized with the Holy Spirit, the gift of other tongues will also be there. And this also shows humans that the will of the Lord has been spoken out for all to know.

The question that arises here is: What type of tongues were given here as the sign of the baptism in the Holy Spirit? Human language does not need interpretation, but the angelic language must be accompanied by interpretation. Here, the disciples spoke both angelic and human languages.

“As the Spirit was giving them utterance.” When the will of the Lord has been proclaimed, understanding will also come. When the word says, “giving them utterance,” that means they spoke in angelic languages and then translated into various human languages as the Spirit gave them utterance.

Here, utterance means a spoken word about the work of God.

5 Now there were dwelling in Jerusalem Jews, devout men, from every nation under heaven.

Comments Acts 2:5. In this verse, it tells all humans as well that the Lord has performed a miracle, and everyone will notice the power of God.

“Jews, devout men.” These are a group of males who devoted themselves to searching for the truth about God.

“From every nation under heaven.” This generally means that all nations from under heaven were there and had seen the miracle.

6 Now this sound having happened, the multitude came together, and were confounded, because each one heard them speaking in his own language.

Comments Acts 2:6. “Now this sound having happened, the multitude came together, and were confounded.” In this place, when humans hear a mighty sound by ear, it has worked and stirred their minds to think, and their reaction of the heart from what they hear with their ear has stirred their hearts to think about what truly happened. Now, their hearts are opened with eagerness to know the truth.

“Because each one heard them speaking in his own language.” Now, the wonder in their hearts has come to their heads: how can these people know their language? Each person’s heart has been touched by this.

Summary of what happened from verse 1 to verse 6:

1. The disciples were gathered together in one place, praying and waiting for the promise from the Father.
2. “Suddenly came from heaven a sound as of the rushing of a mighty wind.” The disciples and others heard this mighty sound, which drew attention to itself, and people started to look at where the sound came from. When the sound came, people looked to see where the loud sound came from.
3. “And there appeared to them tongues parting asunder.” These tongues of fire appeared only in the place where the disciples were praying. At this time, the disciples received the promised gift from the Father and were baptized with the Holy Spirit. They started to speak in angelic tongues and prophecy inside the place.
4. Then, the Holy Spirit stirred the disciples (all those gathered in the place praying) to go out and prophesy to people about the work of God. When they came out, they testified to people whom they met in those people's birth language, which amazed people and created confusion among them.

Confounded meaning: confused, perplexed.

7 Then they were all amazed and marvelled, saying, Behold, are not all these who speak Galileans?

8 And how do we hear everyone in our own language, in which we were born?

Comments Acts 2:7-8. This verse tells all humans that when each person hears their own birth language, the Word has worked in their hearts, and each who hears realizes that God is here.

9 Parthians, and Medes, and Elamites, and the dwellers in Mesopotamia, in Judaea and Cappadocia, in Pontus and Asia,

10 in Phrygia and Pamphylia, in Egypt and the parts of Libya about Cyrene, and those visiting from Rome, both Jews and converts,

11 Cretans and Arabs, we hear them speaking in our tongues the mighty works of God!

Comments Acts 2:9-11. As the verses tell all readers, the mighty works of God have been performed here. The people have experienced a miracle, and the Word of God has opened their hearts to think, and all who were there have come to one conclusion: God is there, among people. What happened here has already been told in itself: this is the result of the disciples being baptized with the Holy Spirit.

We believe that baptism in the Holy Spirit completes the salvation seal, meaning that the human spirit has joined the salvation seal of the believer. And speaking in tongues is the sign for the believer that they have received the baptism in the Holy Spirit (see Comments Matthew 16:18 and Comments John 1:33). Why is it essential for a believer to have the baptism in the Holy Spirit and have their spirit join the salvation seal? The Lord God has a plan for that person when their spirit joins the salvation seal; the work from the will of the Father will be performed through that joining. See the examples in this chapter of Acts 2.

In light of our comments on Acts 2:4-11, we would like to emphasize three questions:

1. Q1: What happens inside of us when a person repents and invites the Lord Jesus to live in their hearts? A: At this time, that person has much work to do before being able to get to the next level. Here, the Spirit of the Lord Jesus and the Holy Spirit are just checking and going through the person's soul.

2. Q2: What happens inside of us when a person goes and baptizes in water? A: The person has started to walk in the step of completing and receiving both baptisms: in the water (the baptism of repentance) and in the Holy Spirit (the baptism of fulfillment).
3. Q3: What happens inside of us when a person seeks and receives the baptism in the Holy Spirit? A. The spirit of the person joins the salvation seal.

For these questions, see also [Comments Matthew 16:18](#), and [Comments John 1:33](#). However, the baptism in the Holy Spirit can happen before the baptism in the water when the heart of that person is ready to seek and receive (see [Acts 10](#)).

In [Acts 10:44-48](#), The Holy Spirit falls on those listening to apostle Peter. The Gentiles received the Holy Spirit, which was a miraculous event for them. The Holy Spirit is a miracle from God Almighty, and all believers in the Lord Jesus will receive the blessings if their hearts are open. When the Holy Spirit falls upon someone, that person will also receive the gift of speaking in tongues; this miracle will strengthen their faith. In this passage, we see that those baptized in the Holy Spirit were also baptized in water. To fulfill the salvation of their souls, these people were baptized in the water in the name of the Trinity of God.

[Acts 10:44](#) Still, Peter speaking these words, the Holy Spirit fell upon all those hearing the word.

[Comments Acts 10:44](#). “Still, Peter speaking these words.” The apostle proclaimed the name of the beloved Son of God, Jesus Christ, to all who have ears open to listen.

“The Holy Spirit fell upon all those ...” All believers give attention: the name of the beloved Son of God has the power to draw the Holy Spirit to all who truly believe and listen to His word; when the ears hear the word, the open heart will receive the true blessing from the Lord God Almighty.

45 And those from circumcision believers were amazed, as many as came with Peter, because even on the Gentiles the gift of the Holy Spirit has been poured out.

[Comments Acts 10:45](#). “And those from circumcision believers were amazed ...” When the Lord God Almighty performed miracles through His apostle, it made the people amazed, but this feeling is the first feeling of the heart; they need to learn more; the apostle will have the duty to explain to them, and they must explain from the beginning until now, starting from the

creation until performing miracles in front of them. [The Lord Jesus was with God the Father from the beginning; He came to be born in human flesh; He was crucified for the sins of the world; He rose from the dead on the third day; He ascended to the Father and is seated at the right hand of the Father; He sends the promise of the Father to His disciples, the Holy Spirit baptism.]

“Because even on the Gentiles the gift of the Holy Spirit ...” The Gentiles had received the Holy Spirit, and this is a miracle for them, and the apostle must explain to them what it is that came upon them. The Holy Spirit is a miracle from God Almighty; all Gentiles will receive the blessings if their hearts are open.

46 For they heard them speaking in tongues and magnifying God. Then answered Peter,

Comments Acts 10:46. When the Gentiles magnified and glorified the Lord God Almighty, that made the apostle be amazed as well; now, at this time, the Lord God Almighty called the Gentiles to receive the blessing; when the Holy Spirit falls on someone, that person will also receive the gift of speaking in tongues; this miracle will strengthen the Gentiles’ faith.

47 Can any one forbid the water, that these should not be baptized, who have received the Holy Spirit just as also we?

Comments Acts 10:47. “Can any one forbid the water ...” All things come from the Lord God Almighty: the earth is His, and the water also is His. When anyone has received the Lord God Almighty, the first thing to show all the people that they have committed themselves to be believers is that they must be baptized in the water; the water belongs to the Lord God Almighty, and He uses it as He pleases.

“Who have received the Holy Spirit ...” Regardless of who these people are, if they have received the Holy Spirit, they must also be baptized in water, just as the apostles and even the beloved Son of God were baptized in water, as an example.

48 And he commanded them to be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ. Then they asked him to remain some days.

Comments Acts 10:48. “And he commanded them to be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ.” Humans with disobedient hearts always use the Scripture as

they see fit. Even if the verse says in the name of Jesus Christ, remember as well that the beloved Son of God Himself is in the Trinity of God; therefore, to be proper and complete, all must be baptized in the names of the Trinity of God: Father, Son Jesus Christ, and the Holy Spirit.

“Then they asked him to remain some days.” When the new believers experienced the miracle of the Holy Spirit baptism, in their hearts, the wish to know more about the Lord God Almighty overpowered them, and they asked the apostle to stay and explain more to them for the sake of their own faith.

The Best Practice of Receiving the Holy Spirit Baptism

In [Acts 8:14-25](#), Peter and John pray and lay hands on the Samaritans to receive the baptism in the Holy Spirit. These Samaritans had good hearts and were baptized in the name of the Father, the Son Jesus, and the Holy Spirit; however, due to their lifestyle and lack of understanding, the Holy Spirit had not come upon them. Peter and John had the ability and skill to advise people regarding their lifestyle. They came to them, prayed, laid their hands on them, and, as shown in [Acts 8:17](#), the Holy Spirit fell upon all of them.

[Acts 8:17](#) Then they laid the hands upon them, and they received the Holy Spirit.

[Comments Acts 8:17](#). “Then they laid the hands upon them.” When the apostles laid their hands upon the people, the Holy Spirit also went upon that hand as well; in the spiritual world, laying a hand on a person is like having a bridge stretching out to the soul, between the Holy Spirit and the soul of the person.

“And they received the Holy Spirit.” When the apostles laid hands upon the person, that soul of the person was also humbled and waiting to receive the gift as well. The soul that humbles makes the Holy Spirit rise upon that soul as well, but this is the first part of receiving in the Holy Spirit. The second part will be when the soul is baptized in the Holy Spirit and speaks in tongues.

When the apostles lay hands upon them, that becomes as a bridge: the Holy Spirit goes through, and the soul of the person feels joined with the Holy Spirit; in another way, we can say they feel the touch of the Holy Spirit. At this moment, they are not yet baptized in the Holy Spirit, but receive the touch from the Holy Spirit upon their soul. Later on, when the person fully understands what baptism in the Holy Spirit means, the Holy Spirit will work and make the person feel they have a word to say out loud. When baptized in

the water, the person goes underneath the water, which is a sign to show that the physical body died under the baptism water, and the body that comes up after is a new body that has been cleansed from the sins; when the Holy Spirit baptism the soul of the person and the Holy Spirit are joining, and the soul becomes the servant under the direction of the Holy Spirit.

In Acts 19:3-6, at Ephesus, the apostle Paul teaches that the Lord Jesus Christ is the Savior of the world, and believers must repent and be baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus. By laying on of the hands, the Holy Spirit came upon a group of men who were baptized in the Holy Spirit.

Acts 19:3 Then he said, Into what then were you baptized? And they said, Into John's baptism.

Comments Acts 19:3. A simple and straightforward question was asked. At that time, the messenger baptized many people, but they came to be baptized because they believed the messenger was the man the Lord God Almighty had sent to save them.

4 And Paul said, John baptized with the baptism of repentance, saying to the people that in the One coming after him they should believe, that is, in Jesus.

Comments Acts 19:4. “And Paul said, John baptized with the baptism ...” Give attention, the messenger of the Lord proclaimed the truth he had received. The Lord God Almighty used him as His own messenger to announce that for the people to receive forgiveness of sins, they must repent, feel sorry for the sins they committed, and seek repentance and forgiveness from the Lord God Almighty.

“Saying to the people that in the One coming ...” The messenger of the Lord proclaimed to all people the truth that he had received from the Lord God Almighty regarding the coming of the beloved Son of God to save the whole world. The Lord God Almighty sent His beloved Son, the Lord Jesus Christ, to be the Savior of the world.

5 Then having heard, they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.

Comments Acts 19:5. “Then having heard.” The blessed humans, by hearing with the ears, the truth will make the heart accept and acknowledge the Lord God Almighty. The clean hearts will make the ears open.

“They were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.” In the name of the beloved Son of God, the heart that is open makes the soul ready to receive forgiveness. The baptism in the water in the name of God the Father, God the Son (the Lord Jesus), and God the Holy Spirit is the next step after the heart has received the blessing. The messenger of the Lord gave the baptism for repentance, but the apostle of the Lord gave the baptism not only of the body but of the soul as well.

6 And Paul having laid the hands on them, the Holy Spirit came upon them; and they spoke in tongues, and prophesied.

Comments Acts 19:6. “And Paul having laid the hands ...” The apostle got the direction of laying hands above someone, signifying that the person is under the authority and protection of the Lord God Almighty.

“The Holy Spirit came upon them.” When the physical body accepts the cleansing, and the heart also accepts the teaching, the Lord God Almighty blesses that soul with the Holy Spirit baptism.

“And they spoke in tongues ...” Speaking in tongues is the sign of the completion of baptism: both physical and spiritual have been counted in the protection. That person belongs to the Lord God Almighty, but they must remain faithful to the gift and keep their heart with the teaching, meditating on the word regularly to receive complete protection over them.

Conclusions of the Subsection “Baptism in the Holy Spirit: Holy Spirit Dwelling stage”

To understand the work of the Holy Spirit in a person’s body, heart, and soul, one must think of the stages of being baptized: physical, mental, and spiritual. We can summarize the key points discussed in the section titled “Baptism in the Holy Spirit: Holy Spirit Dwelling Stage” into six main fundamental concepts about the baptism of the Holy Spirit.

****First**.** In Acts 2:4, the disciples of the Lord Jesus received the baptism in the Holy Spirit, and in Acts 10:45, the Gentiles received the baptism in the Holy Spirit, which was a miraculous event for them all. The apostle Peter needed to explain to them what had come upon them. The Holy Spirit is a gift from God Almighty, and all believers—both then and now—can receive these blessings if their hearts are open.

****Second****. The Holy Spirit dwelling in a person and the Holy Spirit baptism are different: Holy Spirit dwelling in the person is only a deep feeling in the heart, while baptism in the Holy Spirit involves speaking in tongues and dwelling deeply in the heart and the soul of the person. These days, unlike the apostles' time, no miracles will accompany anyone when they are baptized in the Holy Spirit, except the miraculous gift of speaking in tongues and the understanding of the Word of God. For a believer, the miraculous gift of speaking in an unknown angelic tongue is a sign to the believer and to those around that the baptism in the Holy Spirit has been given.

****Third****. When a person has been baptized in the Holy Spirit, that person has been touched from the inside of their soul, and the feeling of that person will be different. So, when the person has been touched this way, if the person does not ignore the little voice (of the Holy Spirit) that tells the person of any word, even one to remember, even the person hears many words but can remember only one word, and say that word out loud, by saying out that word it will lead the person to speak more. Every time the person feels they don't have any words to pray, bring that word and say it repeatedly, and the Holy Spirit will follow and guide more words to come; that word for that person is considered a leading prayer for the soul in a tongue. The person is considered completely baptized in the Holy Spirit when they speak at least one tongue word out loud and accept that tongue word as a miraculous sign of the Holy Spirit baptism for themselves. When you have faith in the Trinity of God, that person also has faith in the Holy Spirit, and when you invite the Holy Spirit into your heart, then the Holy Spirit dwelling in the heart will happen, and we call this the baptism in the Holy Spirit, but the baptism at this stage is incomplete. The baptism in the Holy Spirit is the time when this person may have only one word in a tongue, but not every person may say it out because of the lack of understanding. When the person has the feeling of the hearing of the word inside of their heart, even without understanding, but still should say it out loud, this is the sign of the baptism in the Holy Spirit. Therefore, the baptism in the Holy Spirit must always be accompanied by speaking in a tongue, even just one word; the person who receives it must speak out, and that is considered to claim the ability to speak in a tongue. Refer to Comments Acts 2:4, comments Acts 10:46, and Comments Acts 19:6 for additional insights.

****Fourth****. The baptism in the Holy Spirit can happen before the baptism in the water when the heart of that person is ready to seek and receive (see Acts 10:46). However, those being baptized in the Holy Spirit must also be baptized in water

through immersion in the name of the Father, Son, and Holy Spirit to fulfill the salvation of their souls (see Acts 10:48).

****Fifth**.** Many use Acts 10:48 and Acts 19:5 to mislead many into doing things against the Trinity of God. Humans with disobedient hearts always use the Scripture as they see fit. Even if the verse says in the name of Jesus Christ, remember as well that the beloved Son of God Himself is in the Trinity of God; therefore, to be proper and complete, all must be baptized in the names of the Trinity of God: Father, Son (Jesus Christ), and the Holy Spirit. For a complete salvation of the soul, it is essential to follow the proper water baptism by immersion in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit, as commanded by the Lord Jesus Himself in Matthew 28:19. The Lord Jesus exemplifies this practice in several passages: Matthew 3:13-17, Mark 1:9-11, Luke 3:21-22, and John 1:29-34. It is important to note that the order of water baptism and baptism by the Holy Spirit does not affect the need for this right practice. When the physical body accepts the cleansing, and the heart also accepts the teaching, the Lord God Almighty blesses that soul with the Holy Spirit baptism. Speaking in tongues is the sign of the completion of baptism: both physical and spiritual have been counted in the protection. That person belongs to the Lord God Almighty, but they must remain faithful to the gift and keep their heart with the teaching, meditating on the Word of God regularly to receive complete protection over them.

****Sixth**.** Based on Acts 8:17 and Acts 19:6, the best practice for receiving the baptism in the Holy Spirit is through prayer and the laying on of hands. Before praying for the baptism in the Holy Spirit, the believer must examine their hearts, confess their sins to the Lord, and ask for forgiveness. Then, when believers baptized in the Holy Spirit lay their hands upon someone, the Holy Spirit also goes upon that hand; in the spiritual world, laying a hand on a person is like having a bridge stretching out to the soul, between the Holy Spirit and the soul of the person. When baptized in the water, the person goes underneath the water, which is a sign to show that the physical body died under the baptism water, and the body that comes up after is a new body that has been cleansed from the sins; when the Holy Spirit baptism, the soul of the person and the Holy Spirit are joining, and the soul becomes the servant under the direction of the Holy Spirit.

Conclusion

In this article, we explore the topic of Holy Spirit baptism. We emphasize that it is the Lord Jesus who promised the gift of baptism in the Holy Spirit. This gift is

received from the Father in the name of the Lord Jesus by all who believe and are open to accepting it. We examine the Holy Spirit's relationship with believers across three main stages of faith. First, when a person repents and invites the Lord Jesus to dwell in their heart, they begin a significant journey of transformation before advancing to the next level. At this stage, the Spirit of the Lord Jesus and the Holy Spirit are actively examining and working within the person's soul. Second, when a person undergoes water baptism, they take their first steps toward completing both forms of baptism: in the water (the baptism of repentance) and in the Holy Spirit (the baptism of fulfillment). And lastly, when a person seeks and receives the baptism in the Holy Spirit, the spirit of the person joins the salvation seal.

All believers in the Lord Jesus should seek the gift of the Holy Spirit baptism and expect to receive the miraculous confirmation of this gift by the ability to speak words loudly in an angelic tongue. We discuss the two main stages of Holy Spirit baptism: "the Holy Spirit passing through or touching stage" and "the Holy Spirit dwelling or using stage." We showed that "the Holy Spirit dwelling or using stage" occurs when the believer speaks at least one word out loud in an unknown angelic tongue. This stage completes the Holy Spirit baptism. At this point, the soul of the person and the Holy Spirit join, and the soul becomes the servant under the direction of the Holy Spirit.

We must emphasize that for the complete fulfillment of baptism in the Holy Spirit, evidenced by the miraculous evidence of speaking loudly in an angelic tongue, our lifestyle also plays a vital role in receiving it. Belief alone is not sufficient; we must also repent and live according to the Lord's commandments.

A good Bible passage to reflect on before being prayed to receive the baptism in the Holy Spirit is Exodus 19:10-15. It's beneficial to meditate on the entire chapter of Exodus 19 to understand the context of a Holy God coming to meet His people. Similarly, the baptism in the Holy Spirit is a sacred event that must be taken seriously by a believer, as the Spirit of the Father, the Holy Spirit, will touch them. When the physical body accepts the cleansing, and the heart also accepts the teaching, the Lord God Almighty blesses that soul with the Holy Spirit baptism. Speaking in tongues is the sign of the completion of baptism: both physical and spiritual have been counted in the protection. That person belongs to the Lord God Almighty, but they must remain faithful to the gift and keep their heart with the teaching, meditating on the Word of God regularly to receive complete protection.

Some Christians argue that baptism in the Holy Spirit is evidenced not only by speaking in an unknown tongue but also by other spiritual gifts that a believer may possess. However, we can question how one can determine that gifts such as faith, love, or wisdom are true indicators of having received the baptism in the Holy Spirit. These gifts are not easily measurable or definable, making it challenging to confirm that the baptism has taken place and that the person's soul has truly joined with the Holy Spirit to become a servant of the Holy Spirit. How can we differentiate between the quantity or quality of these gifts to indicate that the baptism in the Holy Spirit has occurred?

Therefore, in the spiritual world, a believer needs to experience a clear, miraculous sign that demonstrates that the Holy Spirit has joined the believer's soul. According to the Bible, the miraculous sign of baptism in the Holy Spirit is demonstrated through speaking in unknown tongues, as established by God the Father (see Acts 2).

Meditation Tasks

1. Let us take a moment to reflect on the foundation of our faith in our lives. We should pray to the Lord for guidance in receiving both water baptism and the baptism in the Holy Spirit, if we have not done so already, as commanded and exemplified by our Lord Jesus Himself.
2. We encourage all readers to explore our article titled "Water Baptism for a Christian," as well as our shorter article, "Holy Spirit Baptism for a Christian."

Holy Spirit Proceeding

Within the Trinity of God, How Can We Understand the Concept of the Holy Spirit Proceeding?

In Luke 3:21-22 we are told that, *“Now it came to pass, when all the people were baptized, that, Jesus also having been baptized, and praying, the heaven was opened, and the Holy Spirit descended in a bodily form, as a dove, upon Him, and a Voice came out of heaven, Thou art My beloved Son; in Thee I am well pleased.”* And in John 15:26 the Bible says, *“When the Intercessor comes, whom I will send to you from the Father, the Spirit of truth, who proceeds from the Father, He will bear witness concerning Me.”*

The concept of the Holy Spirit proceeding has been debated for many generations. Today, the proceeding of the Holy Spirit can be viewed within two eras: the era before the beloved Son, the Lord Jesus, became human on earth and until the crucifixion, and the era after the bodily resurrection of the beloved Son of God. We can say that in both eras, the Holy Spirit proceeds from both the Father and the beloved Son, the Lord Jesus; however, it does so differently depending on the era we consider. From the beginning, the Holy Spirit proceeds from the Father since the Son, the Lord Jesus, was within the Father. Still, the Holy Spirit is the Spirit of the Father, but the beloved Son of God is One with the Father, so the Holy Spirit also becomes the Spirit of both. Therefore, when discussing the Holy Spirit proceeding in the first era, we should understand that He proceeds from the Father and the Son, the Lord Jesus, because the Father and the begotten Son, the Lord Jesus, are two in One. However, within the first era, the Holy Spirit proceeds from the Father and the Son differently than in the second era, as the beloved Son, during the first era, is within the heart of the Father and is One with the Father and the Holy Spirit in this way. Furthermore, when the beloved Son became human, His God form was also present in the human form. The beloved Son has never been only human, so we can say that He was still in the heart of the Father even while on earth, and thus the Holy Spirit still proceeds from both. That is why, in the first era, the Holy Spirit proceeds from both the Father and the Son, the Lord Jesus, in this way: the Holy Spirit proceeds as being the Spirit of both the Father and the Son, as One unit.

Within the second era, the Son of God has also been since the beginning, but what we say here refers to the period after the Lord Jesus' resurrection. The Bible says that the Father loves His beloved Son because He is willing to take the human form ([John 3:31-35](#)). When the beloved Son of God took human form, He was almost at the point of being cut off from the Father ([Matthew 27:46](#), [Mark 15:34](#)), but the beloved Son of God was also in two states at the same time: He was still with the Father, and also, He was here on earth as a human. But, because the human form itself is sinful, that is why we say that the Son of God was almost at the point of being cut off from the Father. Since before the beloved Son of God came to earth, the Father and the Son are One, as One unit together. But when the beloved Son of God was resurrected, He gave back the state that was almost apart from the Father and was reunited to be a complete One unit again with the Father by sitting at the right hand of the Father. The state that the Lord Jesus gave back, which we talk about here, is the state of breathing as a human. He has given up the need for breathing, and now His human and heavenly bodies are united and seated with the Father in heaven. Now, the Lord Jesus is sitting at the Father's right hand and is One with the Father and the Holy Spirit, but in a different way than at the beginning. The difference is that the beloved Son still has the human form within heaven. God the Father, God the Son, the Lord Jesus, and God the Holy Spirit are One since eternity. Therefore, in this God Trinity state, with the Lord Jesus in His heavenly and human body, being One with the Father and the Holy Spirit by sitting at the Father's right hand, the Holy Spirit proceeds from the Father and through the Son and then comes to the earth.

We encourage you to discover deeper insights about the Holy Spirit by exploring some relevant Bible verses and our posted comments: [Comments Luke 3:21-22](#), [Comments Matthew 3:13-17](#), [Comments Mark 1:9-11](#), [Comments John 3:31-34](#), [Comments John 15:26](#), and [Comments Acts 2:32-33](#).

Practice of the Holy Spirit's Gift of Prophecy in the Church

1 Corinthians 11:1-16, Applications for Men and Women

Men: Every man who prays or prophesies in the church must have their head uncovered (1 Corinthians 11:4).

Women: For the women whose hearts have been stirred by the Holy Spirit and receive or seek the Holy Spirit's gift of prophecy, they must start with covering their whole hair to show a humble heart and soul in order to be used in this area (1 Corinthians 11:5). If the woman is not covering her complete hair while prophesying, she speaks through her angel (1 Corinthians 11:10), and that person cannot use the term "Thus says the Lord," and this is a firm rule.

For the rest of the women, each woman must pray and seek the advice from the Lord for themselves how to be in the church.

Who Is Your God?

Introduction

Our God is One in the Trinity of God (God the Father, God the Son Jesus Christ, and God the Holy Spirit). However, throughout the world, we encounter people who promote many religions with their so-called gods (idols). Furthermore, within the Christian faith, even though we claim that we believe in the same God, there are a tremendous number of doctrines and beliefs. Moreover, what is troubling these days, especially with the advent of the internet, social media, and the entertainment industry, is that many so-called Christians promote much media content in movies, videos, cartoons, books, paintings, images, and other forms of media, depicting and impersonating the Lord Jesus in various forms and shapes under the pretext of telling some Bible story. But, the ultimate question each true believer in the Lord Jesus should ask is: “Who is my God?”

The Lord Jesus is God of the Trinity

Below, we are posting some key Bible verses that tell us who our Lord Jesus is for us. Let these verses speak to your hearts, and let everyone reading this blog meditate deeply on who the Lord Jesus is for them by asking two questions:

1. Is He the God who created all things and the One who deserves all the honor and adoration?
2. Is He “the King of kings, and Lord of lords; who only has immortality, dwelling in light unapproachable; whom no man has seen, nor can see; to whom be honor and power eternal” as written in 1 Timothy 6:15-16?

“In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.” John 1:1.

“And the Word became flesh and dwelt among us, and we beheld His glory, glory as of the only begotten from the Father, full of grace and truth.” John 1:14.

“Now, Jesus, having been baptized, ascended immediately from the water; and behold, the heavens were opened to Him, and He saw the Spirit of God descending as a dove, alighting upon Him; and behold, a voice from out of the heavens, saying, This is My beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased.” Matthew 3:16-17.

“I and the Father are One.” John 10:30.

“And translated us into the kingdom of the Son of his love; in whom we have our redemption, the forgiveness of our sins: who is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of all creation; for in him were all things created, in the heavens and upon the earth, things visible and things invisible, whether thrones or dominions or principalities or powers; all things have been created through him, and unto him; and he is before all things, and in him all things consist.” Colossians 1:13-17.

“And entering into the tomb, they saw a young man sitting on the right side, clothed in a white robe; and they were amazed. And he says to them, Be not amazed. You seek Jesus, the Nazarene, the One having been crucified. He is risen! He is not here! Behold, the place where they laid Him!” Mark 16:5-6.

"And now, Father, glorify Thou Me beside Thyself, with the glory that I had beside Thee before the world existed. I manifested Thy name to the ones whom Thou have given Me out of the world; Thine they were, and to Me Thou gave them; and they have kept Thy word." John 17:5-6.

"Truly, therefore, the Lord Jesus, after He had spoken to them, was received up into heaven and sat at the right hand of God." Mark 16:19.

"However, these have been written in order that you may believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing you may have life in His name." John 20:31.

John 20:31 tells us some important things which we must consider for building our faith:

- “However, these have been written in order that you may believe that Jesus is the Christ.” The beloved Son of God, with the name of human, as Jesus, has come and has done many miracles among humans; however, not all that He has done have been put down; each day, the miracles have happened, and the beloved Son of God has taught and performed many miracles, but not all have been written down for humans; the beloved Son of God is the Christ of God the Father Himself.
- “Jesus is the Christ.” The beloved Son of God is Himself God as well; He is in the Father, and the Father is in Him. When the beloved Son of God came as a human on earth, the Father Himself also has been human with Him; "as a human," you can think this way as well, the Father has taken part of His heart

and has sent that part to be born as human; that is why the term “Jesus is the Christ” is the most exalted human term, no human is part of the Father, but only the beloved Son of God in human form, which comes from the Father’s heart, because God the Father has sent Him to be human; therefore, the beloved Son of God is One with the Father, because He is part of the heart of the Father.

- The Lord Jesus is “the Son of God.” Others have also been called sons of God, but the Lord Jesus is the beloved Son of God and the only begotten Son of God; the angels also consider themselves as the sons of God, but those are created things, there is only One who is begotten from the Father, and no other is like Him.
- “And that believing you may have life in His name.” And that believing that the Lord Jesus is the Christ and the only begotten Son of God you may have life in His name; when anyone who believes in the beloved Son of God and gives their life to Him, after that the life of that person will be the life in the beloved Son of God Himself as well because he has become a true follower of the beloved Son of God.

Say NO to Any Form of Imaging or Impersonating That Claims to Portray the Lord Jesus Our God

Meditating on the teachings of the Bible, we can learn that the Lord God hates idols, and He never wants us to make any image of Him. When He showed Himself to the people in the Bible, He never showed His face. Please try to find a verse in the Bible that says that making any image of the Lord God is allowed! In this section, we present some Biblical arguments supporting the sinful act of impersonating the Lord Jesus and making or promoting images of Him since He is God of the Trinity and One with the Father.

The Bible says in Luke 20:38: “Now He is not the God of the dead, but of the living; for all live to Him.” So, if the Lord Jesus of the Bible is our God, He must be our Living God (See Comments Matthew 22:23-33). Therefore, one must ask oneself when they see a movie or a video impersonating the Lord Jesus (baby, child, or adult), an image that claims to depict the Lord Jesus (baby, child, or adult), or a statue that claims to depict the Lord Jesus (baby, child, or adult): “Is this my living, dear Lord Jesus who is seated at the right hand of the Father? Is this my living God who saves me and gives me eternal life? Why had someone the courage to lower my Lord and God to a piece of paper, a piece of stone, or a mortal man?”

John 1:1 says, “In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.” The Word of God is the Lord Jesus Himself, not anyone else or any image that people might make; the Bible never says that the Lord Jesus is someone else or some image we need to make. One must remember that when they make any image of our Lord Jesus (baby, child, or adult), they lower Him to a trivial image, a trivial photo, or a piece of paper that people use to step on. And when one impersonates Him, they disregard His deity; no other man can be God except the Lord Jesus. The best way for someone to promote the Lord Jesus is through His Word and not by making any images of Him or any movies impersonating Him. The Bible says in Mark 16:15, “And He said to them, Go you into all the world, and proclaim the gospel to the whole creation.” The Gospel is the Lord Jesus Himself, who is the Living Word. Therefore, the Lord wants us to use the Word of God to represent the Lord Jesus and no other means when we proclaim the Gospel. This proclaiming must be done by us going as messengers of the Lord Jesus, not as impersonators of the Lord Jesus. There is only one authorized image of the invisible God, the Lord Jesus whom the Father has sent, He who is His Word and is revealed through the Word. Furthermore, Hebrews 13:8 tells us that “Jesus Christ is the same yesterday and today and forever.” So, shall God change, is He man? Shall He who banned images institute them for His beloved Son?

Mark 16:19 says, “Truly, therefore, the Lord Jesus, after He had spoken to them, was received up into heaven and sat at the right hand of God.” Only the Lord Jesus, God of the Trinity, can sit at the right hand of God the Father. So how do people dare to impersonate Him or make images of Him portraying Him in some false form? When one sees someone impersonating the Lord Jesus or an image of the Lord Jesus, what do they think? Do they recognize the Lord Jesus as their God in that person or that image? Have they ever seen the Lord Jesus? Do they acknowledge that person or that image as one hundred percent representing the Lord Jesus? In John 14:6, we read: “Jesus says to him, I am the way, and the truth, and the life; no one comes to the Father, if not by Me.” Therefore, if the Lord Jesus is the truth and no one has ever seen God and no human has ever seen the Lord Jesus on His Father’s throne, how can one reduce Him to a piece of paper or a stone or to a mortal man and say to themselves this here is my Lord Jesus, I recognize Him? The Lord Jesus says that He is the truth, so how can some promote lies and false images of our dear Lord Jesus in movies, books, and various digital media forms to make a profit? Whenever someone does that, they lower the Lord Jesus to a created thing, promote a lie, and are guilty of sinful actions toward God.

Understanding that the Lord Jesus is One with God the Father and God the Holy Spirit, a person who creates images or statues of the Lord Jesus in any form or impersonates the Lord Jesus in movies, videos, or plays is guilty of the sin of blasphemy against the Lord Jesus and the Most High God. Furthermore, a person who holds, posts, and promotes images, statues, movies, or videos about the Lord Jesus in any form or shape is guilty of a sin equivalent to the sin of the Lord Jesus' betrayer since they betray the Lord Jesus' deity (See [Comments John 6:71](#)).

To clearly understand the gravity of the sins of making or upholding images or statues of the Lord Jesus in any form or impersonating the Lord Jesus in media, we can refer to a passage in the Old Testament where we read about King Jeroboam's idolatry.

1 Kings 12:28-30: "So, the king took counsel, and made two calves of gold; and he said to them, It is too much for you to go up to Jerusalem: behold your gods, O Israel, which brought you up out of the land of Egypt. And he set the one in Beth-el, and the other put he in Dan. And this thing became a sin; for the people went to worship before the one, even unto Dan. And he made houses of high places, and made priests from among all the people, that were not of the sons of Levi."

Therefore, is it too much for anyone to go to the Word of God and the cross of the Lord Jesus and meet our God: God the Father, God the Son Jesus, and God the Holy Spirit? The Lord Jesus is the Existing God, One with God the Father and God the Holy Spirit, and He does not dwell in temples made by human hands. The moment when one lifts up their hand to the paper to draw their God or to the stone to craft their God or to the media to impersonate their God, their hearts have been stolen away to the work of their hands, and they have crafted an idol. They have said to the paper or the stone or the media: "Here is my god that redeemed me from sin and slavery!" And their hearts bow down to the paper, stone, or media.

However, one might say that they do not regard the work of their hands as a depiction of God, but then they testify against themselves that they have denied the divinity of the Lord Jesus Christ and said that they have depicted one who is not divine. Therefore, to represent the Lord Jesus lightly is to profane His divinity, and to represent Him worshipfully is idolatry – do not represent Him in any form or shape, and do not let your heart go out to the work of your hands! Was it not for this sin that God Almighty forsook the Israelites? Shall we who have knowledge escape from this punishment?

Do not make artisans, craftsmen, and actors your priests and mediators, and do not forsake the true High Priest that God has appointed, the Lord Jesus Himself! There is no other priesthood – no other image of the Father!

1 John 5:21 tells us, “My little children, guard yourselves from idols.” So, let us say NO to any form of imaging or impersonating that claims to portray our Lord Jesus; let us throw all our false images about the Lord Jesus from our places (media format or any physical format) and from our hearts, and let us honor the Lord Jesus as God of the Trinity of God (God the Father, God the Son Jesus, and God the Holy Spirit)!

Conclusions

Humans have many reasons and ideas to make an image of the Lord Jesus, who is One with God the Father. But regardless of reason and belief, the Lord God Almighty is above all, and no one can make a likeness of Him. Ask yourself questions: Is the Lord God Almighty the one depicted in that image? And what should your heart feel when someone bows down to that picture? Is the person truly worshiping and glorifying the Lord God Most High Himself, or is it the picture itself that they are worshiping? It’s an abomination to consider. However, some may argue that the Lord Jesus was a man on earth, and they create an image of Him as a man on earth. It is correct that the Lord Jesus was on earth as a man, but He did not leave His image on anything.

Idolatry is a sin that is mentioned many times in the Bible, and the Bible shows us that the Lord God hates all forms of idolatry. Acts 15:20 says, “abstain from the pollutions of idols, and from sexual immorality, and from what is strangled, and from blood.” Therefore, each true believer in the Lord Jesus is responsible for meditating on the entire Word of God with the help of the Holy Spirit and understanding what pollutions of idols mean for them. We must always honor the Trinity of God (God the Father, God the Son Jesus, and God the Holy Spirit) as the Living God and flee from any form of idolatry. The Lord Jesus is God and is part of the Trinity of God; we cannot impersonate Him or make any images of Him in any form or shape (baby, child, adult). He is the Creator of all things; He is not created, and no person can shape His image or impersonate Him; the created cannot shape or impersonate the Creator in any form or shape. However, one might say that the Lord Jesus was a man on earth, and they only depict some Bible scenes and do not make any images to worship. Yes, indeed, the Lord Jesus is the Son of God and the Son of Man who is God forevermore, and He shall be God forevermore. He deserves all the honor and glory as God; therefore, no one can shape or impersonate Him regardless of the

purpose. As faithful followers of the Lord Jesus, let us testify to the deity of the Lord Jesus to the world, and let us all remember that the chosen witness to the deity of the Lord Jesus, Stephen, suffered death for testifying that the Son of Man is One with God the Father (Acts 7:55-60). We conclude this blog with a few Bible passages about the sin of idolatry.

“You shall not make unto you a graven image, nor any likeness of anything that is in heaven above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the water under the earth. You shall not bow down yourself unto them, nor serve them, for I Jehovah your God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children, upon the third and upon the fourth generation of them that hate me, and showing lovingkindness unto thousands of them that love me and keep my commandments.” Exodus 20:4-6.

“But our God is in the heavens: He hath done whatsoever he pleased. Their idols are silver and gold, The work of men's hands. They have mouths, but they speak not; Eyes have they, but they see not; They have ears, but they hear not; Noses have they, but they smell not; They have hands, but they handle not; Feet have they, but they walk not; Neither speak they through their throat. They that make them shall be like unto them; Yea, every one that trusts in them.” Psalm 115:3-8.

“For the wrath of God is revealed from heaven against all ungodliness and unrighteousness of men, who hinder the truth in unrighteousness; because that which is known of God is manifest in them; for God manifested it unto them. For the invisible things of him since the creation of the world are clearly seen, being perceived through the things that are made, even his everlasting power and divinity; that they may be without excuse: because that, knowing God, they glorified him not as God, neither gave thanks; but became vain in their reasonings, and their senseless heart was darkened. Professing themselves to be wise, they became fools, and changed the glory of the incorruptible God for the likeness of an image of corruptible man, and of birds, and four-footed beasts, and creeping things.” Romans 1:19-23.

Meditation Tasks:

1. If you are reading this blog and still doubt about saying no to any form of imaging or impersonating that claims to portray the Lord Jesus, our God, ask yourself the following question: “Do I believe that the Lord Jesus is alive and He is a person of the Trinity?” If you answer yes to this question, you must consider going to the Lord Jesus Himself to pray about these issues. Ask the Lord Jesus to speak to your heart and let you know if He wants you to make or

hold any images or media depicting Him: read the Word of God, meditate on the Word of God, and wait for His answer; He will talk to you.

2. Read Isaiah 44:9-20 a passage about the folly of idolatry, and meditate on how that applies to our life.
3. Read Acts 17:22-31, where Paul teaches the people of Athens about the unknown God, which many people don't know.
4. Meditate on the deity of the Lord Jesus and pray to ask the Holy Spirit to guide you in how to honor the Lord Jesus by eliminating any type of idols from your life.

If you have any questions about the topics presented in this blog, please contact us, and we will try to provide our answers in a timely manner.

Bible Dictation

Introduction

We have in [The Commentary Foundation](#) and in [The Writing of Scripture](#) described our view of the Bible being **Dictated by the Holy Spirit**. In this article we will explain these things in a way that shows where we align with the Early Church Fathers and combine some understandings together.

The Bible is Dictated by the Holy Spirit

We believe that the Bible is “dictated word-by-word by the Holy Spirit to the soul and spirit of willing disciples (writers)”. This means the actual author of the Bible, from beginning to end, is the Holy Spirit. Our [Introduction to the Gospel of Mark](#) states:

“The actual author of the Gospel of Mark, the whole Gospel from the beginning until the end, has only one author: the Holy Spirit; the words to put down in the Gospel itself came through the mercy of the Holy Spirit.”

“Mark did not copy from anyone, and also, he did not write the Gospel down from learning or experience; the Holy Spirit gave to him what to write and how to connect each thing.”

There is a lot of confusion regarding who the true Author of Scripture is, some people believe that the Scripture is a result of a collaboration process between God and man, but we would be wrong to then call the Bible the Word of God. For if the Scripture comes from human memory or understanding then we would be calling the words of man, the words of God, and the Bible says this is not something we should do.

“On an appointed day Herod put on his royal robes, took his seat upon the throne, and delivered an oration to them. And the people were shouting, ‘The voice of a god, and not of a man!’ Immediately an angel of the Lord struck him down, because he did not give God the glory, and he was eaten by worms and breathed his last.” Acts 12:21-23, ESV

“And if your eye causes you to sin, cast it out: it is good for you to enter Into the kingdom of God with one eye, rather than having two eyes to be thrown into hell; where their worm dies not, and the fire is not quenched.” Mark 9:47-48, ASVh

The Difference Between “Inspiration” and “Dictated”

When we think about how God speaks to humans there is the **Inspiration of the Holy Spirit** and the **Verbal Dictation of the Holy Spirit**.

When we say that somethings is a result of the **Verbal Dictation of the Holy Spirit** we mean:

“The Holy Spirit works straight to give the understanding: the Holy Spirit speaks directly (passing through) to the soul and spirit of the writer, and then from the soul and spirit, the understanding goes to the heart and from the heart into the mind. When “Holy Spirit dictated,” the writer will have only one understanding to write down.” The Writing of Scripture

When we say that something is a result of the **Inspiration of the Holy Spirit** we mean:

“The Holy Spirit gives the understanding to convince the heart of the person, so that it becomes understanding in this way, which is different than when the Holy Spirit dictated. “Inspired” is understanding in the heart and from the heart to the mind. The meditation on the Word provides understanding; in this case, there is no direct communication between the Holy Spirit and the writer’s soul and spirit.” The Writing of Scripture

For example, a person gets a word from the Holy Spirit through the gift of speaking in tongues, which comes directly into the understanding of that person; however, the interpretation of those words could go both ways, dictated or inspired.

On the other hand, the Bible is the direct Word of the Lord and is a result of the **Verbal Dictation of the Holy Spirit**. The writers of the Scripture are specially chosen servants of the Lord who are blessed with a special gift of the Holy Spirit. In the spiritual world, when the Holy Spirit dictates to the writer’s soul, He will block all other interferences, and the soul of the writer will receive only one direction; there will be no confusion or interference from the writer’s memory for what the soul hears. Additionally, the writer will not have their own understanding, as the Holy Spirit will also block that thought. Only the Bible can give life.

How the Bible Relates to Humans

In writing the Scripture, the human authors supplied their willingness to be used by the Holy Spirit and wrote not according to their understanding, but according to the understanding the Holy Spirit placed in them. In our Introduction to the Gospel of Matthew we state:

“Matthew got the Gospel from the Lord straight; he did not take words from anyone, only from the Holy Spirit; his ear was opened, his heart was gentle, and the work of the Holy Spirit has been done through him.”

So, there is a cooperation between God and man to write the Scripture but not a collaboration. When the Scripture was written, the authors of Scripture needed to meditate on what they had written in order to understand it, just as we do today.

“Joseph answered Pharaoh, ‘It is not in me; God will give Pharaoh a favorable answer.’” Genesis 41:16, ESV

The true understanding and knowledge of Scripture can only be found in the Word of God, which refers to both the Lord Jesus Christ and the Holy Spirit.

“In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.” John 1:1, ASVh

“The ‘Word’ here in this verse refers to both Jesus and the Holy Spirit, and God refers to God the Father because here it tells us about the Trinity of God. We can imagine in this way as well, God the Father is so big that God the Son and the Holy Spirit are in Him, and all Three are tangled together, cannot be separated, but each of the Three has His own duty as well.” Comment on John 1:1, BCF

“And the angel answered and said to her, The Holy Spirit will come upon you, and the power of the Most High will overshadow you; therefore, the being born will be called the Son of God.” Luke 1:35, ASVh

“And the Word became flesh and dwelt among us, and we beheld His glory, glory as of the only begotten from the Father, full of grace and truth.” John 1:14, ASVh

“By faith we understand that the universe was created by the word of God, so that what is seen was not made out of things that are visible.” Hebrews 11:3, ESV

“...but in these last days he has spoken to us by his Son, whom he appointed the heir of all things, through whom also he created the world.” Hebrews 1:2, ESV

“In the beginning, God created the heavens and the earth. The earth was without form and void, and darkness was over the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God was

hovering over the face of the waters. And God said, ‘Let there be light,’ and there was light.” Genesis 1:1-3, ESV

“In Him was life, and the life was the light of men.” John 1:4, ASVh

The Lord Jesus Christ is as the Voice of God to humans. He is God’s Word, and God’s Word to humans. While He was on earth, He was the place where the Holy Spirit abided with humans, and now He has given that place to His Word, the Bible.

“It is the Spirit that gives life; the flesh profits nothing; the words that I speak to you are Spirit and are life.” John 6:63, ASVh

“As this verse has told, the beloved Son of God did not want to teach only His disciples but also the ones after, who will read the Holy Word.” Comment on John 6:63, BCF

“Indeed also many other signs, therefore, did Jesus in the sight of the disciples, which are not written in this book; however, these have been written in order that you may believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing you may have life in His name.” John 20:30-31, ASVh

“The beloved Son of God, with the name of human, as Jesus, has come and has done many miracles among humans; however, not all that He has done have been put down; each day, the miracles have happened, and the beloved Son of God has taught and performed many miracles, but not all have been written down for humans; the beloved Son of God is the Christ of God the Father Himself.” Comment on John 20:30-31

We see that God has spoken many things, and even today God speaks, and works many miracles. But only some have been chosen to be part of the Holy Bible. These ones have been given by the Holy Spirit to the willing writers so that humans can have the true words of life that come from God. These were not selected by the human mind, nor written with human creativity, nor copied from other humans, but they were written by God, verbally dictated to the human writers. Only because the Bible was made in this way it can be called the Word of God.

Support from the Church Fathers

While the Church Fathers do not agree with us on all points, we can see that they saw the Holy Bible as a product of the **Verbal Dictation of the Holy Spirit** and not of the **Inspiration of the Holy Spirit**. They saw the Holy Bible as the very Word of God.

“There were a long time ago men of greater antiquity than all these reputed philosophers, men blessed and righteous and beloved of God who spake by the Divine Spirit, and foretold those things of the future, which indeed have come to pass. Prophets do men call them. They, and they only, saw the truth and declared it to mankind, without fear or shame of any, not dominated by ambition, but saying only what they had heard and seen, filled as they were with the Holy Spirit. Now their writings still remain with us even to the present time, and it is open to anyone to consult these, and to gain most valuable knowledge both about the origin of things and their end, and all else that a philosopher ought to know, if he believes what they say. For they have not made their discourses, when they wrote, with logical proof, inasmuch as being trustworthy witnesses of the truth they are superior to all such proof, but the things that did take place and are taking place now compel agreement with what they have spoken.” Justin Martyr (Lived 100-165AD), Dialogue with Trypho. Ch vii.

“[The Church] in one God, the Father Almighty, Maker of heaven, and earth, and the sea, and all things that are in them; and in one Christ Jesus, the Son of God, who became incarnate for our salvation; and in the Holy Spirit, who proclaimed through the prophets the dispensations of God, and the advents, and the birth from a virgin, and the passion, and the resurrection from the dead, and the ascension into heaven in the flesh of the beloved Christ Jesus, our Lord, and His [future] manifestation from heaven in the glory of the Father “to gather all things in one,”...” Irenaeus (Lived 130-200AD). Against Heresies. Book I, x.

“Wherefore the Holy Spirit says by David: Blessed is the man who hath not walked in the counsel of the ungodly: that is, the counsel of the nations which know not God: for those are ungodly who worship not the God that truly is. And therefore the Word says to Moses: I am He that is...” Irenaeus (Lived 130-200AD). The Demonstration of the Apostolic Preaching.

“...the writings either of Moses or of Isaiah and Jeremiah, and the other prophets, who, lifted in ecstasy above the natural operations of their minds by the impulses of the Divine Spirit, uttered the things with which they were inspired, the Spirit making use of them as a flute-player breathes into a flute — what, then, do these men say? ‘The Lord is our God; no other can be compared with Him.’” Athenagorus (Lived 133-190AD), A Plea for Christians. Ch ix.

“Now the Apostle John, in the Apocalypse, describes a sword which proceeded from the mouth of God as ‘a doubly sharp, two-edged one.’ This may be understood to be

the Divine Word, who is doubly edged with the two testaments of the law and the gospel—sharpened with wisdom, hostile to the devil, arming us against the spiritual enemies of all wickedness and concupiscence, and cutting us off from the dearest objects for the sake of God's holy name. If, however, you will not acknowledge John, you have our common master Paul, who 'girds our loins about with truth, and puts on us the breastplate of righteousness, and shoes us with the preparation of the gospel of peace, not of war; who bids us take the shield of faith, wherewith we may be able to quench all the fiery darts of the devil, and the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the Spirit,' which (he says) 'is the word of God.'" Tertullian (Lived 160-225AD). Against Marcion. Book III, xiv.

"And by the words of Christ we do not mean those only which He spake when He became man and tabernacled in the flesh; for before that time, Christ, the Word of God, was in Moses and the prophets. For without the Word of God, how could they have been able to prophesy of Christ? And were it not our purpose to confine the present treatise within the limits of all attainable brevity, it would not be difficult to show, in proof of this statement, out of the Holy Scriptures, how Moses or the prophets both spake and performed all they did through being filled with the Spirit of Christ. And therefore I think it sufficient to quote this one testimony of Paul from the Epistle to the Hebrews, in which he says: 'By faith Moses, when he was come to years, refused to be called the son of Pharaoh's daughter; choosing rather to suffer affliction with the people of God, than to enjoy the pleasures of sin for a season; esteeming the reproach of Christ greater riches than the treasures of the Egyptians.' Moreover, that after His ascension into heaven He spake in His apostles, is shown by Paul in these words: 'Or do you seek a proof of Christ who speaketh in me?'" Origen (Lived 185-254AD), Origen De Principiis. Preface.

"He who believeth then the divine Scriptures with sure judgment, receives in the voice of God, who bestowed the Scripture, a demonstration that cannot be impugned." Clement of Alexandria (Lived 150-215AD). The Stromata. Book II, ii.

What Books of the Bible Should Form the Canon of Scripture and Why?

What Are the Books of The Bible?

All that is in the Scripture is meant to testify concerning the true identity of the Lord Jesus Christ, whether it is a passage from the Old Testament or the New Testament. Over time confusion has arisen over the nature of the Bible and precisely what books or verses make up the Bible. This confusion is unavoidable; humans do not seek God because of our sinful nature. We are all born in sin and death comes to all of us, but through faith in Jesus we all can be made alive: *“For since by man came death, by Man came also the resurrection of the dead. For as in Adam all die, so also in Christ will all be made alive.”* — Corinthians 15:21-22. There will always be many voices and many human beings claiming to speak on behalf of God, but only one Man has been authorized to do so: Jesus Christ the Nazarene, the beloved Son of God. To put it another way, the Lord Jesus Christ Himself is the living Word and the law of the Church, as He Himself says, *“... the words that I speak to you are Spirit and are life”* — [John 6:63](#). And in [John 5:39](#), the Lord says, *“You search the Scriptures because you think in them to have eternal life, and these are they which bear witness concerning Me.”* Therefore, the books of the Bible are those books given by the Father to testify to the identity of Jesus Christ, and the testimony of the Lord Jesus seals them (see Revelation 22:18-19).

How Do We Discern What Books Should be Included in the Bible?

The question of: “What are the true books of the Bible?” can only be answered after you have given your life to the Lord Jesus and accepted Him as the only way to the Father. Through the Lord Jesus Christ, we understand who the Holy Spirit is and His role in our lives; through the Lord Jesus Christ, we know the Trinity of God. There is no one else able to do that for us but Him. Only through faith in the Lord Jesus Christ and guidance from the Holy Spirit and the Spirit of Christ living in us can we understand what books should be included in the Bible. All the Books of the Old Testament prophesy concerning the coming of Jesus, His identity, and His role. All the books of the New Testament declare and reveal what was hidden in the Old Testament by explaining the sufferings of Christ, namely the cross and the burden He

bore carrying our sins in His body. As a general rule, any books, teachings, verses, or anything of any kind that: does not glorify the Lord Jesus Christ, relies on man (or reason) for its authority, does not through the Lord Jesus reveal the Three-In-One God, nor explain the sufferings of Christ, the necessity of repentance from sins, and the exclusive supremacy of the name of the Lord Jesus Christ is not Bible. And any Christian teaching that is not in conformity with this Canon of Scripture is not teaching according to Scripture, whether it cites Scripture or not. In light of this, by faith in the Lord Jesus Christ, we accept these sixty-six listed books to be the Books of the Bible (the Canon of Scripture):

Old Testament Books:

- The 5 books of Moses — The Law: *Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, Deuteronomy*.
- History: *Joshua, Judges, Ruth, 1 Samuel, 2 Samuel, 1 Kings, 2 Kings, 1 Chronicles, 2 Chronicles, Ezra, Nehemiah, Esther*.
- Wisdom Literature: *Job, Psalms, Proverbs, Ecclesiastes, Song of Solomon*.
- Major Prophets: *Isaiah, Jeremiah, Lamentations, Ezekiel, Daniel*.
- Minor Prophets: *Hosea, Joel, Amos, Obadiah, Jonah, Micah, Nahum, Habakkuk, Zephaniah, Haggai, Zechariah, Malachi*.

New Testament Books:

- The Gospels: *Matthew, Mark, Luke, John*.
- The Acts of the Apostles: *Acts*.
- Letters from the Apostle Paul: *Romans, 1 Corinthians, 2 Corinthians, Galatians, Ephesians, Philippians, Colossians, 1 Thessalonians, 2 Thessalonians, 1 Timothy, 2 Timothy, Titus, Philemon*.
- Other Letters from Apostles and Prophets: *Hebrews, James, 1 Peter, 2 Peter, 1 John, 2 John, 3 John, Jude*.
- Prophecy – warnings for the present and revelation of the future: *Revelation*.

We encourage all readers to explore our other related articles on this topic: [Bible Dictation](#), [The Writing of Scripture](#), and [The Canon of Scripture](#).

Body, Soul, and Spirit: A Biblical Perspective

Introduction

The Bible indicates in various passages that a human being is composed of three main components: body, soul, and spirit. In this article, we will explore our beliefs about humans as three-dimensional entities, consisting of a physical dimension, a soul dimension, and a spirit dimension. We will begin by demonstrating that the Bible teaches that the heart is the dwelling place of the soul within a human being.

“And the God of peace himself sanctify you wholly; and may your spirit and soul and body be preserved entire, without blame at the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ.” 1 Thessalonians 5:23, ASV

“And they were terrified with great fear, and said one to another, Who then is this, that even the wind and the sea obey Him?” Mark 4:41, ASVh

Comment on Mark 4:41, BCF. Both the Holy Spirit and the soul dwell in the heart of a believer, in the same place, overlapped but in different dimensions. We could think that the heavenly dimension and earthly dimension walk in parallel through the heart of a believer. The soul is part of the earthly dimension. When the Lord gives the soul to a person, that soul becomes part of the earthly dimension. The body, the soul, and the spirit of a person coexist together as a unit; that is how the Lord built us. The breath of the Lord is complete, and He has both soul and spirit when He gave life to Adam (See Genesis 2:7).

“If not shall receive a hundredfold now in this time, houses, and brothers, and sisters, and mothers, and children, and lands, with persecutions; and in the age to come eternal life.” Mark 10:30, ASVh

Comment on Mark 10:30, BCF. Your house and the Holy Spirit house in your soul makes for houses.

The Body, Soul, and Spirit

Humans have many questions about the body, spirit, and soul. Here we will put our understanding based on the Scripture and guidance from the Holy Spirit. From the

above comments, we can see the inner heart of a person, and their soul is deeply connected, and we will see them as one unit.

αυτος δε ο θεος της ειρηνης αγιασαι υμας ολοτελεις και ολοκληρον υμων το **πνευμα (spirit)** και η **ψυχη (soul)** και το **σωμα (body)** αμεμπτως εν τη παρουσια του κυριου ημων ιησου χριστου τηρηθειη (1 Thessalonians 5:23, Westcott-Hort)

We can see that there are distinct words used for body, soul, and spirit in the original languages of the Bible. From this, we can say that the human being is a three-dimensional entity. The body is in a physical dimension, the soul is in a soul dimension, and the spirit is in a spirit dimension. Each dimension of the human is tangled together, and this makes the human being a living being on earth. To illustrate our point, we comment on some passages from the Bible, including one from Genesis and others from the Gospels of Luke and Matthew.

“And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness.” Genesis 1:26, ASV

Comment on Genesis 1:26. First, remember that God is One when it comes to the Father, the Son Jesus, and the Holy Spirit. When God of Three created all things, He is One but Three in One, and that is why here it refers to us, meaning “Three of Us.” The Lord of the Trinity created all things. Also, do not forget that the Bible says all things were created through the Word (the Lord Jesus; see [John 1:1](#)). Furthermore, remember that the Bible is one, comprising both the Old Testament and the New Testament; we must link them all together.

“Man in our image” means that our human likeness (features) is like that of God; this refers not only to the look, but God of Three also has Spirit (see [John 14:9](#)). To create humans in His image, a human will have a soul and spirit. And that is why humans are different than animals. Humans created in the image of God have souls, but animals do not have souls. Therefore, we should think about how much the Lord loves humans: He created them in His likeness. Humans have body, soul, and spirit as a unit.

Only a human has a soul, this is a critical difference between animals and humans. Otherwise, animals would be guilty of sin as humans. Animals do have a spirit, and can have emotions, as humans we need to care for animals as the Lord Jesus demonstrated for us.

Check out our blog post titled [Meditation in Genesis Part 1](#), which explores Genesis chapters 1 and 2 for further insights into our beliefs about creation.

“And Mary said, My soul magnifies the Lord, And my spirit rejoices in God my Savior.” Luke 1:46-47, ASVh (Greek for [Luke 1:46](#) and [Luke 1:47](#))

When reading Luke 1:46-47, one might wonder about the difference between the soul and spirit mentioned in verses 46 and 47.

Comment on Luke 1:46, BCF. The “soul” is deeper than our heart itself can feel. But the Lord can bring it up for a person to acknowledge what the soul is thinking. This verse plainly tells that Mary glorifies the Lord from the deepest of her knowledge.

Comment on Luke 1:46-47, BCF. Verses 46 and 47 identify a person as having two different spiritual identities. Our heart can feel the spirit, but it cannot feel the soul unless the Lord lets us feel it. The soul in verse 46 reveals a deeper inner thought, a thought of a different dimension, a soul dimension within the unseen world, than in this verse. In this verse, the spirit of the person of Mary worships the Lord in two dimensions, with the spirit and the heart, but the heart receives joy without understanding. She knows in her heart that she rejoices “in God my Savior,” but she does not understand the complete meaning. The word “magnifies” in verse 46 gives a different degree of depth than the word “rejoices” in verse 47. “Magnify” tells us that Mary worships above, but “rejoice” relates to the present time of the earth and tells us that Mary feels happy in receiving the trust from the Lord.

In these two verses, we encounter two worlds: the unseen world and the seen world. The soul and the spirit exist in two different dimensions in the unseen world. In the unseen world, it is not the same as in this world we know about. The soul of a person can choose to walk in the path of light or the path of darkness because it still has free will. When the soul walks in the path of light, the communication between the soul’s identity and the spirit’s identity of a person happens only through the Holy Spirit. But if a soul chooses to walk in the path of darkness, then the soul and the spirit of a person will communicate with different spirits.

“Then He says to them, My soul is greatly grieved, even to death; remain here and watch with Me.” Matthew 26:38, ASVh

Comment on Matthew 26:38, BCF. This verse has proven that the Lord is truly human. The words to think about are “My soul”; only humans have a soul. Humans have souls because they are created in the image of God, which is why they are not animals. The Lord is telling us here that His soul is sorrowful; only humans have that. People have reason to believe that because the Lord Jesus is not human, this torture is not as hard as humans receive. That is why the Word is written here: for us to know that the Lord Jesus has a soul because He is a human and knows how to be sorrowful and happy. The Bible talks about how much He feels sorrow; He is sorrowful even unto death.

“[Jesus] Saying to them, Go into the village in front of you, and immediately you will find a donkey tied, and a colt with her; having untied bring to Me.” Matthew 21:2, ASVh

Comments on Matthew 21:2, BCF. The donkey and its colt were tied together. At that time, this was the way the mother and the baby were tied together to keep them calm. If you take the colt, the mother will follow. The disciples brought both of them to the Lord Jesus. The Lord would not separate the mother from her baby.

The Body, Soul, and Spirit Connection

In this section, we explore our understanding of the existence of the soul and how, when, and in what way the soul, body, and spirit come together. We will also examine the spiritual connection between these entities. To support this exploration, we present various passages of Scripture, along with our comments, to emphasize the relationship between the body, soul, and spirit within a human being.

The Connection Between the Human Soul and the Human Body

The soul exists before the body and comes from God. The soul is united with the body at the moment of conception. When the human body dies, the soul goes to a waiting place in the spiritual realm and awaits judgment day.

“Now the word of Jehovah came to me, saying, Before I formed you in the belly I knew you, and before you came forth out of the womb I sanctified you; I have appointed you a prophet to the nations.” Jeremiah 1:4-5, ASVh

“For Thou did form my inward parts: Thou did cover me in my mother’s womb.” Psalm 139:13, ASV

“And His disciples asked Him, saying, Rabbi, who sinned, he or his parents, that he should be born blind? Jesus answered, Neither he sinned, nor his parents; but that the works of God should be made visible in him.” John 9:2-3, ASVh

Comment on John 9:3, BCF. “But that the works of God should be made visible in him.” This tells us that the work of the beloved Son of God will be shown here in this situation on the person. The important work the beloved Son of God will do for humans has also been shown here; the mercy of God has been poured down on this soul, and there is no need for anyone to be guilty in their situation. After this event, we do not know the purpose of life for this person to receive mercy. Therefore, we should wait and see the outcome before judging any situation.

When a person is born, and that person does not have good health from birth, and when we look at the person and don’t know where, what, and how it happened to the person, let all remember one thing: they all have been born in the image of God as well; even they have a problem from birth, the Lord’s love and will, will still be in them. So when you look at them, thank God that they are still alive and have a chance to make an impact on all people; some may think in a negative way of that person, but some get encouragement from that person and glorify God, that the God of love still gives that person a chance to see His wondrous works on earth. And if you can have the opportunity to talk about God to that person, do so with love and mercy. Since you have received love and mercy for yourself already, show that to those who are having problems in their life from birth, and do not think that because of the sin of parents or themselves, they have been born that way, but think of them that they will make others give thanks to God, for they are alive.

The Connection Between the Human Spirit and the Body

The human spirit connects to the body through the air: a human breathes and gives life to the body through the lungs. The human soul connects to the body through the heart and blood, giving inner strength to the body.

“And Jehovah God formed man of the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living soul.” Genesis 2:7, ASV

“But there is a spirit in man, And the breath of the Almighty giveth them understanding.” Job 32:8, ASV

“Indeed My flesh is true food, and My blood is true drink.” John 6:55, ASVh

Comment on John 6:55, BCF. “My flesh is true food.” The flesh, in this place, the beloved Son of God talks about, is the bread of the communion itself when believers have taken it and think of His body that has been tortured for them on the cross.

“My blood is true drink.” The blood of the beloved Son of God that has poured down on earth was the life of Him when He was in human form on earth, and in the communion time, we are allowed to use the juice of the grapevine in representing thinking of His blood poured down for us and be washed clean; all believers should remember this.

The spirit fully joins the body when the umbilical cord of a born baby is cut, and the human begins to breathe on their own. When the human body dies, the spirit enters a waiting place in the spiritual realm, a different dimension from the grave, where the spirits of believers await resurrection at the return of the Lord Jesus.

“And Jehovah God formed man of the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living soul.” Genesis 2:7, ASV

“... nor is He served by men’s hands, as needing anything, He Himself giving to all life, and breath, and all things.” Acts 17:25, ASVh

Comment on Acts 17:25. The Lord God Almighty is God who gives and always gives. The Lord God Almighty does not expect anyone to give Him things; instead, He desires hearts that give thanks and glorify Him, for it is He who gives them all things.

“and the tombs were opened, and many bodies of the saints having fallen asleep were raised.” Matthew 27:52, ASVh

Comment on Matthew 27:52. “The tombs were opened.” ... Don’t forget that all the saints that have perished have a soul, spirit, and material body; the material body is gone, but the soul and spirit are still there. The soul has returned to the Father, but the spirit remains where the body has disintegrated; the tomb must be open for the heavenly body to come in and out from above (this action takes place in a twinkling of an eye).

What is the Role of the Soul and Spirit in our Human Being?

The Bible teaches us that both our human soul and spirit are involved in the emotions we experience. The soul contains deeper emotions that are often difficult to express; we can perceive a person's soul through their eyes. Below, we highlight some Bible passages to support this perspective.

“And Mary said, My soul magnifies the Lord” Luke 1:46, ASVh

Comment on Luke 1:46, BCF The ‘soul’ is deeper than our heart itself can feel. But the Lord can bring it up for a person to acknowledge what the soul is thinking. In this verse it tells plainly that Mary glorifies the Lord from the deepest of her knowledge.

“However, if your eye may be bad, your whole body will be full of darkness. If therefore, the light that is in you may be darkness, how great that darkness!” Matthew 6:23, ASVh

Comment on Matthew 6:23, BCF If your spiritual eye gets darkened, your spirit is lost.

“Keep my commandments and live; And my law as the apple of thine eye.” Proverbs 7:2, ASV

“My soul has observed Thy testimonies; And I love them exceedingly.” Psalm 119:167, ASV

“However, I say to you, that everyone looking at a woman to desire her has committed adultery with her already in his heart.” Matthew 5:28, ASVh

Comment on Matthew 5:25, BCF. Do not look at their body; look into their eyes. The eye is the window of their soul. Looking at the body creates lust; only look into their eyes.

The Soul in the Unseen World

We can understand from the Word of God that the soul is large, with many rooms in its dimension. If we do not protect our souls by meditating on the Word of God, the evil has a chance to attack us. However, unlike in ancient times, demonic possession of the soul no longer occurs today. After the resurrection of the Lord Jesus and His ascension to the Father, the Holy Spirit has been given to us on earth. Below, we share our understanding of this topic.

“And when the unclean spirit is gone out from the human, it passes through waterless places, seeking rest, and does not find.” Matthew 12:43, ASVh

Comment on Matthew 12:43, BCF. “Waterless places.” Our soul is a living water place for evil to feed on. “The unclean spirit” refers to the spirit of the antichrist (See 1 John 2:18-19 and 22-25). When this spirit leaves the house, which is the soul, because the person tries to join with the Lord and cleans up their own act, it goes into waterless places. But if it needs to extend its life, it will try to come back to take over the old place. When it comes back, it will not be alone; it will be more violent, and it will fight to take over again. Don’t leave the house empty. Stay in prayer and read the Word, for only the Word of God can help and fill the house. The Word is the eternal food for our souls.

“Then it says, I will return to my house from where I came out; and having come, it finds it being unoccupied, and swept, and put in order.” Matthew 12:44, ASVh

Comment on Matthew 12:44, BCF. “It finds it being unoccupied, and swept, and put in order.” House here refers to the soul of a person. People believe that the house is the heart, but the heart is just an organ of the body (think of the heart in two dimensions as well: one dimension of the heart is an organ for the body, and another dimension of the heart is for the soul). An evil spirit does not need the heart, but it needs the soul to feed on. As humans, we try to use a human way to keep ourselves clean. You sweep the soul clean when you try to cut off something useless in life. But if you do not come to the Lord Jesus and read the Word, you leave the soul empty, and it becomes a temptation for an evil spirit to dwell in. Before we become Christians, we try to be clean, to change, and to become a new person. But if we do not fill up the soul with the Word, the change will not last long. The empty house will collapse down. Also, as Christians, if we slack off from the Word, we make empty rooms in our souls to be tempted. Human nature, and especially the laziness of human nature, makes us vulnerable. If we call ourselves Christians, we need to read the Word. Only the Word of God can be used to fill and shield the soul.

“And when He had come to the other side, to the region of the Gadarenes, met Him two possessed by demons, coming out of the tombs, extremely violent, so that no one could pass by that way.” Matthew 8:28, ASVh

Comment Matthew 8:28, BCF. Not all the cases encountered by the Lord Jesus are present in our times because the Lord Jesus was on earth, and then

He asked the Father to send the Holy Spirit to occupy the earth (See the Book of Acts). The presence of the Holy Spirit controls the dark side's activity.

When reading these Scripture passages, one might wonder if we still encounter similar situations today. We offer our insights by commenting on a story found in Mark 5:1-13.

Comment on Mark 5:1-13, BCF. There is still evil in the world, but it is not the evil that has the power to enter humans. The evil that possesses, that enters the body, they are not allowed to do that anymore; it is over. Nowadays, there is no evil possession anymore, but make-believe and imagination. The possessed, in this way, as described here in Mark, stopped with the Holy Spirit coming down on earth, but people still experience make-belief actions. When the body weakens, people try to go back to the old way of their belief in the dark and call the dark to come down to them; when the faith is weak, it drags the body to be weak as well. Remember, the Bible clearly tells us that the Holy Spirit covers the whole earth. The dark doesn't come out, but humans disobey and keep calling the dark to come out for them. When they come out, they harm humans (these days, there is a dark influence because of humans seeking, but not evil possession anymore, as described in these verses). When people do not come out to the Lord, they seek human wisdom, but how can that human wisdom help them? They fabricate make-belief stories, this one and that one, and try to solve the problem without the help of the Lord, which will not work. When they can't help, they declare that the person has a disability and needs human help; however, that sickness happens from the dark of their heart. The areas where dark actions happen nowadays, you can see, it is where they reject the Holy God and keep worshiping the dark; that is why we keep hearing things, but it is some kind of make-belief that destroys their own body and not the power of the dark. The power of the dark ended with the Lord Jesus' crucifixion on the cross when the Holy Spirit came and covered the earth; now, only the dark side of the human mind still harms.

In Mark chapter 3, the Lord Jesus responding to people's accusations about His power over the darkness gives parables about unity. The Bible teaches the unity of the Lord as One, Three but One; the unity of people who believe in the Bible should be as one as well. Additionally, the Lord Jesus gives the parable that points out to attacking the faith; all believers should watch out; in order to collapse the unity of the kingdom of God on earth, the faith will be attacked. Specifically, in Mark 3:27,

the Lord Jesus says: “But no one can enter into the house of the strong man to plunder his goods, if not he first binds the strong man; and then he will plunder his house.”

Comment on Mark 3:27, BCF. The parable told in these verses of Scripture points out to attacking the faith: watch out! Specifically, how to collapse the kingdom? The faith of the believers must be attacked to collapse the unity of the kingdom of God on earth. And, how to attack the believer? There is only one way to do it: the faith of the believer must be attacked first; the faith is the base for all humans to stand firm against the dark side, and the dark knows that. The Bible tells us clearly that if you have no faith, you will not invite the Lord into your heart and soul. If you don’t invite the Lord Jesus into your heart, it is easy to be attacked, and the way to attack is straight to the faith. The dark does not need your body; all it needs is your soul. Attacking the faith is the fight for the soul; this flesh is nothing. The faith must be attacked first to take the human soul; no faith and the soul is lost. Look out in the world; even the Christians who lose faith go deeper than the rest of the world in doing evil deeds against God. When the souls that belong to God turn back against their Creator, those are the ones that attack the kingdom to collapse it. The way to destroy unity is if they can attack the faith, then the unity among believers can collapse.

Explaining the parable of Mark 3:27. In this verse, “no one” represents the dark side; “the house” represents the soul of a person, and “the strong man” represents the believer in the Lord; “binds the strong man” means an attack on his faith. They have to attack the ones who are leaders in the church, which human eyes look to. If one of them falls, so many little ones will fall because humans love to worship humans. However, humans have the One that never fails, and they don’t come to Him but go to put their trust in men. No man on earth is strong enough. But the One Man who fights against the dark has been crucified; keep your mind on that Man; as the Bible has told us, He has won the battle; look to that Man, the Lord Jesus.

Q: How does the dark attack the soul of humans? A: There is only one way to do it. They attack the person’s faith, and then they can enter the soul; the soul of humans is the bridge between the earth and the kingdom of heaven. There is only one way to go to the Kingdom of God, and that is through the human soul, and the dark knows that. That is why there is always a fight for the souls

of humans. The dark knows well that the Lord loves the human souls because when He created them, He gave the soul the freedom to choose: you choose to be for the world, or you choose to be with the Lord; that is what the soul does, it is a big fight in the soul. The dark knows they can't fight God, but their only way to fight is to take the souls of humans. They know very well that the Lord loves humans, and that is why He sent His beloved Son Jesus to be human on earth to show them that they have meaning for the Lord, not the flesh, but the soul; this is the war of the unseen world, for the human souls.

In John 6:63, ASVh, the Lord Jesus, referring to Himself as the Son of God, states, *"It is the Spirit that gives life; the flesh profits nothing; the words that I speak to you are Spirit and are life."*

Comment on John 6:63, BCF. So, we all should make the difference as well between the spiritual world and the earthly world; the degree of difference has been told here as well; the beloved Son's word itself is Spirit, and it has life and gives life to those who believe: anyone who has faith and believes in the word of the Spirit of Christ will gain life eternal.

For a person to truly live on this earth, the body, soul, and spirit must be united and in harmony. The soul and the spirit need to be at peace within the body of a person for the person to be alive and well. We can grasp this concept more deeply by reflecting on the healing story found in Matthew 9:23-25.

"He said, Depart: for the damsel is not dead, but sleeps. And they ridiculed Him. Now when the crowd had been put out, He entered in, took hold of her hand, and the damsel arose." Matthew 9:24-25, ASVh

Comment on Matthew 9:24-25, BCF. The ruler's daughter was not dead yet; she was just in a coma. Her spirit was still holding onto her body. The girl's spirit was stuck in the dark and could not find the way back to her body. The body cannot wake up without the spirit. The Lord Jesus opened the path for her spirit to join back with her body. He commanded the spirit to join back with the soul and body and be at peace.

We are instructed in the Word of God not to seek communication with other spirits. This commandment is crucial for both believers and non-believers. We should only pray to God through the Holy Spirit.

“Turn you not to them that have familiar spirits nor to the wizards; seek them not out, to be defiled by them: I am Jehovah your God.” Leviticus 19:31, ASV

When we seek to worship God through the Holy Spirit, we can express, like Mary, that “my spirit rejoices in God my Savior.” When the soul walks in the path of light, the communication between the soul’s identity and the spirit’s identity of a person happens only through the Holy Spirit. But if a soul chooses to walk in the path of darkness, then the soul and the spirit of a person will communicate with different spirits (see Comments Luke 1:47, BCF).

The Separation of the Body, Soul, and Spirit

After death, the human body returns to dust due to sin. The soul of a person returns to the Lord but enters a waiting place. The human spirit remains close to the grave of its human body, though in a different dimension. When believers in the Lord Jesus are resurrected, they will receive a heavenly body. By the mercy of God, the human soul and spirit will unite with the heavenly body, already prepared by the Lord Jesus, at the Resurrection. While we can support this belief with many passages from the Bible, we will highlight only a few.

“and the tombs were opened, and many bodies of the saints having fallen asleep were raised;” Matthew 27:52, ASVh

Comment on Matthew 27:52, BCF. First, because the Lord Jesus’s death happened, the saints who had died before according to faith in the Lord Jesus have received a chance to resurrect with their heavenly body, not with the body of dust that had disappeared. Another way to understand this resurrection is that these saints have been resurrected into their heavenly bodies.

“The tombs were opened.” The tombs must be open for the heavenly bodies to come out. When it was close to the resurrection time of the Lord Jesus, the Lord prepared the heavenly body for these saints for their return. Don’t forget that all the saints that have perished have a soul, spirit, and material body; the material body is gone, but the soul and spirit are still there. The soul has returned to the Father, but the spirit remains where the body has disintegrated; the tomb must be open for the heavenly body to come in and out from above (this action takes place in a twinkling of an eye). The Lord puts the heavenly body in the spot He wants, and that body joins with the saint’s spirit. How can the body get out of the tomb? The Lord has split the tomb open for the heavenly body to get out; the Lord has deposited the body down to be joined

with the spirit, and after joining with the spirit, the heavenly body has substance and material like that of earth and that body comes out. When the judgment day comes, those who will resurrect at that time will join with the soul after being judged; the soul must be judged first. These saints came to appear to people, and they will be gone; a (heavenly) body without a soul cannot walk on earth. This is just to show to people that as the Lord departs, the dead rose, and humans could see the dead rising.

Considering the above comments, one may ask several questions. Below, we provide some possible questions along with our answers based on our beliefs regarding these matters.

1. The Lord Jesus' body was the same body that was risen; how do we understand the rising of the saints into the heavenly bodies? Is the resurrection of the saints here a bodily resurrection in the same way as the Lord Jesus' resurrection? Do not try to mix up the heavenly body and the body of a human being; the Lord has prepared the heavenly bodies as the Bible tells. Every believer has a heavenly body, but the Lord Jesus, His human body, was transformed from the inside out to be a heavenly body. His body did not decay; all of those saints became dust of the ground, but the Lord's body has never seen decay. The Lord Jesus went into heaven as His body rose up and transformed instantly (See also Comments John 19:30).
2. Why do we say that the material is like that of the earth in the comment above? The resurrected appearance has to be similar to the dead one; they just look alike, but they are not the same. All imperfections of the earthly body will not be reproduced in the heavenly body; everything that is imperfect is fixed, and those bodies will come out to meet people.
3. What happens to us when we die? When we die, our soul goes back to the Lord, the body goes back to dust, and the spirit stays inside the tomb in a different dimension of the tomb, waiting; tomb over the tomb. However, the spirits cannot come out to roam free; they stay in a different dimension waiting in order; note that there are different waiting places for the spirit and the soul of a person. Cemeteries are not places for the living to go and play around; the cemetery is used for different purposes in human life. You are still alive; why do you go there and fool around? So many go and bother the things that the living cannot understand; just leave where the dead die, leave it alone; no living need to do anything with the dead there. In terms of humans, we can say: do not

disturb the peace of the resting. As the Bible tells, the dead can see the living but cannot cross back to be with or influence the living. Between dimensions, they cannot cross over; don't try to mix the truth with human talk; there have been make-beliefs about all sorts of false things.

"But God said to him, Foolish one, this night is your soul demanded back of you; and what you have prepared, to whom will be?" Luke 12:20, ASVh

Comment on Luke 12:20, BCF. The verse tells all that you rejoice in the daytime, but when the night comes, you might perish. So, who will benefit from all the riches you have collected? It will not be you; you will perish tonight.

"... is your soul demanded back of you." When the Lord has taken you away from this earth, your soul itself will take your life with it, and that is why the verse tells all to think twice; what you have collected on this earth means nothing for the soul.

Finally, in 1 Corinthians 15:35,40, we read, "But some one will say, How are the dead raised? and with what manner of body do they come? ... There are also celestial bodies, and bodies terrestrial; but the glory of the celestial is one, and the glory of the terrestrial is another. ..."

The Humanity of the Lord Jesus

The Lord Jesus, in His human form on earth, possessed all the components of humanity: body, soul, and spirit. Like all humans, His human body, soul, and spirit had to grow together in His human life on earth, entangled together. At death, the three are separated, but the Lord Jesus took His human form with Him to heaven, and by the Father's mercy, His Spirit is separated and hovers over the earth to connect with the true believers. In this section, we will examine various Bible passages that support the humanity of the Lord Jesus. We also invite readers to explore our blog article titled Teachings about the Lord Jesus Being the Son of God and the Son of Man for a more comprehensive analysis of the humanity and divinity of the Lord Jesus.

"And behold, you will conceive in your womb, and will bring forth a Son, and you shall call His name JESUS." Luke 1:31, ASVh

“And the Child grew, and became strong, being filled with wisdom, and the grace of God was upon Him.” Luke 2:40, ASVh

Comment on Luke 2:40, BCF. This verse clearly says that the grace of God was upon the Lord Jesus. The Holy Spirit will do all the work, not only the work in this verse alone but also the work that will come on the way; all the decisions and interactions related to the Lord Jesus will be guided through the Holy Spirit.

“And the Child grew, and became strong.” Being strong in this place means being strong in two ways: physically and spiritually.

“Being filled with wisdom.” The beloved Son of God, let the Holy Spirit from the Father lead Him and do the work for the Father. Humans will use intelligence, but for the Lord in His humanity, when He lets the Holy Spirit lead Him, His mind will have received the ideas of thinking and will convince His heart to do what is right and pleasing to the Father.

“Then He says to them, My soul is greatly grieved, even to death; remain here and watch with Me.” Matthew 26:38, ASVh

Comment on Matthew 26:38, BCF. This verse has proven that the Lord is truly human. The words to think about are “My soul”: only humans have a soul. Humans have souls because humans are created in the image of God, and that is why humans are not animals. The Lord is telling here that His soul is sorrowful; only humans have that. People have reason to believe that because the Lord Jesus is not human, this torture is not as hard as humans receive. That is why the Word is written here: for us to know that the Lord Jesus has a soul because He is a human and knows how to be sorrowful and happy. The Bible talks about how much He feels sorrow; He is sorrowful even unto death.

“And Jesus having cried again with a loud voice, yielded up the Spirit.” Matthew 27:50, ASVh

Comment on Matthew 27:50, BCF. The God of Three is God the Father, God the Son, the Lord Jesus Christ, and God the Holy Spirit.

Meditating on this verse, one might wonder how to understand the Spirit of the Lord Jesus, as mentioned here. God of Three in One, but the Lord Jesus has taken the form of a human, and He has received the spirit as a human; all humans must have a spirit. Because the Lord Jesus takes the form of dust, He

has a body, spirit, and soul to confirm the human being in Him. The Trinity is always Three in One, but each one has a duty, and the Father is above all. The Holy Spirit is the Spirit of the Father. The Lord Jesus in human form, as the body, the soul, and the spirit, is three in one as well. The body, soul, and spirit of the Lord Jesus can't be separated; they are only as one because He is human. The Father, the Son Jesus, and the Holy Spirit are Three in One, yet they can be separated, but each is unique in their own being.

The Role of the Spirit of the Lord Jesus

By the mercy of the Father, the Spirit of the resurrected Lord Jesus has been sent on the earth. The Spirit of the Lord Jesus and the Holy Spirit dwell together in true believers, and the Lord Jesus communicates with His servants through both the Holy Spirit and the Spirit of the resurrected Lord Jesus. There are different duties between both Spirits: the Spirit of Christ intercedes to the Father on behalf of each believer, and the Holy Spirit receives specific duties from the Father. The Spirit of Christ receives the order straight from the beloved Son of God; the origin of the coming and reporting will be different even if the Father and the beloved Son of God are One. However, the Holy Spirit and the Spirit of the resurrected Lord Jesus (Christ) work in unity in the life of the believer, but each one has special duties.

In this section, we explore several Bible passages and share our beliefs about the role of the Spirit of the Lord Jesus in our lives, as well as how the Spirit of the Lord Jesus and the Holy Spirit dwell in our hearts.

“For, like a man going on a journey, called his own servants, and delivered to them his goods.” Matthew 25:14, ASVh

Comment on Matthew 25:14, BCF. “Like a man.” The man in this verse refers to the Lord Jesus Himself. Before He goes back to heaven, and even when He is not on earth, He gives duties to some servants. He calls some to be servants, and He talks to them in their hearts. As the Bible has told, when the apostles were traveling, the Lord Jesus told them not to go to some places because it was not the right time. The Lord Jesus told them this because the Lord Jesus Himself has His own chosen servants for the purpose of showing His mercy to all humans. That is why the Bible has passages of when the Lord Jesus did not allow them to speak the Word (See Acts 16:6-7).

“Going on a journey” or “going into another country” shows that the Lord Jesus is not on earth, but He still directs the way, as some of His servants get the privilege of having a special connection to the Lord Jesus Himself.

“Called his own servants” refers to His special servants because there is a difference between the Lord Himself’s calling and the Holy Spirit’s calling. The Lord Jesus has His own servants for His work, His specific work that He wants to be done. Yes, the Holy Spirit calls, but the Lord Jesus Himself also communicates with specific servants whom He chooses to do His personal work. However, the Lord Jesus connects with His special servants through the Holy Spirit. The Holy Spirit is the Spirit of the Father, which is why the Bible says that blasphemy against the Holy Spirit cannot be forgiven (See [Mark 3:28-30](#)). But also remember that the Bible says the Father Himself is in the Lord Jesus. The Lord Jesus and the Father are One. The Lord Jesus said that what belongs to the Father also belongs to Him. However, the Holy Spirit and the Spirit of the Lord Jesus are not the same. The Holy Spirit is one with the Father, and the Lord Jesus (His Spirit) is between them both.

“Delivered to them his goods” or “entrusted his goods.” When it says entrusted His goods, it refers to specific orders that the Father tells the Son. These are specific orders, and that is why the Son has His own specific servants to go out and do the job. The Holy Spirit hovers over the earth and does His work (the Holy Spirit’s work) that He also receives from the Father; that is why the Bible tells us that the Father, the Son Jesus, and the Holy Spirit are Three in One. The Three have duties, but all have received duty from the Father as One. “Delivered to them his goods” or “entrusted his goods.” When it says entrusted His goods, it refers to specific orders that the Father tells the Son. These are specific orders, and that is why the Son has His own specific servants to go out and do the job. The Holy Spirit hovers over the earth and does His work (the Holy Spirit’s work) that He also receives from the Father; that is why the Bible tells us that the Father, the Son Jesus, and the Holy Spirit are Three in One. The Three have duties, but all have received duty from the Father as One.

“And Jesus, crying with a loud voice, said, Father, into Thy hands I commit My Spirit; and having said this, He breathed His last.” Luke 23:46, ASVh

Comment on Luke 23:46, BCF. This cry is the Lord’s second cry as indicated in Comments Matthew 27:50. For this verse, see Comments Matthew 27:50, Comments Mark 15:37, and Comments John 19:30.

“Father, into Thy hands I commit My Spirit.” The beloved Son of God, in human form, is completely human, like everyone else. He has the spirit as humans have, and that Spirit returns here to the Father. All human spirits will return to the Father’s hand as well because nothing can be alone without the Father: He, the Father Himself, is the One who created all things, and all things belong to Him. People who blaspheme God should think twice about how they, as created things, do not recognize the Most High God and give thanks and appreciation to Him who created all things.

Remember that the Bible also mentions the Spirit of Christ, the beloved Son of God who has a Spirit, and that is what this verse has told us. The Lord Jesus’ Spirit is not the spirit of a commoner. This here is the Spirit of Christ, which will return to the Father. The commoner spirits cannot go into the same place as the Spirit of Christ goes.

Clarification notes regarding the comments in Matthew 27:50 and Luke 23:46. During the Lord Jesus’ life on earth, He was one hundred percent human; the body, soul, and spirit of the Lord Jesus couldn’t be separated; they were together as unity because He is human. Now the Lord Jesus is in heaven in bodily form, and by the will of the Father, the beloved Son’s Spirit can separate and come to earth for work. The Spirit of Christ is on earth according to the Father’s will Himself. The same way as the Holy Spirit works on earth, the Holy Spirit is the Spirit of the Father, the beloved Son of God’s Spirit also works on earth, and this has shown true God and true human: the beloved Son of God has them both.

“Jesus answered and said to him, If anyone loves Me, he will keep My word, and My Father will love him, and We will come to him, and will make a home with him.” John 14:23, ASVh

Comment on John 14:23, BCF. “If anyone loves Me, he will keep My word.” So, as the verse clearly tells, if you love the beloved Son of God, you will keep His teachings in your heart; but, when you keep His word, you must also read

and meditate on the Holy Bible; the Holy Bible has all the teachings, and those teachings will make your heart ready to receive Him as well.

“... and My Father will love him.” Give attention to what the verse has said to all true believers. The beloved Son of God has told all that the Father Himself will love you because you love the beloved Son of God. And this is the way the Father shows love to anyone: when that person meditates on the Holy Word, that person will realize the peace in their heart, and during that time, within the heart, they will have great joy because the Father Himself also is happy with that soul. The root of all happiness for the soul is the Holy Word of God.

“And We will come to him.” Give attention to the word “We”: this refers to the Trinity of God, and at the same time, the Spirit of the beloved Son of God will also be there.

“... and will make a home with him.” When the heart of a true believer becomes home for the Lord, that heart of the blessed one will receive the greatest joy of life, which will also make the faith grow. The home is the place where God will dwell and also will make that home the proper place for receiving all praising of the soul; the request the soul will ask for the Lord to dwell in will receive the answer, and deep in the heart of true believers, it will acknowledge the answer they have received, which they can feel by the soul, not by the feeling of the head itself; that feeling will be deep down until the person cannot tell where that happiness comes from. Therefore, to decorate the heart to be the home of the Lord, all believers should put the praises in the heart that glorify the Trinity of God; the words used for glorifying the Trinity of God will decorate the heart of the soul itself for the Lord.

When reflecting on John 14:23 and considering the comments above, one might wonder how the Lord resides in our hearts. To address this challenging question, we should not think in physical terms but in spiritual ones. The heart of the true believer is like a palace, which will have many rooms in it, and each room will be used for a different purpose as well, because that heart has become the home of God to dwell.

One must believe it is the Father’s will to dwell in our souls when we open ourselves to receive Him. The Father uses the Holy Bible to be the path for humans to get in touch with the Holy Spirit; through the Holy Bible, the Holy Spirit will work in the heart of the reader, and when that heart has invited the

Holy Spirit to be their guide, the Holy Spirit will use that invitation and put Himself to join with the soul itself.

The Holy Spirit and the Spirit of the beloved Son are in the Holy Word itself. Also, let all believers remember one thing as well: the Holy Bible is the living word. God has spoken every word in the Holy Bible; the word never dies, always is alive and has life; the word itself has life and gives life to all true believers; if you truly believe you can feel the word is alive; general people will not have that feeling, only the true believers will gain that feeling, which is a gift from the Father Himself when you have meditated on the Holy Word.

We can also say this in another way: the Holy Bible is the path of connection between the Holy Spirit and the Spirit of Christ with the true believers when they meditate on the Word of God. When you meditate on the Word of God, you have connected your soul to the path where you find the Lord guiding you. The Word that the Living God has spoken, that word has life in itself; the Holy Bible is the true living word of God, and every word in the Bible is alive. Therefore, you must first connect with the path before you can connect with the Lord.

Additionally, we share further insights into how the Holy Spirit resides within the heart of a believer in many of our comments on the Gospels. You can find these insights by searching our Bible Commentary Forever website. For example, our commentary on [Mark 4:35-41](#) includes insightful comments on how the Holy Spirit dwells in the heart of a believer.

Comment on Mark 4:35-41, BCF. The Holy Spirit dwells in each believer and the Lord Jesus as well, but there is still only One Holy Spirit. Also, we should think about how big the Holy Spirit is to cover the whole earth! We are all in Him, and He is in us as well. We could think that the seed and some gift from the Holy Spirit are planted inside a believer's heart at the moment the believer accepts and invites the Lord Jesus into their heart. Both the Holy Spirit and the soul dwell in the heart of a believer, the same place overlapped but different dimensions. We could think that the heavenly dimension and earthly dimension walk in parallel through the heart of a believer. The soul is part of the earthly dimension. When the Lord gives the soul to a person, that soul becomes part of the earthly dimension. The body, the soul, and the spirit of a person coexist together as a unit; that is how the Lord built us. The breath of the Lord is complete, and He has both soul and spirit when He gave life to

Adam (See Genesis 2:7). In the case of “Holy Spirit dictation,” the Holy Spirit is the giver and the receiver at the same moment. In the case of “Holy Spirit inspired,” the Holy Spirit is the giver, and the soul of the believer is the receiver.

Meditation on Body, Soul, and Spirit

Knowledge of the Body, Soul, and Spirit is of no value if you do not have peace with God. If you have not yet found peace with God, we encourage you to read our article titled [Making Peace With God the Father Through His Son Jesus Christ](#). Only the Trinity of God can save the human body, soul, and spirit from the troubles of this life, and save the human being from death, giving us eternal life.

Acknowledgment

At Bible Commentary Forever Ministries, we believe in the Trinity of God: God the Father, God the Son (Jesus Christ), and God the Holy Spirit. In our ministry, we rely on the gifts of the Holy Spirit, which we believe are received through the baptism in the Holy Spirit (Acts 2:1-4). We would like to express our heartfelt gratitude to God the Father, in the name of our Lord Jesus, for sending His beloved Son into the world to bring salvation to all. We are deeply thankful to the Lord Jesus for His sacrifice on the cross, which grants us forgiveness for our sins and brings us peace with the Trinity of God. We are also grateful for His mercy in blessing us with the baptism in the Holy Spirit and for calling us to serve the Trinity of God through our ministry. Finally, we want to convey our sincere appreciation to the Holy Spirit for His anointing and blessings in our work.

“In Him was life, and the life was the light of men. And the light shines in the darkness, and the darkness has not seized it” (John 1:4-5).